This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

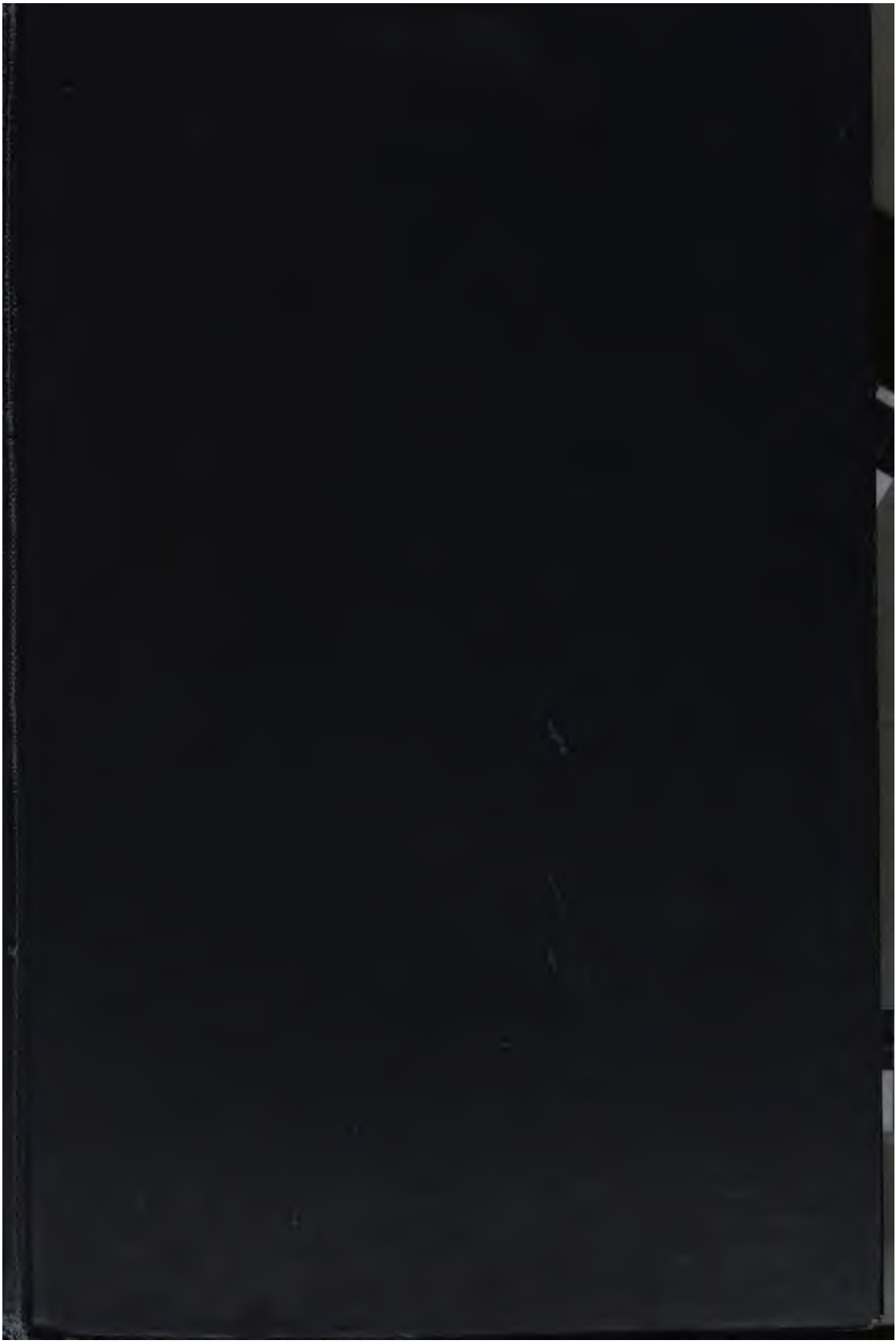
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

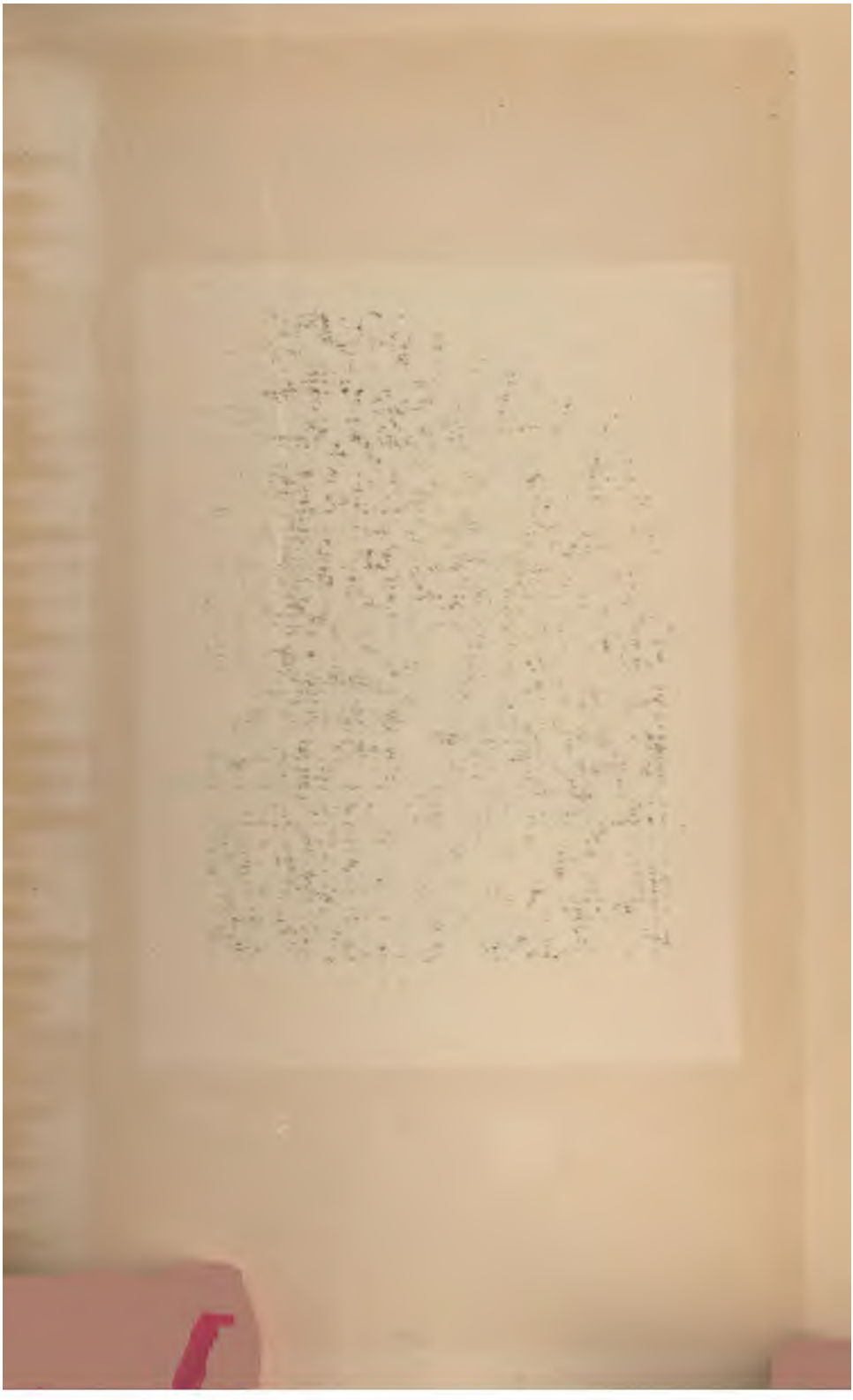
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



3924

STANFORD·VNIVERSITY·LIBRARY



THE

WORKS OF ARISTOTLE

TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH
UNDER THE EDITORSHIP

OF

W. D. ROSS, M.A.
FELLOW AND TUTOR OF ORIEL COLLEGE
DEPUTY PROFESSOR OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

VOLUME XI

RHETORICA

By W. RHYS ROBERTS

DE RHETORICA AD ALEXANDRUM

E. S. FORSTER

DE POETICA

INGRAM BYWATER

OXFORD
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
AMEN HOUSE, E.C. 4
LONDON EDINBURGH GLASGOW NEW YORK
TORONTO MELBOURNE CAPETOWN BOMBAY
CALCUTTA MADRAS
GEOFFREY CUMBERLEGE
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY

195.1
A651
v.11
c.2

Reprinted photographically in Great Britain at the University Press, Oxford, 1946, from sheets of the first edition

RHETORICA

BY

W. RHYS ROBERTS, LITT. D.

EMERITUS PROFESSOR OF CLASSICS IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LEEDS;
FORMERLY FELLOW OF KING'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND PROFESSOR OF
GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY COLLEGE OF NORTH WALES, BANGOR.

GOREU AWEN GWIRIONEDD

adiecere bonae paulo plus artis Athenae,
scilicet ut vellem curvo dinoscere rectum,
atque inter silvas Academi quaerere verum.

HORACE, *Epistles*, ii. 2, 43–5.

UNIVERSITATEM CAMBRENSEM

ET

UNIVERSITATEM LOIDENSEM

VERITATIS

CUM NOVAE TUM ANTIQUAE

UTRAMQUE STUDIOSAM

EX ANIMO SALUTAT

RHETORICAE ARISTOTELIAE INTERPRES QUALISCUMQUE.

ἅμα δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄνθρωποι πρὸς τὸ ἀληθὲς πεφύκασιν ἱκανῶς καὶ τὰ πλείω τυγχάνουσι τῆς ἀληθείας. ARISTOTLE, *Rhetoric*, i, c. 1, 1355ᵃ 15–17.

ῥᾳθυμίας δέ ἐστιν ἡ ῥητορικὴ διὰ τὸ φύσει εἶναι κρείττω τἀληθῆ καὶ τὰ δίκαια τῶν ἐναντίων, ὥστε ἐὰν μὴ κατὰ τὸ προσῆκον αἱ κρίσεις γίγνωνται, ἀνάγκη δ' αὐτῶν ἡττᾶσθαι· τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶν ἄξιον ἐπιτιμήσεως.

ib., 1355ᵃ 21–4.

ἀλλ' ἀεὶ τἀληθῆ καὶ τὰ βελτίω τῇ φύσει εὐσυλλογιστότερα καὶ πιθανώτερα ὡς ἁπλῶς εἰπεῖν. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ἄτοπον εἰ τῷ σώματι μὲν αἰσχρὸν μὴ δύνασθαι βοηθεῖν ἑαυτῷ, λόγῳ δ' οὐκ αἰσχρόν· ὁ μᾶλλον ἴδιόν ἐστιν ἀνθρώπου τῆς τοῦ σώματος χρείας. ib., 1355ᵃ 37–1355ᵇ2.

PREFACE

IN making its final volume consist of the *Rhetoric* and the *Poetics* (together with the *Rhetorica ad Alexandrum*—a minor tract of uncertain authorship), the Oxford Translation of Aristotle follows the usual order in which the collected Aristotelian works have come, by tradition, to be arranged. The two great, and most characteristic, treatises which deal with the art of Public Speaking and the art of Poetry bring the long and amazing procession of Aristotle's thought to a fitting close. Language, as the instrument of thought and feeling, is the theme they have in common; language in its workaday and its loftiest uses; language which, as the opening chapter of the *Rhetoric* sets forth, is the distinctive attribute of man and his best weapon in upholding truth and justice. In the last two words of the *Poetics* as it has come down to us, we may fancy that we hear Aristotle quietly taking leave of all the science, the logic, the metaphysics, and the political and moral wisdom that have gone before: εἰρήσθω τοσαῦτα, 'Let it suffice to have said thus much'.

As for those who age after age make so-so attempts to translate Aristotle into other tongues, they can only hope that they may, to some slight extent, have shunned the reproach of obscurity and may, in this and other ways, have striven to respond to the pious aspirations of the Emir of the Faithful, as quoted in Cope's *Introduction to Aristotle's Rhetoric*: 'Un jour, disait Ibn-Roschd (Averroes), Ibn-Tofaïl me fit appeler et me dit: "J'ai entendu aujourd'hui l'émir des croyants se plaindre de l'obscurité d'Aristote et de ses traducteurs: *Plût à Dieu*, disait-il, *qu'il se rencontrât quelqu'un qui voulût commenter ces livres et en expliquer clairement le sens, pour les rendre accessibles aux hommes*!"' (Renan, *Averroès et l'Averroïsme*, 3rd edition, p. 17).

To the Introduction (Macmillan, 1867) and the Commentary (Cambridge University Press, 1877) of that fine and still lamented scholar, Edward Meredith Cope, all British students of the *Rhetoric* owe a great debt. In the following translation I am further indebted to Professor W. D. Ross, to Dr. A. S. Way (for his verse renderings), to Professor E. A. Sonnenschein and Professor E. S. Forster, and above all to my former colleague at Leeds, Mr. L. H. G. Greenwood, whose singular command both of Greek and of English has been of the utmost service to me throughout.

It should be added that Roemer's recension (2nd edition, 1898) of the Greek text has been followed in the main. Divergences from it are noted as they occur.

W. RHYS ROBERTS.

New Year's Day,
1924.

NOTE.

The watchword of the University of Wales, as given at the head of the dedicatory page, may be translated, word by word, as 'Optima Musa Veritas'. Our young Universities of Wales and Leeds will not, in their youthful exuberance, forget that Aristotle—like other great thinkers of Athens, the earliest of all Universities—prized truth and right more than oratory. In oratory the best Athenian thinkers would have liked to see a modest ally of truth and right. But, as in his remarkable Preface (Book I, c. 1) Aristotle gently points out, when he is looking with a philosopher's eye upon the Greek oratory known to him, all good things can be abused save virtue alone.

CONTENTS

BOOK I

c. 1. RHETORIC is the counterpart (ἀντίστροφος) of Dialectic. It is a subject that can be treated systematically. The argumentative modes of persuasion (πίστεις) are the essence of the art of rhetoric: appeals to the emotions warp the judgement. The writers of current text-books on rhetoric give too much attention to the forensic branch (in which chicanery is easier) and too little to the political (where the issues are larger). Argumentative persuasion (πίστις) is a sort of demonstration (ἀπόδειξις), and the rhetorical form of demonstration is the enthymeme (ἐνθύμημα). Four uses of rhetoric. Its possible abuse is no argument against its proper use on the side of truth and justice. The honest rhetorician has no separate name to distinguish him from the dishonest.

c. 2. Definition of rhetoric as 'the faculty of observing in any given case the available means of persuasion'. Of the modes of persuasion some belong strictly to the art of rhetoric, and some do not. The rhetorician finds the latter kind (viz. witnesses, contracts, and the like) ready to his hand. The former kind he must provide himself; and it has three divisions—(1) the speaker's power of evincing a personal character (ἦθος) which will make his speech credible; (2) his power of stirring the emotions (πάθη) of his hearers; (3) his power of proving a truth, or an apparent truth, by means of persuasive arguments. Hence rhetoric may be regarded as an offshoot of dialectic, and also of ethical (or, political) studies. The persuasive arguments are (*a*) the example (παράδειγμα), corresponding to induction (ἐπαγωγή) in dialectic; (*b*) the enthymeme, corresponding to the syllogism; (*c*) the apparent enthymeme, corresponding to the apparent syllogism. The enthymeme is a rhetorical syllogism, and the example a rhetorical induction. Rhetoric has regard to classes of men, not to individual men; its subjects, and the premisses from which it argues, are in the main such as present alternative possibilities in the sphere of human action; and it must adapt itself to an audience of untrained thinkers who cannot follow a long train of reasoning. The premisses from which enthymemes are formed are 'probabilities' and 'signs'; and signs are either fallible or infallible, in which latter case they are termed τεκμήρια. The lines of argument, or topics, which enthymemes follow

may be distinguished as common (or, general) and special (i. e. special to a single study, such as natural science or ethics). The special lines should be used discreetly, if the rhetorician is not to find himself deserting his own field for another.

c. 3. There are three kinds of rhetoric: A. political (deliberative), B. forensic (legal), and C. epideictic (the ceremonial oratory of display). Their (α) divisions, (β) times, and (γ) ends are as follows: A. Political (α) exhortation and dehortation, (β) future, (γ) expediency and inexpediency; B. Forensic (α) accusation and defence, (β) past, (γ) justice and injustice; C. Epideictic (α) praise and censure, (β) present, (γ) honour and dishonour.

c. 4. (A) The subjects of Political Oratory fall under five main heads: (1) ways and means, (2) war and peace, (3) national defence, (4) imports and exports, (5) legislation. The scope of each of these divisions.

c. 5. In urging his hearers to take or to avoid a course of action, the political orator must show that he has an eye to their happiness. Four definitions (of a popular kind: as usual in the *Rhetoric*), and some fourteen constituents, of happiness.

c. 6. The political speaker will also appeal to the interest of his hearers, and this involves a knowledge of what is good. Definition and analysis of things 'good'.

c. 7. Comparison of 'good' things. Of two 'good' things, which is the better? This entails a consideration of degree—the lore of 'less or more'.

c. 8. The political speaker will find his powers of persuasion most of all enhanced by a knowledge of the four sorts of government—democracy, oligarchy, aristocracy, monarchy, and their characteristic customs, institutions, and interests. Definition of the four sorts severally. Ends of each.

c. 9. (C) The Epideictic speaker is concerned with virtue and vice, praising the one and censuring the other. The forms of virtue. Which are the greatest virtues?—Some rhetorical devices used by the epideictic speaker: 'amplification', especially. Amplification is particularly appropriate to epideictic oratory; examples, to political; enthymemes, to forensic.

c. 10. (B) The Forensic speaker should have studied wrongdoing—its motives, its perpetrators, and its victims. Definition of wrongdoing as injury voluntarily inflicted contrary to law. Law is either (*a*) special, viz. that written law which regulates the life of a particular community, or (*b*) general, viz. all those unwritten principles which are supposed to be acknowledged everywhere. Enumeration and elucidation of the seven causes of human action, viz. three involuntary, (1) chance, (2) nature, (3) compulsion; and four voluntary, viz. (4) habit, (5) reasoning, (6) anger, (7) appetite. All voluntary actions are good or

apparently good, pleasant or apparently pleasant. The good (or expedient) has been discussed under political oratory. The pleasant has yet to be considered.

c. 11. Definition of pleasure, and analysis of things pleasant.—The motives for wrongdoing, viz. advantage and pleasure, have thus been discussed in chapters 6, 7, 11.

c. 12. The characters and circumstances which lead men to commit wrong, or make them the victims of wrong.

c. 13. Actions just and unjust may be classified in relation to (1) the law, (2) the persons affected. The law may be (*a*) special, i. e. the law of a particular State, or (*b*) universal, i. e. the law of Nature. The persons affected may be (*a*) the entire community, (*b*) individual members of it. A wrongdoer must either understand and intend the action, or not understand and intend it. In the former case, he must be acting either from deliberate choice or from passion. It is deliberate purpose that constitutes wickedness and criminal guilt. Unwritten law (1) includes in its purview the conduct that springs from exceptional goodness or badness, e. g. our behaviour towards benefactors and friends; (2) makes up for the defects in a community's written code of law. This second kind is equity. Its existence partly is, and partly is not, intended by legislators; not intended, where they have noticed no defect in the law; intended, where they find themselves unable to define things exactly, and are obliged to legislate as if that held good always which in fact only holds good usually.—Further remarks on the nature and scope of equity.

c. 14. The worse of two acts of wrong done to others is that which is prompted by the worse disposition. Other ways of computing the comparative badness of actions.

c. 15. The 'non-technical' (extrinsic) means of persuasion—those which do not strictly belong to the art (τέχνη) of rhetoric. They are five in number, and pertain especially to forensic oratory: (1) laws, (2) witnesses, (3) contracts, (4) tortures, (5) oaths. How laws may be discredited or upheld, according as it suits the litigant. Witnesses may be either ancient (viz. poets and other notable persons; soothsayers; proverbs); or recent (viz. well-known contemporaries who have expressed their opinions about some disputed matter, and witnesses who give their evidence in court). Ancient witnesses are more trustworthy than contemporary. How contracts, and evidence given under torture, may be belittled or represented as important. In regard to oaths, a fourfold division exists: a man may either both offer and accept an oath, or neither, or one without the other—that is, he may offer an oath but not accept one, or accept an oath but not offer one.

BOOK II

c. 1. Since rhetoric—political and forensic rhetoric, at any rate—exists to affect the giving of decisions, the orator must not only try to make the argument of his speech demonstrative and worthy of belief; he must also (1) make his own character look right and (2) put his hearers, who are to decide, into the right frame of mind. As to his own character: he should make his audience feel that he possesses prudence, virtue, and goodwill. This is especially important in a deliberative assembly. In the law courts it is especially important that he should be able to influence the emotions, or moral affections, of the jury who try the case. Definition of the several emotions. In regard to each emotion we must consider (*a*) the states of mind in which it is felt; (*b*) the people towards whom it is felt; (*c*) the grounds on which it is felt.

c. 2. In cc. 2–11 the various emotions are defined, and are also discussed (with incidental observations) from the three points of view just indicated. In c. 2, Anger is the subject. The orator must so speak as to make his hearers angry with his opponents.

c. 3. Calmness (as the opposite of Anger).

c. 4. Friendship and Enmity.

c. 5. Fear and Confidence.

c. 6. Shame and Shamelessness.

c. 7. Kindness and Unkindness.

c. 8. Pity.

c. 9. Indignation.

c. 10. Envy.

c. 11. Emulation.

c. 12. The various types of human character are next considered, in relation to the various emotions and moral qualities and to the various ages and fortunes. By 'ages' are meant youth, the prime of life, and old age; by 'fortunes' are meant birth, wealth, power, and their opposites. The youthful type of character is thereupon depicted.

c. 13. The character of elderly men.

c. 14. The character of men in their prime.—The body is in its prime from thirty to five-and-thirty; the mind about forty-nine.

c. 15. The gifts of fortune by which human character is affected. First, good birth.

c. 16. Second, wealth.

c. 17. Third, power.

c. 18. Retrospect, and glance forward. The forms of argument common to all oratory will next be discussed.

c. 19. The four general lines of argument (κοινοὶ τόποι) are: (1) The Possible and Impossible; (2) Fact Past; (3) Fact Future; (4) Degree.

c. 20. The two general modes of persuasion (κοιναὶ πίστεις) are: (1) the example (παράδειγμα), (2) the enthymeme (ἐνθύμημα); the maxim (γνώμη) being part of the enthymeme. Examples are either (*a*) historical parallels, or (*b*) invented parallels, viz. either (α) illustrations (παραβολαί), or (β) fables (λόγοι), such as those of Aesop. Fables are suitable for popular addresses; and they have this advantage, that they are comparatively easy to invent, whereas it is hard to find parallels among actual past events.

c. 21. Use of maxims. A maxim is a general statement about questions of practical conduct. It is an incomplete enthymeme. Four kinds of maxims. Maxims should be used (*a*) by elderly men, and (*b*) to controvert popular sayings. Advantages of maxims: (*a*) they enable a speaker to gratify his commonplace hearers by expressing as a universal truth the opinions which they themselves hold about particular cases; (*b*) they invest a speech with moral character.

c. 22. Enthymemes. In enthymemes we must not carry our reasoning too far back, nor must we put in all the steps that lead to our conclusion. There are two kinds of enthymemes: (*a*) the demonstrative, formed by the conjunction of compatible propositions; (*b*) the refutative, formed by the conjunction of incompatible propositions.

c. 23. Enumeration of twenty-eight topics (lines of argument) on which enthymemes, demonstrative and refutative, can be based [*see* Index, under 'argument, lines of']. Two general remarks are added: (*a*) the refutative enthymeme has a greater reputation than the demonstrative, because within a small space it works out two opposing arguments, and arguments put side by side are clearer to the audience; (*b*) of all syllogisms, whether refutative or demonstrative, those are most applauded of which we foresee the conclusions from the beginning, so long as they are not obvious at first sight—for part of the pleasure we feel is at our own intelligent anticipation; or those which we follow well enough to see the point of them as soon as the last word has been uttered.

c. 24. Nine topics of apparent, or sham, enthymemes [*see* Index, under 'fallacious arguments'].

c. 25. Refutation. An argument may be refuted either by a counter-syllogism or by bringing an objection. Objections may be raised in four ways: (*a*) by directly attacking your opponent's own statement; (β) by putting forward another statement like it; (γ) by putting forward a statement contrary to it; (δ) by quoting previous decisions.

c. 26. Correction of two errors, possible or actual: (1) Amplification and Depreciation do not constitute an element of enthymeme, in the sense of 'a line of enthymematic argument'; (2) refutative

enthymemes are not a different species from constructive. This brings to an end the treatment of he thought-element of rhetoric—the way to invent and refute persuasive arguments. There remain the subjects of (A) style and (B) arrangement.

BOOK III

c. 1. (A) Style. It is not enough to know what to say ; we must also say it in the right way. Upon the subject of delivery (which presents itself here) no systematic treatise has been composed, though this art has much to do with oratory (as with poetry). The matter has, however, been touched upon by Thrasymachus in his 'Appeals to Pity'. As to the place of style: the right thing in speaking really is that we should fight our case with no help beyond the bare facts; and yet the arts of language cannot help having a small but real importance, whatever it is we have to expound to others. Through the influence of the poets, the language of oratorical prose at first took a poetical colour, as in the case of Gorgias. But the language of prose is distinct from that of poetry; and, further, the writers of tragic poetry itself have now given up those words, not used in ordinary talk, which adorned the early drama.

c. 2. Still, in the main, the same definition and methods apply alike to poetical and to prose style. Style, to be good, must be clear; it must also be appropriate, avoiding both meanness and excess of dignity. How these qualities may be attained. Rare, compound, and invented words must be used sparingly in prose; in which, over and above the regular and proper terms for things, metaphorical terms only can be used with advantage, and even these need care. The language of oratorical prose should, in fact, be like that of ordinary conversation. Some discussion of metaphor.

c. 3. Four faults of prose style, with illustrative examples: (1) misuse of compound words ; (2) employment of strange words; (3) long, unseasonable, or frequent epithets; (4) inappropriate metaphors.

c. 4. The simile is a full-blown metaphor. Similes are useful in prose as well as in verse; but they must not be used often, since they are of the nature of poetry. Instances of simile, from Plato and the orators. Metaphors can easily be turned into similes, and similes into metaphors. The proportional [as defined in the *Poetics*, c. 21] metaphor must always apply reciprocally to either of its co-ordinate terms.

c. 5. The foundation of good style is correctness of language, which is discussed under five heads: (1) right use of connecting words; (2) use of special, and not vague general, terms; (3) avoidance of ambiguity ; (4) observance of gender; (5) correct indication of grammatical number. A composition should be easy to read and therefore easy to deliver; it should avoid (1) uncertainties as to punctuation, (2) zeugma, (3) parenthesis.

c. 6. Impressiveness of style. Six heads: (1) the use of a description instead of a simple name; (2) metaphors and epithets; (3) plural for singular number; (4) repetition of the article; (5) connecting words; (6) description by means of negation.

c. 7. Appropriateness. An appropriate style will adapt itself to (1) the emotions of the hearers, (2) the character of the speaker, (3) the nature of the subject. Tact and judgement are needed in all varieties of oratory.

c. 8. Prose rhythm. The form of the language should not be metrical, nor, on the other hand, without any rhythm at all. Of the various possible rhythms, the heroic is too grand, the iambic too ordinary, and the trochaic too like a riotous dance. The best rhythm for prose is the paean, since from this alone no definite metre arises. The paean –⏑⏑⏑ should be used for the beginning, and the paean ⏑⏑⏑– for the end, of a sentence.

c. 9. Periodic style The language of prose must be either (1) free-running, like that of Herodotus; or (2) compact (i.e. periodic). A period may be defined as a portion of speech that has in itself a beginning and an end, being at the same time not too big to be taken in at a glance. It may have one member (clause), or more than one. A period of more than one member may be either (*a*) simply divided, or (*b*) antithetical. Antithesis implies contrast of sense. *Parisosis* makes the two members of a period equal in length. *Paromoeosis* makes the first or last words of both members like each other. *Homoeoteleuton* denotes similarity in terminations only.

c. 10. Smart and popular sayings. Three chief features of these clever, pointed sayings are: (1) antithesis, (2) metaphor, and (3) actuality or vividness (i.e. the power of 'setting the scene before our eyes').

c. 11. The graphic power of 'setting things before the eyes' implies the use of expressions that represent objects as in a state of activity: Homer often gives metaphorical life to lifeless things in this fashion. A touch of surprise also contributes to liveliness. People feel they have learnt something; hence the pleasure given by apophthegms, riddles, and puns. Similes, proverbs, and hyperboles also find a place here, being related to metaphors.

c. 12. Each kind of rhetoric has its own appropriate style. The style of written prose is not that of spoken oratory, nor are those of political and forensic speaking the same. The written style is the more finished: the spoken better admits of dramatic delivery—alike the kind of oratory that reflects character and the kind that stirs emotion. The style of oratory addressed to public assemblies resembles scene-painting. In the one and the other, high finish in detail is superfluous and seems better away. The forensic style is

more highly finished. Ceremonial oratory is the most literary, for it is meant to be read; and next to it forensic oratory. To analyse style still further, and add that it must be agreeable or magnificent, is useless; for why should it have these traits any more than 'restraint', 'liberality', or any other moral excellence?

c. 13. (B) Arrangement. A speech has two essential parts: statement and proof. To these may be added introduction and epilogue.

c. 14. Introduction. The introduction corresponds to the prologue in poetry and the prelude in flute-music. The most essential function and distinctive property of the introduction is to indicate the aim of the speech. An introduction may (1) excite or allay prejudice; (2) exalt or depreciate. In a political speech an introduction is seldom found, for the subject is usually familiar to the audience.

c. 15. Prejudice. The various lines of argument suitable for exciting or allaying prejudice.

c. 16. Narration. (1) In ceremonial oratory, narration should, as a rule, not be continuous but intermittent: variety is pleasant, and the facts in a celebrity's praise are usually well known. (2) In forensic oratory, the current rule that the narration should be rapid is wrong: rightness consists neither in rapidity nor in conciseness, but in the happy mean. The defendant will make less use of narration than the plaintiff. (3) In political oratory there is least opening for narration; nobody can narrate what has not yet happened. If there is narration at all, it will be of past events, the recollection of which will help the hearers to make better plans for the future. Or it may be employed to attack some one's character, or to eulogize him.

c 17. Arguments. The duty of the Arguments is to attempt conclusive proofs. (1) In forensic oratory, the question in dispute will fall under one of four heads: (*a*) the fact, (*b*) the existence of injury, (*c*) the amount of injury, (*d*) the justification. (2) In ceremonial oratory, the facts themselves will usually be taken on trust, and the speaker will maintain, say, the nobility or the utility of the deeds in question. (3) In political oratory, it will be urged that a proposal is impracticable; or that, though practicable, it is unjust, or will do no good, or is not so important as its proposer thinks. Argument by 'example' is highly suitable for political oratory, argument by 'enthymeme' better suits forensic. Enthymemes should not be used in unbroken succession; they should be interspersed with other matter. 'If you have proofs to bring forward, bring them forward, and your moral discourse as well; if you have no enthymemes, then fall back upon moral discourse: after all, it is more fitting for a good man to display himself as an honest fellow than as a subtle reasoner.' Hints as to the order in which arguments should be presented. As to character: you cannot well say complimentary things about yourself

or abusive things about another, but you can put such remarks into the mouth of some third person.

c. 18. Interrogation and Jests. The best moment to employ interrogation is when your opponent has so answered one question that the putting of just one more lands him in absurdity. In replying to questions, you must meet them, if they are ambiguous, by drawing reasonable distinctions, not by a curt answer.—Jests are supposed to be of some service in controversy. Gorgias said that you should kill your opponents' earnestness with jesting and their jesting with earnestness; in which he was right. Jests have been classified in the *Poetics*. 'Some are becoming to a gentleman, others are not; see that you choose such as become *you*. Irony better befits a gentleman than buffoonery; the ironical man jokes to amuse himself, the buffoon to amuse other people.'

c. 19. Epilogue (Peroration, Conclusion). This has four parts. You must (1) make the audience well disposed towards yourself and ill disposed towards your opponent, (2) magnify or minimize the leading facts, (3) excite the required kind of emotion in your hearers, and (4) refresh their memories by means of a recapitulation.—In your closing words you may dispense with conjunctions, and thereby mark the difference between the oration and the peroration: 'I have done. You have heard me. The facts are before you. I ask for your judgement.'

RHETORICA

BOOK I

1 RHETORIC is the counterpart of Dialectic.[1] Both alike 1354[a]
are concerned with such things as come, more or less, within the general ken of all men and belong to no definite science. Accordingly all men make use, more or less, of both; for to a certain extent all men attempt to discuss statements and to maintain them, to defend themselves and 5
to attack others. Ordinary people do this either at random or through practice and from acquired habit. Both ways being possible, the subject can plainly be handled systematically,[2] for it is possible to inquire the reason why some speakers succeed through practice and others sponta- 10
neously; and every one will at once agree that such an inquiry is the function of an art.

Now, the framers of the current treatises on rhetoric have constructed but a small portion of that art. The modes of persuasion[3] are the only true constituents of the art: everything else is merely accessory. These writers, however, say nothing about enthymemes, which are the substance of rhetorical persuasion, but deal mainly with non-essentials. 15
The arousing of prejudice, pity, anger, and similar emotions has nothing to do with the essential facts, but is merely

[1] 'Rhetoric' and 'Dialectic' may be roughly Englished as 'the art of public speaking' and 'the art of logical discussion'. Aristotle's philosophical definition of 'Rhetoric' is given at the beginning of c. 2.

[2] ὁδῷ ποιεῖν, Bywater: ὁδωποιεῖν, A[c] pr.

[3] Aristotle here means by πίστεις those attempts at *logical argument* on which he would himself like to see Rhetoric rely. In the next chapter, 1355[b] 35–1356[a] 4, he gives to the term the wide range it had in current rhetorical usage, and concludes with a reference to the argumentative side: *al δὲ ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ λόγῳ διὰ τοῦ δεικνύναι ἢ φαίνεσθαι δεικνύναι.* A uniform rendering of the word is hardly possible, but at the outset it is important to stress Aristotle's fundamental view (implied etymologically in the term πίστεις) that, from the nature of its materials, Rhetoric is, in general, *persuasive* rather than fully *demonstrative.* When in later portions of the treatise a single-word rendering is given, 'arguments' will be preferred to 'proofs', as avoiding confusion with ἀποδείξεις and τεκμήρια.

a personal appeal to the man who is judging the case. Consequently if the rules for trials which are now laid down in some states—especially in well-governed states—were applied everywhere, such people would have nothing to say. All men, no doubt, *think* that the laws should prescribe such rules, but some, as in the court of Areopagus, give practical effect to their thoughts and forbid talk about non-essentials. This is sound law and custom. It is not right to pervert the judge[1] by moving him to anger or envy or pity—one might as well warp a carpenter's rule before using it. Again, a litigant has clearly nothing to do but to show that the alleged fact is so or is not so, that it has or has not happened. As to whether a thing is important or unimportant, just or unjust, the judge must surely refuse to take his instructions from the litigants: he must decide for himself all such points as the law-giver has not already defined for him.

Now, it is of great moment that well-drawn laws should themselves define all the points they possibly can and leave as few as may be to the decision of the judges; and this for several reasons. First, to find one man, or a few 1354b men, who are sensible persons and capable of legislating and administering justice is easier than to find a large number. Next, laws are made after long consideration, whereas decisions in the courts are given at short notice, which makes it hard for those who try the case to satisfy the claims of justice and expediency. The weightiest reason of all is that the decision of the lawgiver is not particular but prospective and general, whereas members of the assembly and the jury find it *their* duty to decide on definite cases brought before them. They will often have allowed themselves to be so much influenced by feelings of friendship or hatred or self-interest that they lose any clear vision of the truth and have their judgement obscured by considerations of personal pleasure or pain. In general, then, the judge should, we say, be allowed to decide as few things as possible. But questions as to whether something has happened or has not happened, will be or will not be, is or is not,

[1] Here, and in what follows, the English reader should understand 'judge' in a broad sense, including 'jurymen' and others who 'judge'.

must of necessity be left to the judge, since the lawgiver cannot foresee them. If this is so, it is evident that any one who lays down rules about other matters, such as what must be the contents of the 'introduction' or the 'narration' or any of the other divisions of a speech, is theorizing about non-essentials as if they belonged to the art. The only question with which these writers here deal is how to put the judge into a given frame of mind. About the orator's proper modes of persuasion they have nothing to tell us; nothing, that is, about how to gain skill in enthymemes.

Hence it comes that, although the same systematic principles apply to political as to forensic oratory,[1] and although the former is a nobler business, and fitter for a citizen, than that which concerns the relations of private individuals, these authors say nothing about political oratory, but try, one and all, to write treatises on the way to plead in court. The reason for this is that in political oratory there is less inducement to talk about non-essentials. Political oratory is less given to unscrupulous practices than forensic, because it treats of wider issues. In a political debate the man who is forming a judgement is making a decision about his own vital interests. There is no need, therefore, to prove anything except that the facts are what the supporter of a measure maintains they are. In forensic oratory this is not enough; to conciliate the listener is what pays here. It is other people's affairs that are to be decided, so that the judges, intent on their own satisfaction and listening with partiality, surrender themselves to the disputants instead of judging between them. Hence in many places, as we have said already,[2] irrelevant speaking is forbidden in the law-courts: in the public assembly those who have to form a judgement are themselves well able to guard against that.

It is clear, then, that rhetorical study, in its strict sense,[3] is concerned with the modes of persuasion. Persuasion is

[1] The words 'orator' and 'oratory' have the advantage of brevity, but the reader will bear in mind that 'public speaker' and 'public speaking' are in some ways nearer the Greek conception of 'rhetor' and 'rhetoric'.

[2] 1354a 22. [3] On its 'technical' side.

clearly a sort of demonstration, since we are most fully persuaded when we consider a thing to have been demonstrated. The orator's demonstration is an enthymeme, and this is, in general, the most effective of the modes of persuasion. The enthymeme is a sort of syllogism, and the consideration of syllogisms of all kinds, without distinction, is the business of dialectic, either of dialectic as a whole or of one of its branches. It follows plainly, therefore, that he who is best able to see how and from what elements a syllogism is produced will also be best skilled in the enthymeme, when he has further learnt what its subject-matter is and in what respects it differs from the syllogism of strict logic. The true and the approximately true are apprehended by the same faculty; it may also be noted that men have a sufficient natural instinct for what is true, and usually do arrive at the truth. Hence the man who makes a good guess at truth is likely to make a good guess at probabilities.

It has now been shown that the ordinary writers on rhetoric treat of non-essentials; it has also been shown why they have inclined more towards the forensic branch of oratory.

Rhetoric is useful (1) because things that are true and things that are just have a natural tendency to prevail over their opposites, so that if the decisions of judges are not what they ought to be, the defeat must be due to the speakers themselves, and they must be blamed accordingly. Moreover, (2) before some audiences not even the possession of the exactest knowledge will make it easy for what we say to produce conviction. For argument based on knowledge implies instruction, and there are people whom one cannot instruct. Here, then, we must use, as our modes of persuasion and argument, notions possessed by everybody, as we observed in the *Topics*[1] when dealing with the way to handle a popular audience.[2] Further, (3) we must be able to

[1] *Topics*, i. 2, 101[a] 30–4.

[2] The passage 'Rhetoric is useful . . . audience' is quoted by Dionysius of Halicarnassus in his *First Letter to Ammaeus*, c. 6. Other references to Aristotle and the *Rhetoric* will be found in Roberts' edition of 'Dionysius of Halicarnassus, *The Three Literary Letters*', pp. 25–7, 52–85, 161–7. The *First Letter* discusses the chronology of Aristotle's life and the date of his *Rhetoric*.

employ persuasion, just as strict reasoning can be employed, on opposite sides of a question, not in order that we may in practice employ it in both ways (for we must not make people believe what is wrong), but in order that we may see clearly what the facts are, and that, if another man argues unfairly, we on our part may be able to confute him.[1] No other of the arts draws opposite conclusions: dialectic and rhetoric alone do this. Both these arts draw opposite conclusions impartially. Nevertheless, the underlying facts do not lend themselves equally well to the contrary views. No; things that are true and things that are better are, by their nature, practically always easier to prove and easier to believe in. Again, (4) it is absurd to hold that a man ought to be ashamed of being unable to defend himself with his limbs, but not of being unable to defend himself with speech and reason,[2] when the use of rational speech is more distinctive of a human being than the use of his limbs. And if it be objected that one who uses such power of speech unjustly might do great harm, *that* is a charge which may be made in common against all good things except virtue, and above all against the things that are most useful, as strength, health, wealth, generalship. A man can confer the greatest of benefits by a right use of these, and inflict the greatest of injuries by using them wrongly.

It is clear, then, that rhetoric is not bound up with a single definite class of subjects, but is as universal as dialectic; it is clear, also, that it is useful. It is clear, further, that its function is not simply to succeed in persuading, but rather to discover the means of coming as near such success as the circumstances of each particular case allow. In this it resembles all other arts. For example, it is not the function of medicine simply to make a man quite healthy, but to put him as far as may be on the road to health; it is possible to give excellent treatment even to those who can never enjoy sound health. Furthermore, it is plain that it is the function of one and the same art to discern the real and the apparent

[1] Reading τοῖς λόγοις αὐτοὶ in l. 33.

[2] λόγος, as comprising both *ratio* and *oratio*, is not easily translated with brevity.

means of persuasion, just as it is the function of dialectic to discern the real and the apparent syllogism. What makes a man a 'sophist' is not his faculty, but his moral purpose. In rhetoric, however, the term 'rhetorician' may describe either the speaker's knowledge of the art, or his moral purpose.[1] In dialectic it is different: a man is a 'sophist' because he has a certain kind of moral purpose, a 'dialectician' in respect, not of his moral purpose, but of his faculty.

Let us now try to give some account of the systematic principles of Rhetoric itself—of the right method and means of succeeding in the object we set before us. We must make as it were a fresh start, and before going further define what rhetoric is.

2 Rhetoric may be defined as the faculty of observing in any given case the available means of persuasion. This is not a function of any other art. Every other art can instruct or persuade about its own particular subject-matter; for instance, medicine about what is healthy and unhealthy, geometry about the properties of magnitudes, arithmetic about numbers, and the same is true of the other arts and sciences. But rhetoric we look upon as the power of observing the means of persuasion on almost any subject presented to us; and that is why we say that, in its technical character,[2] it is not concerned with any special or definite class of subjects.

Of the modes of persuasion some belong strictly to the art of rhetoric and some do not.[3] By the latter I mean such things as are not supplied by the speaker but are there at the outset—witnesses, evidence given under torture, written contracts, and so on. By the former I mean such as we can ourselves construct by means of the principles of rhetoric. The one kind has merely to be used, the other has to be invented.

[1] i. e. there is no special Greek term to denote the sophistical *rhetorician*, whereas the sophistical *dialectician* has the name of 'sophist'. ῥήτωρ, in fact, can mean either a *trained speaker* or a *tricky speaker*.

[2] 'In its technical character'='as an art (τέχνη)'.

[3] 'Some are technical, others non-technical'.

Of the modes of persuasion furnished by the spoken word 1356ª
there are three kinds. The first kind depends on the personal character of the speaker; the second on putting the audience into a certain[1] frame of mind; the third on the proof, or apparent proof, provided by the words of the speech itself. Persuasion is achieved by the speaker's personal character when the speech is so spoken as to make us think him credible. We believe good men more fully and more readily than others: this is true generally whatever the question is, and absolutely true where exact certainty is impossible and opinions are divided. This kind of persuasion, like the others, should be achieved by what the speaker says, not by what people think of his character before he begins to speak. It is not true, as some writers assume in their treatises on rhetoric, that the personal goodness revealed by the speaker contributes nothing to his power of persuasion; on the contrary, his character may almost be called the most effective means of persuasion he possesses. Secondly, persuasion may come through the hearers, when the speech stirs their emotions. Our judgements when we are pleased and friendly are not the same as when we are pained and hostile. It is towards producing these effects, as we maintain, that present-day writers on rhetoric direct the whole of their efforts. This subject shall be treated in detail when we come to speak of the emotions.[2] Thirdly, persuasion is effected through the speech itself when we have proved a truth or an apparent truth by means of the persuasive arguments suitable to the case in question.

There are, then, these three means of effecting persuasion. The man who is to be in command of them must, it is clear, be able (1) to reason logically, (2) to understand human character and goodness in their various forms, and (3) to understand the emotions—that is, to name them and describe them,[3] to know their causes and the way in which they are excited. It thus appears that rhetoric is an offshoot of dialectic and also of ethical studies. Ethical

[1] i.e. the right, fit, required frame of mind. [2] ii, cc. 2–11.
[3] To state their nature and quality, their genus and differentia.

studies may fairly be called political; and for this reason rhetoric masquerades as political science, and the professors of it as political experts—sometimes from want of education, sometimes from ostentation, sometimes owing to other human failings. As a matter of fact, it is a branch of dialectic and similar to it, as we said at the outset.[1] Neither rhetoric nor dialectic is the scientific study of any one separate subject: both are faculties for providing arguments. This is perhaps a sufficient account of their scope and of how they are related to each other.

With regard to the persuasion achieved by proof or apparent proof: just as in dialectic there is induction on the one hand and syllogism or apparent syllogism on the other, so it is in rhetoric. The example is an induction, the enthymeme is a syllogism, and the apparent enthymeme is an apparent syllogism. I call the enthymeme a rhetorical syllogism, and the example a rhetorical induction. Every one who effects persuasion through proof does in fact use either enthymemes or examples: there is no other way. And since every one who proves anything at all is bound to use either syllogisms or inductions (and this is clear to us from the *Analytics*[2]), it must follow that enthymemes are syllogisms and examples are inductions. The difference between example and enthymeme is made plain by the passages in the *Topics*[3] where induction and syllogism have already been discussed. When we base the proof of a proposition on a number of similar cases, this is induction in dialectic, example in rhetoric; when it is shown that, certain propositions being true, a further and quite distinct proposition must also be true in consequence, whether invariably or usually, this is called syllogism in dialectic, enthymeme in rhetoric. It is plain also that each of these types of oratory has its advantages. Types of oratory, I say: for what has been said in the *Methodics*[4] applies equally well here; in some oratorical styles examples prevail, in others enthymemes; and in like manner, some orators are better at the

[1] i. 1. 1354a 1. [2] *Anal. Pr.* ii. 23, 24; *Anal. Post.* i. 1. Cp. 68b 13.
[3] *Top.* i. 1 and 12.
[4] A lost logical treatise of Aristotle: but cp. Bonitz' Index, p. 101b.

former and some at the latter. Speeches that rely on examples are as persuasive as the other kind, but those which rely on enthymemes excite the louder applause. The sources of examples and enthymemes,[1] and their proper uses, we will discuss later.[2] Our next step is to define the processes themselves more clearly.

A statement is persuasive and credible either because it is directly self-evident or because it appears to be proved from other statements that are so. In either case it is persuasive because there is somebody whom it persuades. But none of the arts theorize about individual cases. Medicine, for instance, does not theorize about what will help to cure Socrates or Callias, but only about what will help to cure any or all of a given class of patients: this alone is its business: individual cases are so infinitely various that no systematic knowledge of them is possible. In the same way the theory of rhetoric is concerned not with what seems probable to a given individual like Socrates or Hippias, but with what seems probable to men of a given type; and this is true of dialectic also. Dialectic does not construct its syllogisms out of any haphazard materials, such as the fancies of crazy people, but out of materials that call for discussion; and rhetoric, too, draws upon the regular subjects of debate. The duty of rhetoric is to deal with such matters as we deliberate upon without arts or systems to guide us, in the hearing of persons who cannot take in at a glance a complicated argument, or follow a long chain of reasoning. The subjects of our deliberation are such as seem to present us with alternative possibilities: about things that could not have been, and cannot now or in the future be, other than they are, nobody who takes them to be of this nature wastes his time in deliberation.

It is possible to form syllogisms and draw conclusions from the results of previous syllogisms; or, on the other hand, from premisses which have not been thus proved, and at the same time are so little accepted that they call for

[1] Or 'The reason of this', if αὐτῶν is omitted with Muretus' translation and Bywater.

[2] ii, cc. 20–4.

proof. Reasonings of the former kind will necessarily be hard to follow owing to their length, for we assume an audience of untrained thinkers; those of the latter kind will fail to win assent, because they are based on premisses that are not generally admitted or believed.

The enthymeme and the example must, then, deal with what is in the main contingent, the example being an induction, and the enthymeme a syllogism, about such matters. The enthymeme must consist of few propositions, fewer often than those which make up the normal syllogism. For if any of these propositions is a familiar fact, there is no need even to mention it; the hearer adds it himself. Thus, to show that Dorieus has been victor in a contest for which the prize is a crown, it is enough to say 'For he has been victor in the Olympic games', without adding 'And in the Olympic games the prize is a crown', a fact which everybody knows.

There are few facts of the 'necessary' type that can form the basis of rhetorical syllogisms.[1] Most of the things about which we make decisions, and into which therefore we inquire, present us with alternative possibilities. For it is about our actions that we deliberate and inquire, and all our actions have a contingent character; hardly any of them are determined by necessity. Again, conclusions that state what is merely usual or possible must be drawn from premisses that do the same, just as 'necessary' conclusions must be drawn from 'necessary' premisses; this too is clear to us from the *Analytics*.[2] It is evident, therefore, that the propositions forming the basis of enthymemes, though some of them may be 'necessary', will most of them be only usually true. Now the materials of enthymemes are Probabilities and Signs, which we can see must correspond respectively with the propositions that are generally and those that are necessarily true. A Probability is a thing that usually happens; not, however, as some definitions would suggest, anything whatever that usually happens, but only if it belongs to the class of the 'contingent' or

[1] Retaining the manuscript reading ἐξ ὧν,—'materials', 'sources'.
[2] *An. Pr.* i. 8, 12–14, 27.

'variable'. It bears the same relation to that in respect of which it is probable[1] as the universal bears to the particular. Of Signs, one kind bears the same relation to the statement 1357b it supports as the particular bears to the universal, the other the same as the universal bears to the particular. The infallible kind is a 'complete proof' (τεκμήριον); the fallible kind has no specific name. By infallible signs I mean those on which syllogisms proper may be based: and 5 this shows us why this kind of Sign is called 'complete proof': when people think that what they have said cannot be refuted, they then think that they are bringing forward a 'complete proof', meaning that the matter has now been demonstrated and completed (πεπερασμένον); for the word πέρας has the same meaning (of 'end' or 'boundary') as the word τέκμαρ in the ancient tongue. Now the one kind of 10 Sign (that which bears to the proposition it supports the relation of particular to universal) may be illustrated thus. Suppose it were said, 'The fact that Socrates was wise and just is a sign that the wise are just'. Here we certainly have a Sign; but even though the proposition be true, the argument is refutable, since it does not form a syllogism. Suppose, on the other hand, it were said, 'The fact that he has a fever is a sign that he is ill', or, 'The fact that she is 15 giving milk is a sign that she has lately borne a child'. Here we have the infallible kind of Sign, the only kind that constitutes a complete proof, since it is the only kind that, if the particular statement is true, is irrefutable. The other kind of Sign, that which bears to the proposition it supports the relation of universal to particular, might be illustrated by saying, 'The fact that he breathes fast is a sign that he has a fever'. This argument also is refutable, even if the statement about the fast breathing be true, since a man may 20 breathe hard without having a fever.

It has, then, been stated above what is the nature of a Probability, of a Sign, and of a complete proof, and what are the differences between them. In the *Analytics*[2] a more

[1] i. e. bears the same relation to the conclusion to be reached: 'to that to which its general probability is directed'—to the particular probable case which has to be proved.

[2] *An. Pr.* ii. 27.

explicit description has been given of these points; it is there shown why some of these reasonings can be put into syllogisms and some cannot.

The 'example' has already been described as one kind of induction; and the special nature of the subject-matter that distinguishes it from the other kinds has also been stated above. Its relation to the proposition it supports is not that of part to whole, nor whole to part, nor whole to whole, but of part to part, or like to like. When two statements are of the same order, but one is more familiar than the other, the former is an 'example'. The argument may, for instance, be that Dionysius, in asking as he does for a bodyguard, is scheming to make himself a despot. For in the past Peisistratus kept asking for a bodyguard in order to carry out such a scheme, and did make himself a despot as soon as he got it; and so did Theagenes at Megara; and in the same way all other instances known to the speaker are made into examples, in order to show what is not yet known, that Dionysius has the same purpose in making the same request: all these being instances of the one general principle, that a man who asks for a bodyguard is scheming to make himself a despot.[1] We have now described the sources of those means of persuasion which are popularly supposed to be demonstrative.

There is an important distinction between two sorts of enthymemes that has been wholly overlooked by almost everybody—one that also subsists between the syllogisms treated of in dialectic. One sort of enthymeme really belongs to rhetoric, as one sort of syllogism really belongs to dialectic; but the other sort really belongs to other arts and faculties, whether to those we already exercise or to those we have not yet acquired. Missing this distinction, people fail to notice that the more correctly they handle their particular subject the further they are getting away from pure rhetoric or dialectic. This statement will be clearer if expressed more fully. I mean that the proper subjects of dialectical and rhetorical syllogisms are the

[1] Lit. 'that it is the man who is scheming . . . who asks . . . ⟨and nobody else⟩'. The Greek word-order makes this plain.

things with which we say the regular or universal Lines of Argument[1] are concerned, that is to say those lines of argument that apply equally to questions of right conduct, natural science, politics, and many other things that have nothing to do with one another. Take, for instance, the line of argument concerned with 'the more or less'.[2] On this line of argument it is equally easy to base a syllogism or enthymeme about any of what nevertheless are essentially disconnected subjects—right conduct, natural science, or anything else whatever. But there are also those special Lines of Argument which are based on such propositions as apply only to particular groups or classes of things. Thus there are propositions about natural science on which it is impossible to base any enthymeme or syllogism about ethics, and other propositions about ethics on which nothing can be based about natural science. The same principle applies throughout. The general Lines of Argument have no special subject-matter, and therefore will not increase our understanding of any particular class of things. On the other hand, the better the selection one makes of propositions suitable for special Lines of Argument,[3] the nearer one comes, unconsciously, to setting up a science that is distinct from dialectic and rhetoric. One may succeed in stating the required principles, but one's science will be no longer dialectic or rhetoric, but the science to which the principles thus discovered belong. Most enthymemes are in fact based upon these particular or special Lines of Argument; comparatively few on the common or general kind. As in the *Topics*,[4] therefore, so in this work, we must distinguish, in dealing with enthymemes, the special and the general Lines of Argument on which they are to be founded. By special Lines of Argument I mean the propositions peculiar to each several class of things, by general those common to all classes alike. We may begin with the special Lines of Argument. But, first of all, let us classify rhetoric into its varieties. Having distinguished these we may deal with

[1] Or Topics, Commonplaces. [2] i. e. the topic of *degree*.

[3] Comma after δέ and after προτάσεις: no comma after ἐκλέγηται: no bracket: βέλτιον with some manuscripts.

[4] Cp. *Top.* i. 10, 14; iii. 5; *Soph. El.* 9.

them one by one, and try to discover the elements of which each is composed, and the propositions each must employ.

Rhetoric falls into three divisions, determined by the three classes of listeners to speeches. For of the three elements in speech-making—speaker, subject, and person addressed—it is the last one, the hearer, that determines the speech's end and object. The hearer must be either a judge, with a decision to make about things past or future, or an observer.[1] A member of the assembly decides about future events, a juryman about past events: while those who merely decide on the orator's skill are observers.[2] From this it follows that there are three divisions of oratory—(1) political, (2) forensic, and (3) the ceremonial oratory of display.[3] 3

Political speaking urges us either to do or not to do something: one of these two courses is always taken by private counsellors, as well as by men who address public assemblies. Forensic speaking either attacks or defends somebody: one or other of these two things must always be done by the parties in a case. The ceremonial oratory of display either praises or censures somebody. These three kinds of rhetoric refer to three different kinds of time. The political orator is concerned with the future: it is about things to be done hereafter that he advises, for or against. The party in a case at law is concerned with the past; one man accuses the other, and the other defends himself, with reference to things already done. The ceremonial orator is, properly speaking, concerned with the present, since all men praise or blame in view of the state of things existing at the time, though they often find it useful also to recall the past and to make guesses at the future.

[1] *θεωρός*: a mere onlooker, present at a show, where he *decides* no grave political or legal issue (cp. 1391b 16–20) and plays no higher rôle than that of speech taster or oratorical connoisseur.—*Political* has been preferred to *deliberative*, as being clearer to the English reader. The oratory of the '(parliamentary) counsellor' is meant.

[2] Omitting Roemer's brackets.

[3] Or: deliberative (advisory), legal, and epideictic—the oratory respectively of parliamentary assemblies, of law-courts, and of ceremonial occasions when there is an element of 'display', 'show', 'declamation', and the result is a 'set speech' or 'harangue'.

Rhetoric has three distinct ends in view, one for each of its three kinds. The political orator aims at establishing the expediency or the harmfulness of a proposed course of action; if he urges its acceptance, he does so on the ground that it will do good; if he urges its rejection, he does so on the ground that it will do harm; and all other points, such as whether the proposal is just or unjust, honourable or dishonourable, he brings in as subsidiary and relative to this main consideration. Parties in a law-case aim at establishing the justice or injustice of some action, and they too bring in all other points as subsidiary and relative to this one. Those who praise or attack a man aim at proving him worthy of honour or the reverse, and they too treat all other considerations with reference to this one.

That the three kinds of rhetoric do aim respectively at the three ends we have mentioned is shown by the fact that speakers will sometimes not try to establish anything else. Thus, the litigant will sometimes not deny that a thing has happened or that he has done harm. But that he is guilty of injustice he will never admit; otherwise there would be no need of a trial. So too, political orators often make any concession short of admitting that they are recommending their hearers to take an inexpedient course or not to take an expedient one. The question whether it is not *unjust* for a city to enslave its innocent neighbours often does not trouble them at all. In like manner those who praise or censure a man do not consider whether his acts have been expedient or not, but often make it a ground of actual praise that he has neglected his own interest to do what was honourable. Thus, they praise Achilles because he championed his fallen friend Patroclus, though he knew that this meant death, and that otherwise he need not die: yet while to die thus was the nobler thing for him to do, the expedient thing was to live on.[1]

It is evident from what has been said that it is these three subjects, more than any others, about which the orator must be able to have propositions at his command. Now

[1] Homer, *Iliad*, xviii. 97 ff.

the propositions of Rhetoric are Complete Proofs, Probabilities, and Signs. Every kind of syllogism is composed of propositions, and the enthymeme is a particular kind of syllogism composed of the aforesaid propositions.[1]

Since only possible actions, and not impossible ones, can ever have been done in the past or the present,[2] and since things which have not occurred, or will not occur, also cannot have been done or be going to be done, it is necessary for the political, the forensic, and the ceremonial speaker alike to be able to have at their command propositions about the possible and the impossible, and about whether a thing has or has not occurred, will or will not occur. Further, all men, in giving praise or blame, in urging us to accept or reject proposals for action, in accusing others or defending themselves, attempt not only to prove the points mentioned but also to show that the good or the harm, the honour or disgrace, the justice or injustice, is great or small, either absolutely or relatively; and therefore it is plain that we must also have at our command propositions about greatness or smallness and the greater or the lesser—propositions both universal and particular. Thus, we must be able to say which is the greater or lesser good, the greater or lesser act of justice or injustice; and so on.

Such, then, are the subjects regarding which we are inevitably bound to master the propositions relevant to them. We must now discuss each particular class of these subjects in turn, namely those dealt with in political, in ceremonial, and lastly in legal, oratory.

4 First, then, we must ascertain what are the kinds of things, good or bad, about which the political orator offers counsel. For he does not deal with all things, but only with such as may or may not take place. Concerning things which exist or will exist inevitably, or which cannot possibly exist or take place, no counsel can be given. Nor, again, can counsel be given about the whole class of things

[1] i. e. of Complete Proofs, Probabilities, and Signs relating to the three subjects of the expedient, the just, and the noble.

[2] Reading *πεπρᾶχθαι* with A^c: the reference being to panegyrical oratory in e first case, to forensic in the second. Cp. Scholia, p. 12 (ed. Rabe).

which may or may not take place; for this class includes some good things that occur naturally, and some that occur by accident; and about these it is useless to offer counsel. Clearly counsel can only be given on matters about which people deliberate;[1] matters, namely, that ultimately depend on ourselves, and which we have it in our power to set going. For we turn a thing over in our mind until we have reached the point of seeing whether we can do it or not. 1359[b]

Now to enumerate and classify accurately the usual subjects of public business, and further to frame, as far as possible, true definitions of them, is a task which we must not attempt on the present occasion. For it does not belong to the art of rhetoric, but to a more instructive art and a more real branch of knowledge; and as it is, rhetoric has been given a far wider subject-matter than strictly belongs to it. The truth is, as indeed we have said already,[2] that rhetoric is a combination of the science of logic and of the ethical branch of politics; and it is partly like dialectic, partly like sophistical reasoning. But the more we try to make either dialectic or rhetoric not, what they really are, practical faculties, but sciences, the more we shall inadvertently be destroying their true nature; for we shall be re-fashioning them and shall be passing into the region of sciences dealing with definite subjects rather than simply with words and forms of reasoning. Even here, however, we will mention those points which it is of practical importance to distinguish, their fuller treatment falling naturally to political science.

The main matters on which all men deliberate and on which political speakers make speeches are some five in number: ways and means, war and peace, national defence, imports and exports, and legislation.

As to Ways and Means, then, the intending speaker will need to know the number and extent of the country's sources of revenue, so that, if any is being overlooked, it may be

[1] i.e. can only be given when we are asking ourselves what we are to *do*. Aristotle repeatedly (e.g. ii, c. 18) insists that effective rhetoric involves a *decision* by a *judge*, both 'judge' and 'decision' being used in a broad sense: cp. notes on 1354[a] 25 and 1358[b] 2. In politics such decisions normally mean action.

[2] i. 2. 1356[a] 25 ff.

added, and, if any is defective, it may be increased. Further, he should know all the expenditure of the country, in order that, if any part of it is superfluous, it may be abolished, or, if any is too large, it may be reduced. For men become richer not only by increasing their existing wealth but also by reducing their expenditure. A comprehensive view of these questions cannot be gained solely from experience in home affairs; in order to advise on such matters a man must be keenly interested in the methods worked out in other lands.

As to Peace and War, he must know the extent of the military strength of his country, both actual and potential, and also the nature of that actual and potential strength; and further, what wars his country has waged, and how it has waged them. He must know these facts not only about his own country, but also about neighbouring countries; and also about countries with which war is likely, in order that peace may be maintained with those stronger than his own, and that his own may have power to make war or not against those that are weaker. He should know, too, whether the military power of another country is like or unlike that of his own; for this is a matter that may affect their relative strength. With the same end in view he must, besides, have studied the wars of other countries as well as those of his own, and the way they ended; similar causes are likely to have similar results.

With regard to National Defence: he ought to know all about the methods of defence in actual use, such as the strength and character of the defensive force and the positions of the forts—this last means that he must be well acquainted with the lie of the country—in order that a garrison may be increased if it is too small or removed if it is not wanted, and that the strategic points may be guarded with special care.

With regard to the Food Supply: he must know what outlay will meet the needs of his country;[1] what kinds of food are produced at home and what imported; and what articles must be exported or imported. This last he must

[1] Comma after *πόλει*: no comma after *ποία*.

know in order that agreements and commercial treaties may be made with the countries concerned. There are, indeed, two sorts of state to which he must see that his countrymen give no cause for offence, states stronger than his own, and states with which it is advantageous to trade.

But while he must, for security's sake, be able to take all this into account, he must before all things understand the subject of legislation ; for it is on a country's laws that its whole welfare depends. He must, therefore, know how many different forms of constitution there are ; under what conditions each of these will prosper and by what internal developments or external attacks each of them tends to be destroyed. When I speak of destruction through internal developments I refer to the fact that all constitutions, except the best one of all, are destroyed both by not being pushed far enough and by being pushed too far. Thus, democracy loses its vigour, and finally passes into oligarchy, not only when it is not pushed far enough, but also when it is pushed a great deal too far ; just as the aquiline and the snub nose not only turn into normal noses by not being aquiline or snub enough, but also by being too violently aquiline or snub arrive at a condition in which they no longer look like noses at all.

It is useful, in framing laws, not only to study the past history of one's own country, in order to understand which constitution is desirable for it now, but also to have a knowledge of the constitutions of other nations, and so to learn for what kinds of nation the various kinds of constitution are suited. From this we can see that books of travel are useful aids to legislation, since from these we may learn the laws and customs of different races. The political speaker will also find the researches of historians useful. But all this is the business of political science and not of rhetoric.

These, then, are the most important kinds of information which the political speaker must possess.[1] Let us now go back and state the premisses from which he will have to 1360ᵇ

[1] Not inserting *τὰς προτάσεις* in l. 38.

argue in favour of adopting or rejecting measures regarding these and other matters.[1]

It may be said that every individual man and all men 5
in common aim at a certain end which determines what they choose and what they avoid. This end, to sum it up briefly, is happiness and its constituents. Let us, then, by way of illustration only, ascertain what is in general the nature of happiness, and what are the elements of its constituent parts. For all advice to do things or not to do them is concerned with happiness and with the things that make for or against it; whatever creates or increases happiness or some part of happiness, we ought to do; whatever destroys or hampers happiness, or gives rise to its opposite, we ought not to do.

We may define happiness as prosperity combined with virtue; or as independence of life; or as the secure enjoyment of the maximum of pleasure; or as a good condition of property and body, together with the power of guarding one's property and body and making use of them. That happiness is one or more of these things, pretty well everybody agrees.

From this definition of happiness it follows that its constituent parts are:—good birth, plenty of friends, good friends, wealth, good children, plenty of children, a happy old age, also such bodily excellences as health, beauty, strength, large stature, athletic powers, together with fame, honour, good luck, and virtue. A man cannot fail to be completely independent if he possesses these internal and these external goods; for besides these there are no others to have. (Goods of the soul and of the body are internal. Good birth, friends, money, and honour are external.) Further, we think that he should possess resources and luck, in order to make his life really secure. As we have already ascertained what happiness in general is, so now let us try to ascertain what each of these parts of it is.

Now good birth in a race or a state means that its

[1] Barthélemy Saint-Hilaire says of this chapter: 'Il est fait pour étonner beaucoup ceux qui croient non-seulement à notre supériorité, mais en outre à une différence radicale entre nous et les Grecs.'

members are indigenous or ancient; that its earliest leaders were distinguished men, and that from them have sprung many who were distinguished for qualities that we admire.

The good birth of an individual, which may come either from the male or the female side, implies that both parents are free citizens, and that, as in the case of the state, the founders of the line have been notable for virtue or wealth or something else which is highly prized, and that many distinguished persons belong to the family, men and women, young and old.

The phrases 'possession of good children' and 'of many children' bear a quite clear meaning. Applied to a community, they mean that its young men are numerous and of good quality: good in regard to bodily excellences, 1361a such as stature, beauty, strength, athletic powers; and also in regard to the excellences of the soul, which in a young man are temperance and courage. Applied to an individual, they mean that his own children are numerous and have the good qualities we have described. Both male and female are here included; the excellences of the latter are, in body, beauty and stature; in soul, self-command and an industry that is not sordid.[1] Communities as well as individuals should lack none of these perfections, in their women as well as in their men. Where, as among the Lacedaemonians, the state of women is bad, almost half of human life is spoilt.

The constituents of wealth are: plenty of coined money and territory; the ownership of numerous, large, and beautiful estates; also the ownership of numerous and beautiful implements, live stock, and slaves. All these kinds of property are our own, are secure, gentlemanly, and useful. The useful kinds are those that are productive, the gentlemanly kinds are those that provide enjoyment. By 'productive' I mean those from which we get our income; by 'enjoyable', those from which we get nothing worth mentioning except the use of them. The criterion of 'security' is the ownership of property in such places and under such conditions that the use of it is in our power;

[1] Or, as Thomas Hobbes well gives it in his *Briefe of the Art of Rhetorique*, 'housewiferie without sordidnesse'.

and it is 'our own' if it is in our own power to dispose of it or keep it. By 'disposing of it' I mean giving it away or selling it. Wealth as a whole consists in using things rather than in owning them; it is really the activity—that is, the use—of property that constitutes wealth.

Fame means being respected by everybody, or having some quality that is desired by all men, or by most, or by the good, or by the wise.

Honour is the token of a man's being famous for doing good. It is chiefly and most properly paid to those who have already done good; but also to the man who can do good in future. Doing good refers either to the preservation of life and the means of life, or to wealth, or to some other of the good things which it is hard to get either always or at that particular place or time—for many gain honour for things which seem small, but the place and the occasion account for it. The constituents of honour are: sacrifices; commemoration, in verse or prose; privileges; grants of land; front seats at civic celebrations;[1] state burial;[2] statues; public maintenance;[3] among foreigners, obeisances and giving place; and such presents as are among various bodies of men regarded as marks of honour. For a present is not only the bestowal of a piece of property, but also a token of honour; which explains why honour-loving as well as money-loving persons desire it. The
1361b present brings to both what they want; it is a piece of property, which is what the lovers of money desire; and it brings honour, which is what the lovers of honour desire.

The excellence of the body is health; that is, a condition which allows us, while keeping free from disease, to have the use of our bodies; for many people are 'healthy' as we are told Herodicus was; and these no one can congratulate on their 'health', for they have to abstain from everything or nearly everything that men do.—Beauty varies with the time of life. In a young man beauty is the possession of a body fit to endure the exertion of running and of contests of strength; which means that he is pleasant to look at; and

[1] More briefly, 'precedence'.
[2] Or, (splendid) tombs; sepulchres.
[3] 'Pensions'.

therefore all-round athletes are the most beautiful, being naturally adapted both for contests of strength and for speed also. For a man in his prime, beauty is fitness for the exertion of warfare, together with a pleasant but at the same time formidable appearance. For an old man, it is to be strong enough for such exertion as is necessary, and to be free from all those deformities of old age which cause pain to others.[1] Strength is the power of moving some one else[2] at will; to do this, you must either pull, push, lift, pin, or grip him; thus you must be strong in all of those ways or at least in some. Excellence in size is to surpass ordinary people in height, thickness, and breadth by just as much as will not make one's movements slower in consequence. Athletic excellence of the body consists in size, strength, and swiftness; swiftness implying strength. He who can fling forward his legs in a certain way, and move them fast and far, is good at running; he who can grip and hold down is good at wrestling; he who can drive an adversary from his ground with the right blow is a good boxer: he who can do both the last is a good pancratiast, while he who can do all is an 'all-round' athlete.

Happiness in old age is the coming of old age slowly and painlessly; for a man has not this happiness if he grows old either quickly, or tardily but painfully. It arises both from the excellences of the body and from good luck. If a man is not free from disease, or if he is not strong, he will not be free from suffering; nor can he continue to live a long and painless life unless he has good luck.[3] There is, indeed, a capacity for long life that is quite independent of health or strength; for many people live long who lack the excellences of the body; but for our present purpose there is no use in going into the details of this.

The terms 'possession of many friends' and 'possession of good friends' need no explanation; for we define a

[1] Or, 'to be free from pain (cp. 1361b 27), through escaping the ravages of old age'.

[2] Possibly, 'something else'. But a reference to wrestling is more probable, and *ἕτερον* (not *ἑτερόν τι*) suggests 'another person'.

[3] Comma after *ἀπαθής*: no comma after *ἄλυπος*: *οὔτ'* bracketed.

'friend' as one who will always try, for your sake, to do what he takes to be good for you. The man towards whom many feel thus has many friends; if these are worthy men, he has good friends.

'Good luck' means the acquisition or possession of all or most, or the most important, of those good things which
1362a are due to luck. Some of the things that are due to luck may also be due to artificial contrivance; but many are independent of art, as for example those which are due to nature—though, to be sure, things due to luck may actually be contrary to nature. Thus health may be due to artificial contrivance, but beauty and stature are due to nature. All
5 such good things as excite envy are, as a class, the outcome of good luck. Luck is also the cause of good things that happen contrary to reasonable expectation: as when, for instance, all your brothers are ugly, but you are handsome yourself; or when you find a treasure that everybody else has overlooked; or when a missile hits the next man and misses you; or when you are the only man not to go to
10 a place you have gone to regularly, while the others go there for the first time and are killed. All such things are reckoned pieces of good luck.

As to virtue, it is most closely connected with the subject of Eulogy, and therefore we will wait to define it until we come to discuss that subject.[1]

15 It is now plain what our aims, future or actual, should be 6 in urging, and what in deprecating, a proposal; the latter being the opposite of the former. Now the political or deliberative orator's aim is utility: deliberation seeks to determine not ends but the means to ends, i. e. what it is
20 most useful to do. Further, utility is a good thing. We ought therefore to assure ourselves of the main facts about Goodness and Utility in general.

We may define a good thing as that which ought to be chosen for its own sake; or as that for the sake of which we choose something else; or as that which is sought after by all things, or by all things that have sensation or reason, or

[1] i, c. 9.

which will be sought after by any things that acquire reason; or as that which must be prescribed for a given individual by reason generally, or is prescribed for him by his individual reason, this being his individual good; or as that whose presence brings anything into a satisfactory and self-sufficing condition; or as self-sufficiency; or as what produces, maintains, or entails characteristics of this kind, while preventing and destroying their opposites. One thing may entail another in either of two ways—(1) simultaneously, (2) subsequently. Thus learning entails knowledge subsequently, health entails life simultaneously. Things are productive of other things in three senses: first as being healthy produces health; secondly, as food produces health; and thirdly, as exercise does—i. e. it does so usually. All this being settled, we now see that both the acquisition of good things and the removal of bad things must be good; the latter entails freedom from the evil things simultaneously, while the former entails possession of the good things subsequently. The acquisition of a greater in place of a lesser good, or of a lesser in place of a greater evil, is also good, for in proportion as the greater exceeds the lesser there is acquisition of good or removal of evil.[1] The virtues, too, must be something good; for it is by possessing these that we are in a good condition, and they tend to produce good works and good actions. They must be severally named and described elsewhere.[2] Pleasure, again, must be a good thing, since it is the nature of all animals to aim at it. Consequently both pleasant and beautiful things must be good things, since the former are productive of pleasure, while of the beautiful things some are pleasant and some desirable in and for themselves.

The following is a more detailed list of things that must be good. Happiness, as being desirable in itself and sufficient by itself, and as being that for whose sake we choose

[1] Reading τούτῳ with A^c. Other readings are (1) τοῦτο, 'for the difference between the greater and the lesser constitutes acquisition of good in the one case and removal of evil in the other'; and (2) τούτου, 'for the acquisition and the removal of the difference between the greater and the lesser amount to the acquisition of good and the removal of evil respectively'.

[2] χωρίς 'separately': in c. 9.

many other things. Also justice, courage, temperance, magnanimity,[1] magnificence, and all such qualities, as being excellences of the soul. Further, health, beauty, and the like, as being bodily excellences and productive of many other good things: for instance, health is productive both of pleasure and of life, and therefore is thought the greatest of goods, since these two things which it causes, pleasure and life, are two of the things most highly prized by ordinary people. Wealth, again: for it is the excellence of possession, and also productive of many other good things. Friends and friendship: for a friend is desirable in himself and also productive of many other good things. So, too, honour and reputation, as being pleasant, and productive of many other good things, and usually accompanied by the presence of the good things that cause them to be bestowed. The faculty of speech and action; since all such qualities are productive of what is good. Further—good parts, strong memory, receptiveness, quickness of intuition, and the like, for all such faculties are productive of what is good. Similarly, all the sciences and arts. And life: since, even if no other good were the result of life, it is desirable in itself. And justice, as the cause of good to the community.

The above are pretty well all the things admittedly good. In dealing with things whose goodness is disputed, we may argue in the following ways:—That is good of which the contrary is bad. That is good the contrary of which is to the advantage of our enemies; for example, if it is to the particular advantage of our enemies that we should be cowards, clearly courage is of particular value to our countrymen. And generally, the contrary of that which our enemies desire, or of that at which they rejoice, is evidently valuable. Hence the passage beginning:

Surely would Priam exult.[2]

This principle usually holds good, but not always, since it may well be that our interest is sometimes the same as that

[1] i.e. loftiness of mind, greatness of spirit.

[2] *Iliad*, i. 255.—The verse-translations throughout are by Dr. A. S. Way, with occasional adaptations.—Aristotle, like other Greek writers, often indicates, as here, a whole passage by a few words taken from it.

of our enemies. Hence it is said that 'evils draw men together'; that is, when the same thing is hurtful to them both. 1363a

Further: that which is not in excess is good,[1] and that which is greater than it should be is bad. That also is good on which much labour or money has been spent; the mere fact of this makes it seem good, and such a good is assumed to be an end—an end reached through a long chain of means; and any end is a good. Hence the lines beginning:

> And for Priam (and Troy-town's folk) should they leave behind them a boast;[2]

and

> Oh, it were shame
> To have tarried so long and return empty-handed as erst we came;[3]

and there is also the proverb about 'breaking the pitcher at the door'.

That which most people seek after, and which is obviously an object of contention, is also a good; for, as has been shown,[4] that is good which is sought after by everybody, and 'most people' is taken to be equivalent to 'everybody'. That which is praised is good, since no one praises what is not good. So, again, that which is praised by our enemies [or by the worthless]; for when even those who have a grievance think a thing good, it is at once felt that every one must agree with them; our enemies can admit the fact only because it is evident, just as those must be worthless whom their friends censure and their enemies do not. (For this reason the Corinthians conceived themselves to be insulted by Simonides when he wrote:

> Against the Corinthians hath Ilium no complaint.[5])

Again, that is good which has been distinguished by the favour of a discerning or virtuous man or woman, as Odysseus was distinguished by Athena, Helen by Theseus, Paris by the goddesses, and Achilles by Homer. And, generally speaking, all things are good which men deliberately choose to do; this will include the things already

[1] Reading οὗ with the manuscripts. The 'mean' is meant.
[2] *Iliad*, ii. 160. [3] *Iliad*, ii. 298. [4] 1362a 23.
[5] Simonides, fragm. 50, Bergk[4].

mentioned, and also whatever may be bad for their enemies or good for their friends, and at the same time practicable. Things are 'practicable' in two senses: (1) it is possible to do them, (2) it is easy to do them. Things are done 'easily' when they are done either without pain or quickly: the 'difficulty' of an act lies either in its painfulness or in the long time it takes. Again, a thing is good[1] if it is as men wish; and they wish to have either no evil at all or at least a balance of good over evil. This last will happen where the penalty is either imperceptible or slight. Good, too, are things that are a man's very own, possessed by no one else, exceptional; for this increases the credit of having them.[2] So are things which befit the possessors, such as whatever is appropriate to their birth or capacity, and whatever they feel they ought to have but lack—such things may indeed be trifling, but none the less men deliberately make them the goal of their action. And things easily effected; for these are practicable (in the sense of being easy); such things are those in which every one, or most people, or one's equals, or one's inferiors have succeeded. Good also are the things by which we shall gratify our friends or annoy our enemies: and the things chosen by those whom we admire: and the things for which we are fitted by nature or experience, since we think we shall succeed more easily in these: and those in which no worthless man can succeed, for such things bring greater praise: and those which we do in fact desire, for what we desire is taken to be not only pleasant but also better. Further, a man
1363ᵇ of a given disposition makes chiefly for the corresponding things: lovers of victory make for victory, lovers of honour for honour, money-loving men for money, and so with the rest. These, then, are the sources from which we must derive our means of persuasion about Good and Utility.

7 Since, however, it often happens that people agree that two things are both useful but do not agree about which is

[1] Or perhaps better, 'Men deliberately choose a thing if it is . . . .'; the rest of the chapter thus being a list of *προαιρετά* (cp. *οὐδὲν γὰρ ἧττον προαιροῦνται ταῦτα πράττειν* l. 30 and also ll. 19, 20 above).

[2] Or, 'the value put upon them' (sc. by their possessor).

the more so, the next step will be to treat of relative goodness and relative utility.

A thing which surpasses another may be regarded as being that other thing plus something more, and that other thing which is surpassed as being what is contained in the first thing. Now to call a thing 'greater' or 'more' always implies a comparison of it with one that is 'smaller' or 'less', while 'great' and 'small', 'much' and 'little', are terms used in comparison with normal magnitude. The 'great' is that which surpasses the normal, the 'small' is that which is surpassed by the normal; and so with 'many' and 'few'.

Now we are applying the term 'good' to what is desirable for its own sake and not for the sake of something else; to that at which all things aim; to what they would choose if they could acquire understanding and practical wisdom; and to that which tends to produce or preserve such goods, or is always accompanied by them. Moreover, that for the sake of which things are done is the end (an end being that for the sake of which all else is done), and for each individual that thing is a good which fulfils these conditions in regard to himself. It follows, then, that a greater number of goods is a greater good than one or than a smaller number, if that one or that smaller number is included in the count; for then the larger number surpasses the smaller, and the smaller quantity is surpassed as being contained in the larger.

Again, if the largest member of one class surpasses the largest member of another, then the one class surpasses the other; and if one class surpasses another, then the largest member of the one surpasses the largest member of the other. Thus, if the tallest man is taller than the tallest woman, then men in general are taller than women. Conversely, if men in general are taller than women, then the tallest man is taller than the tallest woman. For the superiority of class over class is proportionate to the superiority possessed by their largest specimens. Again, where one good is always accompanied by another, but does not always accompany it, it is greater than the other, for the use of the second thing is implied in the use of the

first. A thing may be accompanied by another in three ways, either simultaneously, subsequently, or potentially. Life accompanies health simultaneously (but not health life), knowledge accompanies the act of learning subsequently, cheating accompanies sacrilege potentially, since a man who has committed sacrilege is always capable of cheating. Again, when two things each surpass a third, that which does so by the greater amount is the greater of the two; for it must surpass the greater as well as the less of the other two. A thing productive of a greater good than another is productive of is itself a greater good than that other. For this conception of 'productive of a greater' has been implied in our argument.[1] Likewise, that which is produced by a greater good is itself a greater good; thus, if what is wholesome is more desirable and a greater good than what gives pleasure, health too must be a greater good than pleasure. Again, a thing which is desirable in itself is a greater good than a thing which is not desirable in itself, as for example bodily strength than what is wholesome, since the latter is not pursued for its own sake, whereas the former is; and this was our definition of the good.[2] Again, if one of two things is an end, and the other is not, the former is the greater good, as being chosen for its own sake and not for the sake of something else; as, for example, exercise is chosen for the sake of physical well-being. And of two things that which stands less in need of the other, or of other things, is the greater good, since it is more self-sufficing. (That which stands 'less' in need of others is that which needs either *fewer* or *easier* things.) So when one thing does not exist or cannot come into existence without a second, while the second can exist without the first, the second is the better. That which does not need something else is more self-sufficing than that which does, and presents itself as a greater good for that reason. Again, that which is a beginning of other things is a greater good than that which is not,

[1] i. e. we have already (1363b 15) said that what is productive of good is good; it follows, then, from our way of looking at 'productivity' and 'degree', that what is productive of a greater good is a greater good.

[2] 1362a 22.

and that which is a cause is a greater good than that which is not; the reason being the same in each case, namely that without a cause and a beginning nothing can exist or come into existence. Again, where there are two sets of consequences arising from two different beginnings or causes, the consequences of the more important beginning or cause are themselves the more important; and conversely, that beginning or cause is itself the more important which has the more important consequences. Now it is plain, from all that has been said, that one thing may be shown to be more important than another from two opposite points of view: it may appear the more important (1) because it is a beginning[1] and the other thing is not, and also (2) because it is not a beginning and the other thing is—on the ground that the end is more important and is not a beginning.[2] So Leodamas, when accusing Callistratus, said that the man who prompted the deed was more guilty than the doer, since it would not have been done if he had not planned it.[3] On the other hand, when accusing Chabrias he said that the doer was worse than the prompter, since there would have been no deed without some one to do it; men, said he, plot a thing only in order to carry it out.

Further, what is rare is a greater good than what is plentiful. Thus, gold is a better thing than iron, though less useful: it is harder to get, and therefore better worth getting. Reversely, it may be argued that the plentiful is a better thing than the rare, because we can make more use of it. For what is often useful surpasses what is seldom useful, whence the saying

The best of things is water.[4]

More generally: the hard thing is better than the easy, because it is rarer: and reversely, the easy thing is better

[1] Or, 'first principle'; here and in what follows. But cp. the two following examples.

[2] We might perhaps expect 'on the ground that it is the end, not the beginning, that matters'; reading οὐχ ἡ ἀρχή (οὐχ ἀρχή), or taking οὐκ ἀρχή to mean 'not any poor beginning'. But cp. the Leodamas-Chabrias example.

[3] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, pp. 244, 245.

[4] Pindar, *Olympians*, i. 1.

than the hard, for it is as we wish it to be. That is the greater good whose contrary is the greater evil, and whose loss affects us more. Positive goodness and badness are more important than the mere *absence* of goodness and badness: for positive goodness and badness are ends, which the mere absence of them cannot be. Further, in proportion as the functions of things are noble or base, the things themselves are good or bad: conversely, in proportion as the things themselves are good or bad, their functions also are good or bad; for the nature of results corresponds with that of their causes and beginnings, and conversely the nature of causes and beginnings corresponds with that of their results. Moreover, those things are greater goods, superiority in which is more desirable or more honourable. Thus, keenness of sight is more desirable than keenness of smell, sight generally being more desirable than smell
1364[b] generally; and similarly, unusually great love of friends being more honourable than unusually great love of money, ordinary love of friends is more honourable than ordinary love of money. Conversely, if one of two normal things is better or nobler than the other, an unusual degree of that thing is better or nobler than an unusual degree of the other. Again, one thing is more honourable or better than another if it is more honourable or better to desire it; the importance of the object of a given instinct corresponds to the importance of the instinct itself; and for the same reason, if one thing is more honourable or better than another, it is more honourable and better to desire it. Again, if one science is more honourable and valuable than another, the activity with which it deals is also more honourable and valuable; as is the science, so is the reality that is its object, each science being authoritative in its own sphere. So, also, the more valuable and honourable the object of a science, the more valuable and honourable the science itself is in consequence. Again, that which would be judged, or which has been judged, a good thing, or a better thing than something else, by all or most people of understanding, or by the majority of men, or by the ablest, must be so; either without qualification, or in so far as they use

their understanding to form their judgement. This is indeed a general principle, applicable to all other judgements also; not only the goodness of things, but their essence, magnitude, and general nature are in fact just what knowledge and understanding will declare them to be. Here the principle is applied to judgements of goodness, since one definition of 'good' was 'what beings that acquire understanding will choose in any given case':[1] from which it clearly follows that that thing is *better* which understanding declares to be so. That, again, is a better thing which attaches to better men, either absolutely, or in virtue of their being better; as courage is better than strength. And that is a greater good which would be chosen by a better man, either absolutely, or in virtue of his being better: for instance, to suffer wrong rather than to do wrong, for that would be the choice of the juster man. Again, the pleasanter of two things is the better, since *all* things pursue pleasure, and things instinctively desire pleasurable sensation *for its own sake;* and these are two of the characteristics by which the 'good' and the 'end' have been defined. One pleasure is greater than another if it is more unmixed with pain, or more lasting. Again, the nobler thing is better than the less noble, since the noble is either what is pleasant or what is desirable in itself. And those things also are greater goods which men desire more earnestly to bring about for themselves or for their friends, whereas those things which they least desire to bring about are greater evils. And those things which are more lasting are better than those which are more fleeting, and the more secure than the less; the enjoyment of the lasting has the advantage of being longer, and that of the secure has the advantage of suiting our wishes, being there for us whenever we like. Further, in accordance with the rule of co-ordinate terms and inflexions of the same stem, what is true of one such related word is true of all. Thus if the action qualified by the term 'brave' is more noble and desirable than the action qualified by the term 'temperate', then 'bravery' is more desirable than 'temperance' and 'being brave' than 'being temperate'.

[1] Cp. 1363ᵇ 14.

That, again, which is chosen by all is a greater good than that which is not, and that chosen by the majority than that
1365a chosen by the minority. For that which *all* desire is good, as we have said ;[1] and so, the more a thing is desired, the better it is. Further, that is the better thing which is considered so by competitors or enemies, or, again, by authorized judges or those whom they select to represent them. In the first two cases the decision is virtually that of every one, in the last two that of authorities and experts. And sometimes it may be argued that what all share is
5 the better thing, since it is a dishonour not to share in it; at other times, that what none or few share is better, since it is rarer. The more praiseworthy things are, the nobler and therefore the better they are. So with the things that earn greater honours than others—honour is, as it were, a measure of value; and the things whose absence involves comparatively heavy penalties; and the things that are better than others admitted or believed to be good.
10 Moreover, things look better merely by being divided into their parts, since they then seem to surpass a greater number of things than before. Hence Homer says that Meleager was roused to battle by the thought of

All horrors that light on a folk whose city is ta'en of their foes,
When they slaughter the men, when the burg is wasted with ravening flame,
15 When strangers are haling young children to thraldom, ⟨fair women to shame⟩.[2]

The same effect is produced by piling up facts in a climax after the manner of Epicharmus. The reason is partly the same as in the case of division (for combination too makes the impression of great superiority), and partly that the original thing appears to be the cause and origin of important results. And since a thing is better when it is harder or rarer than other things, its superiority may be due
20 to seasons, ages, places, times, or one's natural powers. When a man accomplishes something beyond his natural

[1] 1363b 14.
[2] *Iliad*, ix. 592–4 (Aristotle seems to quote from memory, here and elsewhere).

power, or beyond his years, or beyond the measure of people like him, or in a special way, or at a special place or time, his deed will have a high degree of nobleness, goodness, and justice, or of their opposites. Hence the epigram on the victor at the Olympic games:

In time past, bearing a yoke on my shoulders, of wood unshaven,
I carried my loads of fish from Argos to Tegea town.[1]

So Iphicrates used to extol himself by describing the low estate from which he had risen. Again, what is natural is better than what is acquired, since it is harder to come by. Hence the words of Homer:

I have learnt from none but myself.[2]

And the best part of a good thing is particularly good; as when Pericles in his funeral oration said that the country's loss of its young men in battle was 'as if the spring were taken out of the year'.[3] So with those things which are of service when the need is pressing; for example, in old age and times of sickness. And of two things that which leads more directly to the end in view is the better. So too is that which is better for people generally as well as for a particular individual. Again, what *can* be got is better than what cannot, for it is good in a given case and the other thing is not. And what is at the end of life is better than what is not, since those things are ends in a greater degree which are nearer the end. What aims at reality is better than what aims at appearance. We may define what aims 1365ᵇ at appearance as what a man will not choose if nobody is to know of his having it. This would seem to show that to receive benefits is more desirable than to confer them, since a man will choose the former even if nobody is to know of it, but it is not the general view that he will choose the latter if nobody knows of it. What a man wants to *be* is better than what a man wants to *seem*, for in aiming at that he is aiming more at reality. Hence men say that justice

[1] Simonides, fragm. 163, Bergk⁴. [2] *Odyssey*, xxii. 347.
[3] Cp. iii, c. 10, 1411ª 4. This famous simile is not found in the Funeral Oration of Pericles, as given by Thucydides in his Second Book; cp. Roberts, *Patriotic Poetry: Greek and English*, pp. 77, 127.

is of small value, since it is more desirable to seem just than to be just, whereas with health it is not so. That is better than other things which is more useful than they are for a number of different purposes; for example, that which promotes life, good life, pleasure, and noble conduct. For this reason wealth and health are commonly thought to be of the highest value, as possessing all these advantages. Again, that is better than other things which is accompanied both with less pain and with actual pleasure; for here there is more than one advantage; and so here we have the good of feeling pleasure and also the good of not feeling pain. And of two good things that is the better whose addition to a third thing makes a better whole than the addition of the other to the same thing will make. Again, those things which we are seen to possess are better than those which we are not seen to possess, since the former have the air of reality. Hence wealth may be regarded as a greater good if its existence is known to others.[1] That which is dearly prized is better than what is not—the sort of thing that some people have only one of, though others have more like it. Accordingly, blinding a one-eyed man inflicts worse injury than half-blinding a man with two eyes; for the one-eyed man has been robbed of what he dearly prized.

The grounds on which we must base our arguments, when we are speaking for or against a proposal, have now been set forth more or less completely.

8 The most important and effective qualification for success in persuading audiences and speaking well on public affairs is to understand all the forms of government and to discriminate their respective customs, institutions, and interests. For all men are persuaded by considerations of their interest, and their interest lies in the maintenance of the established order. Further, it rests with the supreme authority to give authoritative decisions, and this varies with each form of government; there are as many different supreme authorities as there are different forms of government. The forms of government are four—democracy, oligarchy, aristocracy, monarchy. The supreme right to

[1] Reading τῷ δοκεῖν (Munro).

judge and decide always rests, therefore, with either a part or the whole of one or other of these governing powers.

A Democracy is a form of government under which the citizens distribute the offices of state among themselves by lot, whereas under oligarchy there is a property qualification, under aristocracy one of education.[1] By education I mean that education which is laid down by the law; for it is those who have been loyal to the national institutions that hold office under an aristocracy. These are bound to be looked upon as 'the best men', and it is from this fact that this form of government has derived its name ('the rule of the best'). Monarchy, as the word implies, is the constitution in which one man has authority over all. There are two forms of monarchy: kingship, which is limited by prescribed conditions, and 'tyranny',[2] which is not limited by anything.

We must also notice the ends which the various forms of government pursue, since people choose in practice such actions as will lead to the realization of their ends. The end of democracy is freedom; of oligarchy, wealth; of aristocracy, the maintenance of education and national institutions; of tyranny, the protection of the tyrant. It is clear, then, that we must distinguish those particular customs, institutions, and interests which tend to realize the ideal of each constitution, since men choose their means with reference to their ends. But rhetorical persuasion is effected not only by demonstrative but by ethical argument; it helps a speaker to convince us, if we believe that he has certain qualities himself, namely, goodness, or goodwill towards us, or both together. Similarly, we should know the moral qualities characteristic of each form of government, for the special moral character of each is bound to provide us with our most effective means of persuasion in dealing with it. We shall learn the qualities of governments in the same way as we learn the qualities of individuals, since they are revealed in their deliberate acts of choice; and these are determined by the end that inspires them.

[1] Perhaps 'discipline': with special reference to Sparta.
[2] Despotism, autocracy.

We have now considered the objects, immediate or distant, at which we are to aim when urging any proposal, and the grounds on which we are to base our arguments in favour of its utility. We have also briefly considered the means and methods by which we shall gain a good knowledge of the moral qualities and institutions peculiar to the various forms of government—only, however, to the extent demanded by the present occasion ; a detailed account of the subject has been given in the *Politics*.[1]

We have now to consider Virtue and Vice, the Noble and **9** the Base,[2] since these are the objects of praise and blame. In doing so, we shall at the same time be finding out how to make our hearers take the required view of our own characters—our second method of persuasion.[3] The ways in which to make them trust the goodness of other people are also the ways in which to make them trust our own. Praise, again, may be serious or frivolous ; nor is it always of a human or divine being but often of inanimate things, or of the humblest of the lower animals. Here too we must know on what grounds to argue, and must, therefore, now discuss the subject, though by way of illustration only.[4]

The Noble is that which is both desirable for its own sake and also worthy of praise ; or that which is both good and also pleasant because good. If this is a true definition of the Noble, it follows that virtue must be noble, since it is both a good thing and also praiseworthy. Virtue is, according to the usual view, a faculty of providing and preserving good things ; or a faculty of conferring many great benefits, and benefits of all kinds on all occasions.
1366ᵇ The forms of Virtue are justice, courage, temperance, magnificence, magnanimity, liberality, gentleness, prudence, wisdom. If virtue is a faculty of beneficence, the highest kinds of it must be those which are most useful to others, and for this reason men honour most the just and the courageous, since courage is useful to others in war, justice

[1] *Politics*, iii and iv.
[2] Or (here and elsewhere), 'Goodness and Badness, the Fine and the Mean.'
[3] 1356ª 2 and 5.
[4] i. e. enough to make our meaning clear.

both in war and in peace. Next comes liberality; liberal people let their money go instead of fighting for it, whereas other people care more for money than for anything else. Justice is the virtue through which everybody enjoys his own possessions in accordance with the law; its opposite is injustice, through which men enjoy the possessions of others in defiance of the law. Courage is the virtue that disposes men to do noble deeds in situations of danger, in accordance with the law and in obedience to its commands; cowardice is the opposite. Temperance is the virtue that disposes us to obey the law where physical pleasures are concerned; incontinence is the opposite. Liberality disposes us to spend money for others' good; illiberality is the opposite. Magnanimity is the virtue that disposes us to do good to others on a large scale; [its opposite is meanness of spirit]. Magnificence is a virtue productive of greatness in matters involving the spending of money. The opposites of these two are smallness of spirit and meanness respectively. Prudence is that virtue of the understanding which enables men to come to wise decisions about the relation to happiness of the goods and evils that have been previously mentioned.[1]

The above is a sufficient account, for our present purpose, of virtue and vice in general, and of their various forms. As to further aspects of the subject, it is not difficult to discern the facts; it is evident that things productive of virtue are noble, as tending towards virtue; and also the effects of virtue, that is, the signs of its presence and the acts to which it leads. And since the signs of virtue, and such acts as it is the mark of a virtuous man to do or have done to him, are noble, it follows that all deeds or signs of courage, and everything done courageously, must be noble things; and so with what is just and actions done justly. (Not, however, actions justly done to us; here justice is unlike the other virtues; 'justly' does not always mean 'nobly'; when a man is punished, it is more shameful that this should be justly than unjustly done to him). The same is true of the other virtues. Again, those actions are noble for which

[1] Cp. 1362b 10–28.

the reward is simply honour, or honour more than money. So are those in which a man aims at something desirable for some one else's sake; actions good absolutely, such as those a man does for his country without thinking of himself; actions good in their own nature; actions that are not good simply for the individual, since individual interests are selfish. Noble also are those actions whose advantage may be enjoyed after death, as opposed to those whose advantage is enjoyed during one's lifetime: for the latter are more likely to be for one's own sake only. Also, all actions done for the sake of others, since these less than other actions are done for one's own sake; and all successes which benefit others and not oneself; and services done to one's benefactors, for this is just; and good deeds generally, since they are not directed to one's own profit. And the opposites of those things of which men feel ashamed, for men are ashamed of saying, doing, or intending to do shameful things. So when Alcaeus said

> Something I fain would say to thee,
> Only shame restraineth me,[1]

Sappho wrote

> If for things good and noble thou wert yearning,
> If to speak baseness were thy tongue not burning,
> No load of shame would on thine eyelids weigh;
> What thou with honour wishest thou wouldst say.[2]

Those things, also, are noble for which men strive anxiously, without feeling fear; for they feel thus about the good things which lead to fair fame. Again, one quality or action is nobler than another if it is that of a naturally finer being: thus a man's will be nobler than a woman's. And those qualities are noble which give more pleasure to other people than to their possessors; hence the nobleness of justice and just actions. It is noble to avenge oneself on one's enemies and not to come to terms with them; for requital is just, and the just is noble; and not to surrender is a sign of courage. Victory, too, and honour belong to the class of noble things, since they are desirable even when they yield no fruits, and they prove our supe-

[1] Alcaeus, fragm. 55, Bergk[4]. [2] Sappho, fragm. 28, Bergk[4].

riority in good qualities. Things that deserve to be remembered are noble, and the more they deserve this, the nobler they are. So are the things that continue even after death; those which are always attended by honour; those which are exceptional; and those which are possessed by one person alone—these last are more readily remembered than others. So again are possessions that bring no profit, since they are more fitting than others for a gentleman. So are the distinctive qualities of a particular people, and the symbols of what it specially admires, like long hair in Sparta, where this is a mark of a free man, as it is not easy to perform any menial task when one's hair is long. Again, it is noble not to practise any sordid craft, since it is the mark of a free man not to live at another's beck and call. We are also to assume, when we wish either to praise a man or blame him, that qualities closely allied to those which he actually has are identical with them; for instance, that the cautious man is cold-blooded and treacherous, and that the stupid man is an honest fellow or the thick-skinned man a good-tempered one. We can always idealize any given man by drawing on the virtues akin to his actual qualities; thus we may say that the passionate and excitable man is 'outspoken'; or that the arrogant man is 'superb' or 'impressive'. Those who run to extremes will be said to possess the corresponding good qualities; rashness will be called courage, and extravagance generosity. That will be what most people think; and at the same time this method enables an advocate to draw a misleading inference from the motive, arguing that if a man runs into danger needlessly, much more will he do so in a noble cause; and if a man is open-handed to any one and every one, he will be so to his friends also, since it is the extreme form of goodness to be good to everybody.

1367ᵇ

We must also take into account the nature of our particular audience when making a speech of praise; for, as Socrates used to say, it is not difficult to praise the Athenians to an Athenian audience.[1] If the audience esteems a given quality, we must say that our hero has that

[1] Cp. Plato, *Menexenus*, 235 D

quality, no matter whether we are addressing Scythians or Spartans or philosophers. Everything, in fact, that is esteemed we are to represent as noble. After all, people regard the two things as much the same.

All actions are noble that are appropriate to the man who does them: if, for instance, they are worthy of his ancestors or of his own past career. For it makes for happiness, and is a noble thing, that he should add to the honour he already has. Even inappropriate actions are noble if they are better and nobler than the appropriate ones would be; for instance, if one who was just an average person when all went well becomes a hero in adversity, or if he becomes better and easier to get on with the higher he rises. Compare the saying of Iphicrates, 'Think what I was and what I am'; and the epigram on the victor at the Olympic games,

> In time past, bearing a yoke on my shoulders, of wood unshaven[1];

and the encomium of Simonides,

> A woman whose father, whose husband, whose brethren were princes all.[2]

Since we praise a man for what he has actually done, and fine actions are distinguished from others by being intentionally[3] good, we must try to prove that our hero's noble acts are intentional.[3] This is all the easier if we can make out that he has often acted so before, and therefore we must assert coincidences and accidents to have been intended.[3] Produce a number of good actions, all of the same kind, and people will think that they must have been intended,[3] and that they prove the good qualities of the man who did them.

Praise is the expression in words of the eminence of a man's good qualities, and therefore we must display his actions as the product of such qualities. Encomium refers to what he has actually done; the mention of accessories, such as good birth and education, merely helps to make our

[1] Cp. i. 7, 1365a 24–8, for this and the previous quotation.
[2] Simonides, fragm. 111, Bergk4.
[3] Deliberate intention, based on moral choice, is meant in all these cases.

story credible—good fathers are likely to have good sons, and good training is likely to produce good character. Hence it is only when a man has already done something that we bestow *encomiums* upon him. Yet the actual deeds are evidence of the doer's character: even if a man has not actually done a given good thing, we shall bestow *praise* on him, if we are sure that he is the sort of man who *would* do it. To call any one blest is, it may be added, the same thing as to call him happy[1]; but these are not the same thing as to bestow praise and encomium upon him; the two latter are a part of 'calling happy', just as goodness is a part of happiness.

To praise a man is in one respect akin to urging a course of action. The suggestions which would be made in the latter case become encomiums when differently expressed. 1368a When we know what action or character is required, then, in order to express these facts as suggestions for action, we have to change and reverse our form of words. Thus the statement 'A man should be proud not of what he owes to fortune but of what he owes to himself', if put like this, amounts to a suggestion; to make it into praise we must put it thus, 'Since he is proud not of what he owes to fortune but of what he owes to himself.'[2] Consequently, whenever you want to praise any one, think what you would urge people to do; and when you want to urge the doing of anything, think what you would praise a man for having done. Since suggestion may or may not forbid an action, the praise into which we convert it must have one or other of two opposite forms of expression accordingly.

There are, also, many useful ways of heightening the effect of praise. We must, for instance, point out that a man is the only one, or the first, or almost the only one who has done something, or that he has done it better than any one else; all these distinctions are honourable. And we must, further, make much of the particular season and occasion of an action, arguing that we could hardly have

[1] In other words, felicitation and congratulation are synonymous terms.

[2] Cp. Isocrates, *Evagoras* § 45 and *Panath.* § 32.

looked for it just then. If a man has often achieved the same success, we must mention this; that is a strong point; he himself, and not luck, will then be given the credit. So, too, if it is on his account that observances have been devised and instituted to encourage or honour such achievements as his own: thus we may praise Hippolochus because the first encomium ever made was for him, or Harmodius and Aristogeiton because their statues were the first to be put up in the market-place. And we may censure bad men for the opposite reason.

Again, if you cannot find enough to say of a man himself, you may pit him against others, which is what Isocrates used to do owing to his want of familiarity with forensic pleading.[1] The comparison should be with famous men; that will strengthen your case;[2] it is a noble thing to surpass men who are themselves great. It is only natural that methods of 'heightening the effect'[2] should be attached particularly to speeches of praise; they aim at proving superiority over others, and any such superiority is a form of nobleness. Hence if you cannot compare your hero with famous men, you should at least compare him with other people generally, since any superiority is held to reveal excellence. And, in general, of the lines of argument which are common to all speeches, this 'heightening of effect' is most suitable for declamations, where we take our hero's actions as admitted facts, and our business is simply to invest these with dignity and nobility. 'Examples'[3] are most suitable to deliberative speeches; for we judge of future events by divination from past events. Enthymemes are most suitable to forensic speeches; it is our doubts about past events that most admit of arguments showing why a thing must have happened or proving that it did happen.

[1] *συνήθειαν* ('familiarity,' instead of 'want of familiarity'), the reading of the inferior manuscripts, may be thought to be more in keeping with the context here and also with the tenour of iii, c. 13: notwithstanding that *ἀντιπαραβολή* has a wider meaning in iii. 13 and iii. 19 than here. But Isocrates does not seem to have had much actual practice as a pleader in the law-courts, though he wrote speeches for the use of litigants.

[2] *αὐξητικόν* and *αὔξησις* indicate rhetorical efforts to magnify, extol, amplify. Cp. 1368b 10 and ii, c. 26.

[3] i e. arguments from parallel cases.

The above are the general lines on which all, or nearly all, speeches of praise or blame are constructed. We have seen the sort of thing we must bear in mind in making such speeches, and the materials out of which encomiums and censures are made. No special treatment of censure and vituperation is needed. Knowing the above facts, we know their contraries; and it is out of these that speeches of censure are made.

10 We have next to treat of Accusation and Defence, and to 1368b enumerate and describe the ingredients of the syllogisms used therein. There are three things we must ascertain—first, the nature and number of the incentives to wrong-doing; second, the state of mind of wrongdoers; third, the kind of persons who are wronged, and their condition. We will deal with these questions in order. But before that let us define the act of 'wrong-doing'.

We may describe 'wrong-doing' as injury voluntarily inflicted contrary to law. 'Law' is either special or general. By special law I mean that written law which regulates the life of a particular community; by general law, all those unwritten principles which are supposed to be acknowledged everywhere. We do things 'voluntarily' when we do them consciously and without constraint. (Not all voluntary[1] acts are deliberate, but all deliberate acts are conscious[2]—no one is ignorant of what he deliberately intends.) The causes of our deliberately intending harmful and wicked acts contrary to law are (1) vice, (2) lack of self-control.[3] For the wrongs a man does to others will correspond to the bad quality or qualities that he himself possesses. Thus it is the mean man who will wrong others about money, the profligate in matters of physical pleasure, the effeminate in matters of comfort, and the coward where danger is concerned—his terror makes him abandon those who are involved in the same danger. The ambitious man[4] does wrong for the sake of honour, the quick-tempered from anger, the lover of victory for the sake of victory, the embittered man for the sake of revenge, the stupid man because he has misguided

[1] i. e. and therefore conscious. [2] i. e. and therefore voluntary.
[3] i. e. moral weakness. [4] Greek, 'the honour-loving man'.

notions of right and wrong, the shameless man because he does not mind what people think of him; and so with the rest—any wrong that any one does to others corresponds to his particular faults of character.[1]

However, this subject has already been cleared up in part in our discussion of the virtues[2] and will be further explained later when we treat of the emotions.[3] We have now to consider the motives and states of mind of wrong-doers, and to whom they do wrong.

Let us first decide what sort of things people are trying to get or avoid when they set about doing wrong to others. For it is plain that the prosecutor must consider, out of all the aims that can ever induce us to do wrong to our neighbours, how many, and which, affect his adversary; while the defendant must consider how many, and which, do *not* affect him. Now every action of every person either is or is not due to that person himself. Of those not due to himself some are due to chance, the others to necessity; of these latter, again, some are due to compulsion, the others to nature. Consequently all actions that are not due to a man himself are due either to chance or to nature or to compulsion. All actions that *are* due to a man himself and caused by himself are due either to habit or to rational or irrational craving. Rational craving is a craving for good, i. e. a *wish*—nobody wishes for anything unless he thinks it good. Irrational craving is twofold, viz. anger and appetite.[4]

Thus every action must be due to one or other of seven causes: chance, nature, compulsion, habit, reasoning, anger, or appetite. It is superfluous further to distinguish actions according to the doers' ages, moral states, or the like; it is of course true that, for instance, young men do have hot tempers and strong appetites; still, it is not through youth that they act accordingly, but through anger or appetite. Nor, again, is action due to wealth or poverty; it is of

[1] Lit., 'and similarly each of the other people (who do wrong to others does it) with reference to his particular part of the subject-matter (of bad character)'. Cp. *ὑποκειμένων τινῶν πραγμάτων*, 1359b 15.

[2] i, c. 9. [3] ii, cc. 1–11.

[4] Full stop after *ἐπιθυμία*. In translating *ἐπιθυμία*, 'desire' has sometimes been used, as well as 'appetite'.

course true that poor men, being short of money, do have an appetite for it, and that rich men, being able to command needless pleasures, do have an appetite for such pleasures: but here, again, their actions will be *due* not to wealth or poverty but to appetite. Similarly, with just men, and unjust men, and all others who are said to act in accordance with their moral qualities, their actions will really be due to one of the causes mentioned—either reasoning or emotion: due, indeed, sometimes to good dispositions and good emotions, and sometimes to bad; but that good qualities should be followed by good emotions, and bad by bad, is merely an accessory fact—it is no doubt true that the temperate man, for instance, because he is temperate, *is* always and at once attended by healthy opinions and appetites in regard to pleasant things, and the intemperate man by unhealthy ones. So we must ignore such distinctions. Still we must consider what kinds of actions and of people usually go together; for while there are no definite kinds of action associated with the fact that a man is fair or dark, tall or short, it does make a difference if he is young or old, just or unjust. And, generally speaking, all those accessory qualities that cause distinctions of human character are important: e.g. the sense of wealth or poverty, of being lucky or unlucky. This shall be dealt with later[1]—let us now deal first with the rest of the subject before us.

The things that happen by chance are all those whose cause cannot be determined, that have no purpose, and that happen neither always nor usually nor in any fixed way. The definition of chance shows just what they are. Those things happen by nature which have a fixed and internal cause; they take place uniformly, either always or usually. 1369ᵇ There is no need to discuss in exact detail the things that happen contrary to nature, nor to ask whether they happen in some sense naturally or from some other cause; it would seem that chance is at least partly the cause of such events. Those things happen through compulsion which take place contrary to the desire or reason of the doer, yet through his own agency. Acts are done from habit which men do

[1] ii, cc. 12–17.

because they have often done them before. Actions are due to reasoning when, in view of any of the goods already mentioned,[1] they appear useful either as ends or as means to an end, and are performed for that reason: 'for that reason,' since even licentious persons perform a certain number of useful actions, but because they are pleasant and not because they are useful. To passion and anger are due all acts of revenge. Revenge and punishment are different things. Punishment is inflicted for the sake of the person punished; revenge for that of the punisher, to satisfy his feelings. (What anger is will be made clear when we come to discuss the emotions.[2]) Appetite is the cause of all actions that appear pleasant. Habit, whether acquired by mere familiarity or by effort, belongs to the class of pleasant things, for there are many actions not naturally pleasant which men perform with pleasure, once they have become used to them. To sum up then, all actions due to ourselves either are or seem to be either good or pleasant. Moreover, as all actions due to ourselves are done voluntarily and actions not due to ourselves are done involuntarily, it follows that all voluntary actions must either be or seem to be either good or pleasant; for I reckon among goods escape from evils or apparent evils and the exchange of a greater evil for a less (since these things are in a sense positively desirable), and likewise I count among pleasures escape from painful or apparently painful things and the exchange of a greater pain for a less. We must ascertain, then, the number and nature of the things that are useful and pleasant. The useful has been previously examined in connexion with political oratory;[3] let us now proceed to examine the pleasant. Our various definitions must be regarded as adequate, even if they are not exact, provided they are clear.

II We may lay it down that Pleasure is a movement, a movement by which the soul as a whole is consciously brought into its normal state of being; and that Pain is the 1370a opposite. If this is what pleasure is, it is clear that the pleasant is what tends to produce this condition, while that

[1] i, c. 6. [2] ii, c. 2. [3] i, c. 6.

which tends to destroy it, or to cause the soul to be brought into the opposite state, is painful. It must therefore be pleasant as a rule to move towards a natural state of being, particularly when a natural process has achieved the complete recovery of that natural state. Habits also are pleasant; for as soon as a thing has become habitual, it is virtually natural; habit is a thing not unlike nature; what happens often is akin to what happens always, natural events happening always, habitual events often. Again, that is pleasant which is not forced on us; for force is unnatural, and that is why what is compulsory is painful, and it has been rightly said

All that is done on compulsion is bitterness unto the soul.[1]

So all acts of concentration, strong effort, and strain are necessarily painful; they all involve compulsion and force, unless we are accustomed to them, in which case it is custom that makes them pleasant. The opposites to these are pleasant; and hence ease, freedom from toil, relaxation, amusement, rest, and sleep belong to the class of pleasant things; for these are all free from any element of compulsion. Everything, too, is pleasant for which we have the desire within us, since desire is the craving for pleasure. Of the desires some are irrational, some associated with reason.[2] By irrational I mean those which do not arise from any opinion held by the mind. Of this kind are those known as 'natural'; for instance, those originating in the body, such as the desire for nourishment, namely hunger and thirst, and a separate kind of desire answering to each kind of nourishment; and the desires connected with taste and sex and sensations of touch in general; and those of smell, hearing, and vision. Rational desires are those which we are induced to have; there are many things we desire to see or get because we have been told of them and induced to believe them good. Further, pleasure is the consciousness through the senses of a certain kind of emotion; but imagination[3] is a feeble sort of sensation, and there will

[1] Evenus, fragm. 8, Bergk[4].
[2] 'are accompanied, or not accompanied, by a rational principle.'
[3] *φαντασία*, 'mental picturing', 'fancy', 'impression.'

always be in the mind of a man who remembers or expects something an image or picture of what he remembers or expects. If this is so, it is clear that memory and expectation also, being accompanied by sensation, may be accompanied by pleasure. It follows that anything pleasant is either present and perceived, past and remembered, or future and expected, since we perceive present pleasures, remember past ones, and expect future ones. Now the things that are pleasant to remember are not only those that, when actually perceived as present, *were* pleasant, but also some things that were not, provided that their results have subsequently proved noble and good. Hence the words

> Sweet 'tis when rescued to remember pain,[1]

and

> Even his griefs are a joy long after to one that remembers
> All that he wrought and endured.[2]

The reason of this is that it is pleasant even to be merely free from evil. The things it is pleasant to expect are those that when present are felt to afford us either great delight or great but not painful benefit. And in general, all the things that delight us when they are present also do so, as a rule, when we merely remember or expect them. Hence even being angry is pleasant—Homer said of wrath that

> Sweeter it is by far than the honeycomb dripping with sweetness[3]—

for no one grows angry with a person on whom there is no prospect of taking vengeance, and we feel comparatively little anger, or none at all, with those who are much our superiors in power. Some pleasant feeling is associated with most of our appetites; we are enjoying either the memory of a past pleasure or the expectation of a future one, just as persons down with fever, during their attacks of thirst, enjoy remembering the drinks they have had and looking forward to having more. So also a lover enjoys talking or writing about his loved one, or doing any little

[1] Euripides, *Andromeda*, fragm. 133 N².
[2] Cp. *Odyssey*, xv. 400, 401.
[3] *Iliad*, xviii. 109.

thing connected with him; all these things recall him to memory and make him actually present to the eye of imagination. Indeed, it is always the first sign of love, that besides enjoying some one's presence, we remember him when he is gone, and feel pain as well as pleasure, because he is there no longer. Similarly there is an element of pleasure even in mourning and lamentation for the departed. There is grief, indeed, at his loss, but pleasure in remembering him and as it were seeing him before us in his deeds and in his life. We can well believe the poet when he says

> He spake, and in each man's heart he awakened the love of lament.[1]

Revenge, too, is pleasant; it is pleasant to get anything that it is painful to fail to get, and angry people suffer extreme pain when they fail to get their revenge; but they enjoy the prospect of getting it. Victory also is pleasant, and not merely to 'bad losers', but to every one; the winner sees himself in the light of a champion, and everybody has a more or less keen appetite for being that. The pleasantness of victory implies of course that combative sports and intellectual contests are pleasant (since in these it often 1371a happens that some one wins[2]) and also games like knuckle-bones, ball, dice, and draughts. And similarly with the serious sports; some of these become pleasant when one is accustomed to them; while others are pleasant from the first, like hunting with hounds, or indeed any kind of hunting. For where there is competition, there is victory. That is why forensic pleading and debating contests are pleasant to those who are accustomed to them and have the capacity for them. Honour and good repute are among the most pleasant things of all; they make a man see himself in the character of a fine fellow, especially when he is credited with it by people whom he thinks good judges. His neighbours are better judges than people at a distance; his associates and fellow-countrymen better than strangers; his contemporaries better than posterity; sensible persons

[1] *Iliad*, xxiii. 108; *Odyssey*, iv. 183.

[2] Apparently one of the mild witticisms occasionally found in the *Rhetoric*. But cp. lines 5 and 6 below.

better than foolish ones; a large number of people better than a small number: those of the former class, in each case, are the more likely to be good judges of him. Honour and credit bestowed by those whom you think much inferior to yourself—e. g. children or animals—you do not value: not for its own sake, anyhow: if you do value it, it is for some other reason. Friends belong to the class of pleasant things; it is pleasant to love—if you love wine, you certainly find it delightful: and it is pleasant to be loved, for this too makes a man see himself as the possessor of goodness, a thing that every being that has a feeling for it desires to possess: to be loved means to be valued for one's own personal qualities. To be admired is also pleasant, simply because of the honour implied. Flattery and flatterers are pleasant: the flatterer is a man who, you believe, admires and likes you. To do the same thing often is pleasant, since, as we saw, anything habitual is pleasant.[1] And to change is also pleasant: change means an approach to nature, whereas invariable repetition of anything causes the excessive prolongation of a settled condition: therefore, says the poet,

Change is in all things sweet.[2]

That is why what comes to us only at long intervals is pleasant, whether it be a person or a thing; for it is a change from what we had before, and, besides, what comes only at long intervals has the value of rarity. Learning things and wondering at things are also pleasant as a rule; wondering implies the desire of learning,[3] so that the object of wonder is an object of desire; while in learning one is brought into one's natural condition. Conferring and receiving benefits belong to the class of pleasant things; to receive a benefit is to get what one desires; to confer a benefit implies both possession and superiority, both of which are things we try to attain. It is because beneficent acts are pleasant that people find it pleasant to put their neighbours straight again and to supply what they lack.

[1] i, c. 10, 1369b 16. [2] Euripides, *Orestes*, 234.
[3] Retaining *μαθεῖν*.

Again, since learning and wondering are pleasant, it follows that such things as acts of imitation must be pleasant— for instance, painting, sculpture, poetry—and every product of skilful imitation; this latter, even if the object imitated is not itself pleasant; for it is not the object itself which here gives delight; the spectator draws inferences ('That is a so-and-so') and thus learns something fresh.[1] Dramatic turns of fortune and hairbreadth escapes from perils are pleasant, because we feel all such things are wonderful.

And since what is natural is pleasant, and things akin to each other seem natural to each other, therefore all kindred and similar things are usually pleasant to each other; for instance, one man, horse, or young person is pleasant to another man, horse, or young person. Hence the proverbs 'mate delights mate', 'like to like',[2] 'beast knows beast', 'jackdaw to jackdaw', and the rest of them. But since everything like and akin to oneself is pleasant, and since every man is himself more like and akin to himself than any one else is, it follows that all of us must be more or less fond of ourselves. For all this resemblance and kinship is present particularly in the relation of an individual to himself. And because we are all fond of ourselves, it follows that what is our own is pleasant to all of us, as for instance our own deeds and words. That is why we are usually fond of our flatterers, [our lovers,] and honour; also of our children, for our children are our own work. It is also pleasant to complete what is defective, for the whole thing thereupon becomes our own work. And since power over others is very pleasant, it is pleasant to be thought wise, for practical wisdom secures us power over others. (Scientific wisdom is also pleasant, because it is the knowledge of many wonderful things.) Again, since most of us are ambitious, it must be pleasant to disparage our neighbours as well as to have power[3] over them. It is pleasant for a man to spend his time over what he feels he can do best; just as the poet says,

[1] Cp. *Poetics*, c. 4, 1448b 5–19.
[2] *Odyssey*, xvii. 218.
[3] Retaining καὶ τὸ ἄρχειν.

To that he bends himself,
To that each day allots most time, wherein
He is indeed the best part of himself.[1]

Similarly, since amusement and every kind of relaxation and laughter too belong to the class of pleasant things, it follows that ludicrous things are pleasant, whether men, words, or
1372a deeds. We have discussed the ludicrous separately in the treatise on the *Art of Poetry*.[2]

So much for the subject of pleasant things: by considering their opposites we can easily see what things are unpleasant.

The above are the motives that make men do wrong to 12
others; we are next to consider the states of mind in which
5 they do it, and the persons to whom they do it.

They must themselves suppose that the thing can be done, and done by them: either that they can do it without being found out, or that if they are found out they can escape being punished, or that if they are punished the disadvantage will be less than the gain for themselves or those they care for. The general subject of apparent possibility and impossibility will be handled later on,[3]
10 since it is relevant not only to forensic but to all kinds of speaking. But it may here be said that people think that they can themselves most easily do wrong to others without being punished for it if they possess eloquence, or practical ability, or much legal experience, or a large body of friends, or a great deal of money. Their confidence is greatest if they personally possess the advantages mentioned: but even without them they are satisfied if they have friends or
15 supporters or partners who do possess them: they can thus both commit their crimes and escape being found out and punished for committing them. They are also safe, they think, if they are on good terms with their victims or with the judges who try them. Their victims will in that case not be on their guard against being wronged, and

[1] Euripides, fragm. 183 N[2].
[2] Not found in the *Poetics*, as it exists to-day. Aristotle probably analysed the causes and conditions of laughter, when treating of Comedy in his lost Second Book.
[3] ii, c. 19.

will make some arrangement with them instead of prosecuting; while their judges will favour them because they like them, either letting them off altogether or imposing light sentences. They are not likely to be found out if their appearance contradicts the charges that might be brought against them: for instance, a weakling is unlikely to be charged with violent assault, or a poor and ugly man with adultery. Public and open injuries are the easiest to do, because nobody could at all suppose them possible, and therefore no precautions are taken. The same is true of crimes so great and terrible that no man living could be suspected of them: here too no precautions are taken. For all men guard against ordinary offences,[1] just as they guard against ordinary diseases; but no one takes precautions against a disease that nobody has ever had. You feel safe, too, if you have either no enemies or a great many; if you have none, you expect not to be watched and therefore not to be detected; if you have a great many, you will be watched, and therefore people[2] will think you can never risk an attempt on them, and you can defend your innocence by pointing out that you could never have taken such a risk. You may also trust to hide your crime by the way you do it or the place you do it in, or by some convenient means of disposal.

You may feel that even if you are found out you can stave off a trial, or have it postponed, or corrupt your judges: or that even if you are sentenced you can avoid paying damages, or can at least postpone doing so for a long time: or that you are so badly off that you will have nothing to lose.[3] You may feel that the gain to be got by wrongdoing is great or certain or immediate, and that the penalty is small or uncertain or distant. It may be that the advantage to be gained is greater than any possible retribution: as in the case of despotic power, according to the popular view. You may consider your crimes as bringing you solid profit, while their punishment is nothing more than

[1] Retaining καὶ τἀδικήματα.
[2] i. e. the victims of the injustice.
[3] Inserting, or supplying, εἰ after ἤ: cp. μηδέν.

being called bad names. Or the opposite argument may appeal to you: your crimes may bring you some credit (thus you may, incidentally, be avenging your father or mother, like Zeno), whereas the punishment may amount to a fine, or banishment, or something of that sort. People may be led on to wrong others by either of these motives or feelings; but no man by both—they will affect people of quite opposite characters. You may be encouraged by having often escaped detection or punishment already; or by having often tried and failed; for in crime, as in war, there are men who will always refuse to give up the struggle. You may get your pleasure on the spot and the pain later, or the gain on the spot and the loss later. That is what appeals to weak-willed persons—and weakness of will may be shown with regard to all the objects of desire. It may on the contrary appeal to you—as it does appeal to self-controlled and sensible people—that the pain and loss are immediate, while the pleasure and profit come later and last longer. You may feel able to make it appear that your crime was due to chance, or to necessity, or to natural causes, or to habit: in fact, to put it generally, as if you had failed to do right rather than actually done wrong. You may be able to trust other people to judge you equitably. You may be stimulated by being in want: which may mean that you want necessaries, as poor people do, or that you want luxuries, as rich people do. You may be encouraged by having a particularly good reputation, because that will save you from being suspected: or by having a particularly bad one, because nothing you are likely to do will make it worse.

The above, then, are the various states of mind in which a man sets about doing wrong to others. The kind of people to whom he does wrong, and the ways in which he does it, must be considered next. The people to whom he does it are those who have what he wants himself, whether this means necessities or luxuries and materials for enjoyment.[1] His victims may be far off or near at hand. If they are near, he gets his profit quickly; if they are far off, ven-

[1] Colon after ἀπόλαυσιν.

geance is slow, as those think who plunder the Carthaginians. They may be those who are trustful instead of being cautious and watchful, since all such people are easy to elude. Or those who are too easy-going to have enough energy to prosecute an offender. Or sensitive people, who are not apt to show fight over questions of money. Or those who have been wronged already by many people, and yet have not prosecuted; such men must surely be the proverbial 'Mysian prey'.[1] Or those who have either never or often been wronged before; in neither case will they take precautions; if they have never been wronged they think they never will, and if they have often been wronged they feel that surely it cannot happen again. Or those whose character has been attacked in the past, or is exposed to attack in the future: they will be too much frightened of the judges to make up their minds to prosecute,[2] nor can they win their case if they do: this is true of those who are hated or unpopular.[3] Another likely class of victim is those who their injurer can pretend have, themselves or through their ancestors or friends, treated badly, or intended to treat badly, the man himself, or his ancestors, or those he cares for; as the proverb says, 'wickedness needs but a pretext'. A man may wrong his enemies, because that is pleasant: he may equally wrong his friends, because that is easy. Then there are those who have no friends, and those who lack eloquence and practical capacity; these will either not attempt to prosecute, or they will come to terms, or failing that they will lose their case. There are those whom it does not pay to waste time in waiting for trial or damages, such as foreigners and small farmers; they will settle for a trifle, and always be ready to leave off. Also those who have themselves wronged others, either often, or in the same way as they are now being wronged themselves—for it is felt that next to no wrong is done to people when it is the same wrong as they have often themselves done to others: if, for instance, you assault a man who has been accustomed to behave with

[1] i.e. an easy prey.
[2] ἐπεξιέναι is perhaps not needed in the Greek text.
[3] Reading ὧν οἱ μισούμενοι καὶ φθονούμενοί εἰσιν.

violence to others. So too with those who have done wrong to others, or have meant to, or mean to, or are likely to do so; there is something fine and pleasant in wronging such persons, it seems as though almost no wrong were done. Also those by doing wrong to whom we shall be gratifying our friends, or those we admire or love, or our masters, or in general the people by reference to whom we mould our lives. Also those whom we may wrong and yet be sure of equitable treatment. Also those against whom we have had any grievance, or any previous differences with them, as Callippus had when he behaved as he did to Dion: here too it seems as if almost no wrong were being done. Also those who are on the point of being wronged by others if we fail to wrong them ourselves, since here we feel we have no time left for thinking the matter over. So Aenesidemus is said to have sent the 'cottabus' prize to Gelon, who had just reduced a town to slavery, because Gelon had got there first and forestalled his own attempt. Also those by wronging whom we shall be able to do many righteous acts; for we feel that we can then easily cure the harm done. Thus Jason the Thessalian said that it is a duty to do some unjust acts in order to be able to do many just ones.

Among the kinds of wrong done to others are those that are done universally, or at least commonly: one expects to be forgiven for doing these. Also those that can easily be kept dark, as where things that can rapidly be consumed like eatables are concerned, or things that can easily be changed in shape, colour, or combination, or things that can easily be stowed away almost anywhere—portable objects that you can stow away in small corners, or things so like others of which you have plenty already that nobody can tell the difference. There are also wrongs of a kind that shame prevents the victim speaking about, such as outrages done to the women in his household or to himself or to his sons. Also those for which you would be thought very litigious to prosecute any one—trifling wrongs, or wrongs for which people are usually excused.

The above is a fairly complete account of the circum-

stances under which men do wrong to others, of the sort of wrongs they do, of the sort of persons to whom they do them, and of their reasons for doing them.

13 It will now be well to make a complete classification of 1373[b] just and unjust actions. We may begin by observing that they have been defined relatively to two kinds of law, and also relatively to two classes of persons. By the two kinds of law I mean particular law and universal law. Particular law is that which each community lays down and applies to its own members: this is partly written and partly unwritten. Universal law is the law of nature. For there really is, as every one to some extent divines, a natural justice and injustice that is binding on all men, even on those who have no association or covenant with each other. It is this that Sophocles' Antigone clearly means when she says that the burial of Polyneices was a just act in spite of the prohibition: she means that it was just by nature.

> Not of to-day or yesterday it is,
> But lives eternal: none can date its birth.[1]

And so Empedocles, when he bids us kill no living creature, says that doing this is not just for some people while unjust for others,

> Nay, but, an all-embracing law, through the realms of the sky
> Unbroken it stretcheth, and over the earth's immensity.[2]

And as Alcidamas[3] says in his Messeniac Oration. . . .

The actions that we ought to do or not to do have also been divided into two classes as affecting either the whole community or some one of its members. From this point of view we can perform just or unjust acts in either of two ways—towards one definite person, or towards the community. The man who is guilty of adultery or assault is doing wrong to some definite person; the man who avoids service in the army is doing wrong to the community.

[1] Sophocles, *Antigone*, 456, 7 (ταῦτα, not τοῦτο, in Sophocles).
[2] Empedocles, 380. Cp. Diels, *Vors.*[3], i, p. 275; Burnet, *Early Greek Philosophy*[3], p. 225.
[3] According to the scholiast, the words of Alcidamas were, 'God has left all men free; Nature has made no man a slave'. Cp. Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 154 (Alcid., *Messen.*, fragm. 1).

Thus the whole class of unjust actions may be divided into two classes, those affecting the community, and those affecting one or more other persons. We will next, before going further, remind ourselves of what 'being wronged' means. Since it has already[1] been settled that 'doing a wrong' must be intentional, 'being wronged' must consist in having an injury done to you by some one who *intends* to do it. In order to be wronged, a man must (1) suffer actual harm, (2) suffer it against his will. The various possible forms of harm are clearly explained by our previous[2] separate discussion of goods and evils. We have also seen that a voluntary action is one where the doer knows what he is doing.[3] We now see that every accusation must be of an action affecting either the community or some individual. The doer of the action must either understand and intend the action, or not understand and intend it. In the former case, he must be acting either from deliberate choice or from passion. (Anger will be discussed when we speak of the passions[4]; the motives for crime and the state of mind of the criminal have already[5] been discussed.) Now it often happens that a man will admit an act, but will not admit the prosecutor's label[6] for the act nor the facts which that label implies. He will admit that he took a thing but not that he 'stole' it; that he struck some one first, but not that he committed 'outrage'; that he had intercourse with a woman, but not that he committed 'adultery'; that he is guilty of theft, but not that he is guilty of 'sacrilege', the object stolen not being consecrated; that he has encroached, but not that he has 'encroached on State lands'; that he has been in communication with the enemy, but not that he has been guilty of 'treason'. Here therefore we must be able to distinguish what is theft, outrage, or adultery, from what is not, if we are to be able to make the justice of our case clear, no matter whether our aim is to establish a man's guilt or to establish his innocence. Wherever such charges are brought against a man, the question is whether

[1] i, c. 10. [2] i, c. 6. [3] i, c. 10. [4] ii, c. 2.
[5] i, cc. 11 and 12.
[6] ἐπίγραμμα: a specification or description of the alleged offence, with a claim for a corresponding penalty.

he is or is not guilty of a criminal offence. It is deliberate purpose that constitutes wickedness and criminal guilt, and such names as 'outrage' or 'theft' imply deliberate purpose as well as the mere action. A blow does not always amount to 'outrage', but only if it is struck with some such purpose as to insult the man struck or gratify the striker himself. Nor does taking a thing without the owner's knowledge always amount to 'theft', but only if it is taken with the intention of keeping it and injuring the owner. And as with these charges, so with all the others.

We saw that there are two kinds of right and wrong conduct towards others, one provided for by written ordinances, the other by unwritten. We have now discussed the kind about which the laws have something to say. The other kind has itself two varieties. First, there is the conduct that springs from exceptional goodness or badness, and is visited accordingly with censure and loss of honour, or with praise and increase of honour and decorations: for instance, gratitude to, or requital of, our benefactors, readiness to help our friends, and the like. The second kind makes up for the defects of a community's written code of law. This is what we call equity; people regard it as just; it is, in fact, the sort of justice which goes beyond the written law. Its existence partly is and partly is not intended by legislators; not intended, where they have noticed no defect in the law; intended, where they find themselves unable to define things exactly, and are obliged to legislate as if that held good always which in fact only holds good usually; or where it is not easy to be complete owing to the endless possible cases presented, such as the kinds and sizes of weapons that may be used to inflict wounds—a lifetime would be too short to make out a complete list of these. If, then, a precise statement is impossible and yet legislation is necessary, the law must be expressed in wide terms; and so, if a man has no more than a finger-ring on his hand when he lifts it to strike or actually strikes another man, he is guilty of a criminal act according to the written words of the law; but he is innocent really, and it is equity that declares him to be so. From this definition of equity it is plain what 1374[b]

sort of actions, and what sort of persons, are equitable or the reverse. Equity must be applied to forgivable actions; and it must make us distinguish between criminal acts on the one hand, and errors of judgement, or misfortunes, on the other. (A 'misfortune' is an act, not due to moral badness, that has unexpected results: an 'error of judgement' is an act, also not due to moral badness, that has results that might have been expected: a 'criminal act' has results that might have been expected, but *is* due to moral badness, for that is the source of all actions inspired by our appetites.) Equity bids us be merciful to the weakness of human nature; to think less about the laws than about the man who framed them, and less about what he said than about what he meant; not to consider the actions of the accused so much as his intentions, nor this or that detail so much as the whole story; to ask not what a man is now but what he has always or usually been. It bids us remember benefits rather than injuries, and benefits received rather than benefits conferred; to be patient when we are wronged; to settle a dispute by negotiation and not by force; to prefer arbitration to litigation—for an arbitrator goes by the equity of a case, a judge by the strict law, and arbitration was invented with the express purpose of securing full power for equity.

The above may be taken as a sufficient account of the nature of equity.

The worse of two acts of wrong done to others is that **14** which is prompted by the worse disposition. Hence the most trifling acts may be the worst ones; as when Callistratus charged Melanopus with having cheated the temple-builders of three consecrated half-obols. The converse is true of just acts. This is because the greater is here potentially contained in the less: there is no crime that a man who has stolen three consecrated half-obols would shrink from committing. Sometimes, however, the worse act is reckoned not in this way but by the greater harm that it does. Or it may be because no punishment for it is severe enough to be adequate; or the harm done may be

incurable—a difficult and even hopeless crime to defend;[1] or the sufferer may not be able to get his injurer legally punished, a fact that makes the harm incurable, since legal punishment and chastisement are the proper cure. Or again, the man who has suffered wrong may have inflicted some fearful punishment on himself; then the doer of the wrong ought in justice to receive a still more fearful punishment. Thus Sophocles, when pleading for retribution to Euctemon, who had cut his own throat because of the outrage done to him, said he would not fix a penalty less 1375a than the victim had fixed for himself.[2] Again, a man's crime is worse if he has been the first man, or the only man, or almost the only man, to commit it: or if it is by no means the first time he has gone seriously[3] wrong in the same way: or if his crime has led to the thinking-out and invention of measures to prevent and punish similar crimes—thus in Argos a penalty is inflicted on a man on whose account a law is passed, and also on those on whose account the prison was built: or if a crime is specially brutal, or specially deliberate: or if the report of it awakes more terror than pity. There are also such rhetorically effective ways of putting it as the following: That the accused has disregarded and broken not one but many solemn obligations like oaths, promises, pledges, or rights of intermarriage between states—here the crime is worse because it consists of many crimes; and that the crime was committed in the very place where criminals are punished, as for example perjurers do—it is argued that a man who will commit a crime in a law-court would commit it anywhere. Further, the worse deed is that which involves the doer in special shame; that whereby a man wrongs his benefactors—for he does more than one wrong, by not merely doing them harm but failing to do them good; that which breaks the unwritten laws of justice—the better sort of man will be just without being forced to be so, and the written laws depend on force while the unwritten ones do not. It may

[1] Or, 'due punishment then being difficult or impossible'.
[2] Cp. Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 165.
[3] Retaining *μέγα*.

however be argued otherwise, that the crime is worse which breaks the written laws: for the man who commits crimes for which terrible penalties are provided will not hesitate over crimes for which no penalty is provided at all.—So much, then, for the comparative badness of criminal actions.

There are also the so-called 'non-technical'[1] means of persuasion; and we must now take a cursory view of these, since they are specially characteristic of forensic oratory. They are five in number: laws, witnesses, contracts, tortures, oaths.

First, then, let us take laws and see how they are to be used in persuasion and dissuasion,[2] in accusation and defence. If the written law tells against our case, clearly we[3] must appeal to the universal law, and insist on its greater equity and justice. We must argue that the juror's oath 'I will give my verdict according to my honest opinion' means that one will not simply follow the letter of the written law. We must urge that the principles of equity are permanent and changeless, and that the universal law does not change either, for it is the law of nature, whereas written laws often do change. This is the bearing of the lines in Sophocles' *Antigone*, where Antigone pleads that in burying her brother she had broken Creon's law, but not the unwritten law:

1375[b] Not of to-day or yesterday they are,
But live eternal: ⟨none can date their birth.⟩
Not I would fear the wrath of any man,
⟨And brave Gods' vengeance⟩ for defying these.[4]

We shall argue that justice indeed is true and profitable, but that sham justice is not, and that consequently the written law is not, because it does not fulfil the true purpose of law. Or that justice is like silver, and must be assayed by the judges, if the genuine is to be distinguished from the counterfeit. Or that the better a man is, the more he will follow and abide by the unwritten law in preference to the written. Or perhaps that the law in question contradicts

[1] Cp. c. 2, *supra*. [2] Retaining καὶ προτρέποντα καὶ ἀποτρέποντα.
[3] Here, and in what follows, 'we' must be taken in a general sense. More literally, 'tells against his case, clearly the litigant must. . . . He must argue, &c.' So with 'you' elsewhere: e.g. 1372[a,b].
[4] Sophocles, *Antigone*, 456 (ταῦτ' οὖν Aristotle: τούτων Sophocles).

some other highly-esteemed law, or even contradicts itself. Thus it may be that one law will enact that all contracts must be held binding, while another forbids us ever to make illegal contracts. Or if a law is ambiguous, we shall turn it about and consider which construction best fits the interests of justice or utility, and then follow that way of looking at it. Or if, though the law still exists, the situation to meet which it was passed exists no longer, we must do our best to prove this and to combat the law thereby. If however the written law supports our case, we must urge that the oath 'to give my verdict according to my honest opinion' is not meant to make the judges give a verdict that is contrary to the law, but to save them from the guilt of perjury if they misunderstand what the law really means. Or that no one chooses what is absolutely good, but every one what is good for himself.[1] Or that not to use the laws is as bad as to have no laws at all. Or that, as in the other arts, it does not pay to try to be cleverer than the doctor: for less harm comes from the doctor's mistakes than from the growing habit of disobeying authority. Or that trying to be cleverer than the laws is just what is forbidden by those codes of law that are accounted best.—So far as the laws are concerned, the above discussion is probably sufficient.

As to witnesses, they are of two kinds, the ancient and the recent; and these latter, again, either do or do not share in the risks of the trial. By 'ancient' witnesses I mean the poets and all other notable persons whose judgements are known to all. Thus the Athenians appealed to Homer[2] as a witness about Salamis; and the men of Tenedos not long ago appealed to Periander of Corinth in their dispute with the people of Sigeum; and Cleophon supported his accusation of Critias by quoting the elegiac verse of Solon, maintaining that discipline had long been slack in the family of Critias, or Solon would never have written,

Pray thee, bid the red-haired Critias do what his father commands him.[3]

[1] sc., and our written laws, which were made for us, may not reach the abstract ideal of perfection, but they probably suit us better than if they did.

[2] *Iliad*, ii. 557.

[3] Solon, fragm. 22, Bergk[4].

These witnesses are concerned with past events. As to
1376[a] future events we shall also appeal to soothsayers: thus Themistocles[1] quoted the oracle about 'the wooden wall' as a reason for engaging the enemy's fleet. Further, proverbs are, as has been said,[2] one form of evidence. Thus if you are urging somebody not to make a friend of an old man, you will appeal to the proverb,

Never show an old man kindness.[3]

Or if you are urging that he who has made away with fathers should also make away with their sons, quote,

Fool, who slayeth the father and leaveth his sons to avenge him.[4]

'Recent' witnesses are well-known people who have expressed their opinions about some disputed matter: such opinions will be useful support for subsequent disputants on the same points: thus Eubulus used in the law-courts against Chares the reply Plato[5] had made to Archibius, 'It has become the regular custom in this country to admit that one is a scoundrel'. There are also those witnesses who share the risk of punishment if their evidence is pronounced false. These are valid witnesses to the fact that an action was or was not done, that something is or is not the case; they are not valid witnesses to the quality of an action, to its being just or unjust, useful or harmful. On such questions of *quality* the opinion of detached persons is highly trustworthy. Most trustworthy of all are the 'ancient' witnesses, since they cannot be corrupted.

In dealing with the evidence of witnesses, the following are useful arguments. If you have no witnesses on your side, you will argue that the judges must decide from what is probable; that this is meant by 'giving a verdict in accordance with one's honest opinion'; that probabilities

[1] Herodotus, vii. 141, 143.

[2] A general statement, apparently. Or possibly (cp. *Poetics* 1454[a] 25) 'proverbs are evidence in the sense indicated', i. e. evidence of the future. But the Greek expression usually has the meaning which it bears in (e. g.) 1395[b] 5.

[3] Diogenianus, vi. 61, iii. 89.

[4] Stasinus, *Cypria*, fragm. 22 (Kinkel, *Epicorum Graecorum Fragmenta*, i, p. 31).

[5] Disputed whether the Comic Poet or the Philosopher.

cannot be bribed to mislead the court; and that probabilities are never convicted of perjury. If you *have* witnesses, and the other man has not, you will argue that probabilities cannot be put on their trial, and that we could do without the evidence of witnesses altogether if we need do no more than balance the pleas advanced on either side.

The evidence of witnesses may refer either to ourselves or to our opponent; and either to questions of fact or to questions of personal character: so, clearly, we need never be at a loss for useful evidence. For if we have no evidence of fact supporting our own case or telling against that of our opponent, at least we can always find evidence to prove our own worth or our opponent's worthlessness. Other arguments about a witness—that he is a friend or an enemy or neutral, or has a good, bad, or indifferent reputation, and any other such distinctions—we must construct upon the same general lines as we use for the regular rhetorical proofs.[1]

Concerning contracts argument can be so far employed as to increase or diminish their importance and their credibility; we shall try to increase both if they tell in our favour, and to diminish both if they tell in favour of our opponent. Now for confirming or upsetting the credibility of contracts the procedure is just the same as for dealing with witnesses, for the credit to be attached to contracts depends upon the character of those who have signed them or have the custody of them. The contract being once admitted genuine, we must insist on its importance, if it supports our case. We may argue that a contract is a law, though of a special and limited kind; and that, while contracts do not of course make the law binding, the law does make any lawful contract binding,[2] and that the law itself as a whole is a sort of contract, so that any one who disregards or repudiates any contract is repudiating the law itself. Further, most business relations—those, namely, that are voluntary—are regulated by contracts, and if these lose their binding force, human intercourse ceases to exist. We need not go very deep to discover the other appropriate

1376b

[1] 'enthymemes': cp. ii, c. 23.
[2] Comma (not full stop) after *συνθήκας*.

arguments of this kind. If, however, the contract tells against us and for our opponents, in the first place those arguments are suitable which we can use to fight a law that tells against us. We do not regard ourselves as bound to observe a bad law which it was a mistake ever to pass: and it is ridiculous to suppose that we are bound to observe a bad and mistaken contract. Again, we may argue that the duty of the judge as umpire is to decide what is just, and therefore he must ask where justice lies, and not what this or that document means. And that it is impossible to pervert justice by fraud or by force, since it is founded on nature, but a party to a contract may be the victim of either fraud or force. Moreover, we must see if the contract contravenes either universal law or any written law of our own or another country; and also if it contradicts any other previous or subsequent contract; arguing that the subsequent is the binding contract, or else that the previous one was right and the subsequent one fraudulent—whichever way suits us. Further, we must consider the question of utility, noting whether the contract is against the interest of the judges or not; and so on—these arguments are as obvious as the others.

Examination by torture is one form of evidence, to which great weight is often attached because it is in a sense compulsory. Here again it is not hard to point out the available grounds for magnifying its value, if it happens to tell in our favour, and arguing that it is the only form of evidence that is infallible; or, on the other hand, for refuting it if it tells against us and for our opponent, when we may say what is true of torture of every kind alike, that people under its compulsion tell lies quite as often as they tell the truth, sometimes persistently refusing to tell the truth, sometimes recklessly making a false charge in order to be let off sooner. We ought to be able to quote cases, familiar to the judges, in which this sort of thing has actually happened. [We must say that evidence under torture is not trustworthy, the fact being that many men whether thick-witted,[1] tough-skinned, or stout of heart endure their

[1] Omitting *οἱ* after *παχύφρονες*.

ordeal nobly, while cowards and timid men are full of boldness till they see the ordeal of these others: so that no trust can be placed in evidence under torture.]

In regard to oaths, a fourfold division can be made. A man may either both offer and accept an oath,[1] or neither, or one without the other—that is, he may offer an oath but not accept one, or accept an oath but not offer one. There is also the situation that arises when an oath has already been sworn either by himself or by his opponent.

If you refuse to offer an oath, you may argue that men do not hesitate to perjure themselves; and that if your opponent does swear, you lose your money, whereas, if he does not, you think the judges will decide against him; and[2] that the risk of an unfavourable verdict is preferable, since you trust the judges and do not trust him.

If you refuse to accept an oath, you may argue that an oath is always paid for; that you would of course have taken it if you had been a rascal, since if you *are* a rascal you had[3] better make something by it, and you would in that case have to swear in order to succeed. Thus your refusal, you argue, must be due to high principle, not to fear of perjury: and you may aptly quote the saying of Xenophanes,

'Tis not fair that he who fears not God should challenge him who doth.[4]

It is as if a strong man were to challenge a weakling to strike, or be struck by, him.

If you agree to accept an oath, you may argue that you trust yourself but not your opponent; and that (to invert the remark of Xenophanes) the fair thing is for the impious man to offer the oath and for the pious man to accept it; and that it would be monstrous if you yourself were unwilling to accept an oath in a case where you demand that the

[1] i. e. both demand an oath from his adversary (call upon him to swear to the truth of his statements) and take an oath himself.

[2] Retaining *καί*.

[3] *ἄν* should perhaps be omitted with the inferior manuscripts.

[4] Diels, *Vors.*[3], i. 44: read *τἀσεβεῖ*, with Bywater (*J. of Ph.*, xxxii, p. 116).

judges should do so before giving their verdict. If you wish to offer an oath, you may argue that piety disposes you to commit the issue to the gods; and that your opponent ought not to want other judges than himself, since you leave the decision with him; and that it is outrageous for your opponents to refuse to swear about this question, when they insist that others should do so.

Now that we see how we are to argue in each case separately, we see also how we are to argue when they occur in pairs, namely, when you are willing to accept the oath but not to offer it; to offer it but not to accept it; both to accept and to offer it; or to do neither. These are 1377[b] of course combinations of the cases already mentioned, and so your arguments also must be combinations of the arguments already mentioned.

If you have already sworn an oath that contradicts your present one, you must argue that it is not perjury, since perjury is a crime, and a crime must be a voluntary action, whereas actions due to the force or fraud of others are involuntary. You must further reason from this that perjury depends on the intention and not on the spoken words. But if it is your opponent who has already sworn an oath that contradicts his present one, you must say that if he does not abide by his oaths he is the enemy of society, and that this is the reason why men take an oath before administering the laws. 'My opponents insist that you, the judges, must abide by the oath you have sworn, and yet they are not abiding by their own oaths.'[1] And there are other arguments which may be used to magnify the importance of the oath.—[So much, then, for the 'non-technical' modes of persuasion.]

[1] After *ἐμμένουσιν*, full stop instead of note of interrogation.

BOOK II

1 We have now considered the materials to be used in supporting or opposing a political measure, in pronouncing eulogies or censures, and for prosecution and defence in the law courts. We have considered the received opinions on which we may best base our arguments so as to convince our hearers—those opinions with which our enthymemes deal, and out of which they are built, in each of the three kinds of oratory, according to what may be called the special needs of each.

But since rhetoric exists to affect the giving of decisions —the hearers decide between one political speaker and another, and a legal verdict *is* a decision—the orator must not only try to make the argument of his speech demonstrative and worthy of belief; he must also make his own character look right and put his hearers, who are to decide, into the right frame of mind. Particularly in political oratory, but also in lawsuits, it adds much to an orator's influence that his own character should look right and that he should be thought to entertain the right feelings towards his hearers; and also that his hearers themselves should be in just the right frame of mind. That the orator's own character should look right is particularly important in political speaking: that the audience should be in the right frame of mind, in lawsuits. When people are feeling friendly and placable, they think one sort of thing; when they are feeling angry or hostile, they think either something totally different or the same thing with a different intensity: when 1378a they feel friendly to the man who comes before them for judgement, they regard him as having done little wrong, if any; when they feel hostile, they take the opposite view. Again, if they are eager for, and have good hopes of, a thing that will be pleasant if it happens, they think that it certainly will happen and be good for them: whereas if they are indifferent or annoyed, they do not think so.

There are three things which inspire confidence in the orator's own character—the three, namely, that induce us to

believe a thing apart from any proof of it: good sense, good moral character, and goodwill. False statements and bad advice are due to one or more of the following three causes. Men either form a false opinion through want of good sense; or they form a true opinion, but because of their moral badness do not say what they really think; or finally, they are both sensible and upright, but not well disposed to their hearers, and may fail in consequence to recommend what they know to be the best course. These are the only possible cases. It follows that any one who is thought to have all three of these good qualities will inspire trust in his audience. The way to make ourselves thought to be sensible and morally good must be gathered from the analysis of goodness already given:[1] the way to establish your own goodness is the same as the way to establish that of others. Good will and friendliness of disposition will form part of our discussion of the emotions,[2] to which we must now turn.

The Emotions are all those feelings that so change men as to affect their judgements, and that are also attended by pain or pleasure. Such are anger, pity, fear and the like, with their opposites. We must arrange what we have to say about each of them under three heads. Take, for instance, the emotion of anger: here we must discover (1) what the state of mind of angry people is, (2) who the people are with whom they usually get angry, and (3) on what grounds they get angry with them. It is not enough to know one or even two of these points; unless we know all three, we shall be unable to arouse anger in any one. The same is true of the other emotions. So just as earlier in this work we drew up a list of useful propositions for the orator, let us now proceed in the same way to analyse the subject before us.

Anger may be defined as an impulse, accompanied by **2** pain, to a conspicuous revenge for a conspicuous slight directed without justification towards what concerns oneself or towards what concerns one's friends. If this is a proper

[1] i, c. 9. [2] ii, c. 4.

definition of anger, it must always be felt towards some particular individual, e. g. Cleon, and not 'man' in general. It must be felt because the other has done or intended to do something to him or one of his friends. It must always 1378b be attended by a certain pleasure—that which arises from the expectation of revenge. For since nobody aims at what he thinks he cannot attain, the angry man is aiming at what he can attain, and the belief that you will attain your aim is pleasant. Hence it has been well said about wrath,

Sweeter it is by far than the honeycomb dripping with sweetness,
And spreads through the hearts of men.[1]

It is also attended by a certain pleasure because the thoughts dwell upon the act of vengeance, and the images then called up cause pleasure, like the images called up in dreams.

Now slighting is the actively entertained opinion of something as obviously of no importance. We think bad things, as well as good ones, have serious importance; and we think the same of anything that tends to produce such things, while those which have little or no such tendency we consider unimportant. There are three kinds of slighting—contempt, spite, and insolence. (1) Contempt is one kind of slighting: you feel contempt for what you consider unimportant, and it is just such things that you slight. (2) Spite is another kind;[2] it is a thwarting another man's wishes, not to get something yourself but to prevent his getting it. The slight arises just from the fact that you do not aim at something for yourself: clearly you do not think that he can do you harm, for then you would be afraid of him instead of slighting him, nor yet that he can do you any good worth mentioning, for then you would be anxious to make friends with him. (3) Insolence is also a form of slighting, since it consists in doing and saying things that cause shame to the victim, not in order that anything may happen to yourself, or because anything has happened

[1] *Iliad*, xviii. 109 (cp. i, c. 11, 1370b 12 *supra*).
[2] Or, 'spite seems to show contempt': if φαίνεται καταφρονεῖν is retained.

to yourself, but simply for the pleasure involved. (Retaliation is not 'insolence', but vengeance.) The cause of the pleasure thus enjoyed by the insolent man is that he thinks himself greatly superior to others when ill-treating them. That is why youths and rich men are insolent; they think themselves superior when they show insolence. One sort of insolence is to rob people of the honour due to them; you certainly slight them thus; for it is the unimportant, for good or evil, that has no honour paid to it. So Achilles says in anger:

He hath taken my prize for himself and hath done me dishonour,[1]

and

Like an alien honoured by none,[2]

meaning that this is why he is angry. A man expects to be specially respected by his inferiors in birth, in capacity, in goodness, and generally in anything in which he[3] is much their superior: as where money is concerned a wealthy man looks for respect from a poor man; where speaking is concerned, the man with a turn for oratory looks for respect from one who cannot speak; the ruler demands the respect of the ruled, and the man who thinks he ought to be a ruler demands the respect of the man whom he thinks he ought to be ruling. Hence it has been said

Great is the wrath of kings, whose father is Zeus almighty,[4]

and

Yea, but his rancour abideth long afterward also,[5]

their great resentment being due to their great superiority. Then again a man looks for respect from those who he thinks owe him good treatment, and these are the people whom he has treated or is treating well, or means or has meant to treat well, either himself, or through his friends, or through others at his request.

It will be plain by now, from what has been said, (1) in what frame of mind, (2) with what persons, and (3) on what

[1] *Iliad*, i. 356. [2] *Ib.* ix. 648.
[3] Reading τις (Spengel), in place of ταῦτα. Or ἐν ταὐτῷ 'in anything common to them and him in which he', &c.
[4] *Iliad*, ii. 196. [5] *Ib.* i. 82.

grounds people grow angry. (1) The frame of mind is that in which any pain is being felt. In that condition, a man is always aiming at something. Whether, then, another man opposes him either directly in any way, as by preventing him from drinking when he is thirsty, or indirectly, the act appears to him just the same; whether some one works against him, or fails to work with him, or otherwise vexes him while he is in this mood, he is equally angry in all these cases. Hence people who are afflicted by sickness or poverty or love or thirst or any other unsatisfied desires are prone to anger and easily roused: especially against those who slight their present distress. Thus a sick man is angered by disregard of his illness, a poor man by disregard of his poverty, a man waging war by disregard of the war he is waging, a lover by disregard of his love, and so throughout, any other sort of slight being enough if special slights are wanting. Each man is predisposed, by the emotion now controlling him, to his own particular anger. Further, we are angered if we happen to be expecting a contrary result: for a quite unexpected evil is specially painful, just as the quite unexpected fulfilment of our wishes is specially pleasant. Hence it is plain what seasons, times, conditions, and periods of life tend to stir men easily to anger, and where and when this will happen; and it is plain that the more we are under these conditions the more easily we are stirred.

These, then, are the frames of mind in which men are easily stirred to anger. The persons with whom we get angry are those who laugh, mock, or jeer at us, for such conduct is insolent. Also those who inflict injuries upon us that are marks of insolence. These injuries must be such as are neither retaliatory nor profitable to the doers: for only then will they be felt to be due to insolence. Also those who speak ill of us, and show contempt for us, in connexion with the things we ourselves most care about: thus those who are eager to win fame as philosophers get angry with those who show contempt for their philosophy; those who pride themselves upon their appearance get angry

with those who show contempt for their appearance; and so on in other cases. We feel particularly angry on this account if we suspect that we are in fact, or that people think we are, lacking completely or to any effective extent in the
1379b qualities in question. For when we are convinced that we excel in the qualities for which we are jeered at, we can ignore the jeering. Again, we are angrier with our friends than with other people, since we feel that our friends ought to treat us well and not badly. We are angry with those who have usually treated us with honour or regard, if a change comes and they behave to us otherwise: for we think that they feel contempt for us, or they would still be behaving as they did before. And with those who do not return our kindnesses or fail to return them adequately, and with those who oppose us though they are our inferiors: for all such persons seem to feel contempt for us; those who oppose us seem to think us inferior to themselves, and those who do not return our kindnesses seem to think that those kindnesses were conferred by inferiors. And we feel particularly angry with men of no account at all, if they slight us. For, by our hypothesis, the anger caused by the slight is felt towards people who are not justified in slighting us, and our inferiors are not thus justified. Again, we feel angry with friends if they do not speak well of us or treat us well; and still more, if they do the contrary; or if they do not perceive our needs, which is why Plexippus is angry with Meleager in Antiphon's play[1]; for this want of perception shows that they are slighting us—we do not fail to perceive the needs of those for whom we care. Again, we are angry with those who rejoice at our misfortunes or simply keep cheerful in the midst of our misfortunes, since this shows that they either hate us or are slighting us. Also with those who are indifferent to the pain they give us: this is why we get angry with bringers of bad news. And with those who listen to stories about us or keep on looking at our weaknesses; this seems like either slighting us or hating us; for those who love us share in all our distresses and it must distress any one to keep on looking at his own

[1] Antiphon, *Meleager*, Nauck², p. 792.

weaknesses. Further, with those who slight us before five classes of people: namely, (1) our rivals, (2) those whom we admire, (3) those whom we wish to admire us, (4) those for whom we feel reverence, (5) those who feel reverence for us: if any one slights us before such persons, we feel particularly angry. Again, we feel angry with those who slight us in connexion with what we are as honourable men bound to champion—our parents, children, wives, or subjects. And with those who do not return a favour, since such a slight is unjustifiable. Also with those who reply with humorous levity when we are speaking seriously, for such behaviour indicates contempt. And with those who treat us less well than they treat everybody else; it is another mark of contempt that they should think we do not deserve what every one else deserves. Forgetfulness, too, causes anger, as when our own names are forgotten, trifling as this may be; since forgetfulness is felt to be another sign that we are being slighted; it is due to negligence, and to neglect us is to slight us.

The persons with whom we feel anger, the frame of mind in which we feel it, and the reasons why we feel it, have now all been set forth. Clearly the orator will have to speak so as to bring his hearers into a frame of mind that will dispose them to anger, and to represent his adversaries as open to such charges and possessed of such qualities as do make people angry. 1380a

3 Since growing calm is the opposite of growing angry, and calmness[1] the opposite of anger, we must ascertain in what frames of mind men are calm, towards whom they feel calm, and by what means they are made so. Growing calm may be defined as a settling down or quieting of anger. Now we get angry with those who slight us; and since slighting is a voluntary act, it is plain that we feel calm towards those who do nothing of the kind, or who do or seem to do it involuntarily. Also towards those who intended to do the opposite of what they did do. Also towards those who treat themselves as they have treated us: since no one

[1] Or: gentleness, mildness, placability, patience (with the corresponding adjectives).

can be supposed to slight himself. Also towards those who admit their fault and are sorry: since we accept their grief at what they have done as satisfaction, and cease to be angry. The punishment of servants shows this: those who contradict us and deny their offence we punish all the more, but we cease to be incensed against those who agree that they deserved their punishment. The reason is that it is shameless to deny what is obvious, and those who are shameless towards us slight us and show contempt for us: anyhow, we do not feel shame before those of whom we are thoroughly contemptuous. Also we feel calm towards those who humble themselves before us and do not gainsay us; we feel that they thus admit themselves our inferiors, and inferiors feel fear, and nobody can slight any one so long as he feels afraid of him. That our anger ceases towards those who humble themselves before us is shown even by dogs, who do not bite people when they sit down.[1] We also feel calm towards those who are serious when we are serious, because then we feel that we are treated seriously and not contemptuously. Also towards those who have done us more kindnesses than we have done them. Also towards those who pray to us and beg for mercy, since they humble themselves by doing so. Also towards those who do not insult or mock at or slight any one at all, or not any worthy person or any one like ourselves. In general, the things that make us calm may be inferred by seeing what the opposites are of those that make us angry. We are not angry with people we fear or respect, as long as we fear or respect them; you cannot be afraid of a person and also at the same time angry with him. Again, we feel no anger, or comparatively little, with those who have done what they did through anger; we do not feel that they have done it from a wish to slight us, for no one slights people when angry with them, since slighting is painless, and anger is painful. Nor do we grow angry with those who reverence us.

1380ᵇ

As to the frame of mind that makes people calm, it is plainly the opposite to that which makes them

[1] Cp. *Odyssey*, xiv. 29–31.

angry, as when they are amusing themselves or laughing or feasting; when they are feeling prosperous or successful or satisfied; when, in fine, they are enjoying freedom from pain, or inoffensive pleasure, or justifiable hope. Also when time has passed and their anger is no longer fresh, for time puts an end to anger. And vengeance previously taken on one person puts an end to even greater anger felt against another person. Hence Philocrates, being asked by some one, at a time when the public was angry with him, 'Why don't you defend yourself?' did right to reply, 'The time is not yet.' 'Why, when *is* the time?' 'When I see some one else calumniated.' For men become calm when they have spent their anger on somebody else. This happened in the case of Ergophilus: though the people were more irritated against him than against Callisthenes, they acquitted him because they had condemned Callisthenes to death the day before. Again, men become calm if they have convicted[1] the offender; or if he has already suffered worse things than they in their anger would have themselves inflicted upon him; for they feel as if they were already avenged. Or if they feel that they themselves are in the wrong and are suffering justly (for anger is not excited by what is just), since men no longer think then that they are suffering without justification; and anger, as we have seen,[2] means this. Hence we ought always to inflict a preliminary punishment in words: if that is done, even slaves are less aggrieved by the actual punishment. We also feel calm if we think that the offender will not see that he is punished on our account and because of the way he has treated us. For anger has to do with individuals. This is plain from the definition.[2] Hence the poet has well written:

Say that it was Odysseus, sacker of cities,[3]

implying that Odysseus would not have considered himself avenged unless the Cyclops perceived both by whom and for what he had been blinded. Consequently we do

[1] ἕλωσιν A^c. Or ἐλεῶσιν (A^c corr.) 'if they pity'.
[2] ii, c. 2, init. [3] *Odyssey*, ix. 504.

not get angry with any one who cannot be aware of our anger, and in particular we cease to be angry with people once they are dead, for we feel that the worst has been done to them, and that they will neither feel pain nor anything else that we in our anger aim at making them feel. And therefore the poet has well made Apollo say, in order to put a stop to the anger of Achilles against the dead Hector,

> For behold in his fury he doeth despite to the senseless clay.[1]

It is now plain that when you wish to calm others you must draw upon these lines of argument; you must put your hearers into the corresponding frame of mind, and represent those with whom they are angry as formidable, or as worthy of reverence, or as benefactors, or as involuntary agents, or as much distressed at what they have done.

4 Let us now turn to Friendship[2] and Enmity, and ask towards whom these feelings are entertained, and why. We will begin by defining friendship and friendly feeling. We may describe friendly feeling towards any one as wishing for him what you believe to be good things, not for your own sake but for his, and being inclined, so far as you can, to bring these things about. A friend is one who feels thus and excites these feelings in return: those who think they feel thus towards each other think themselves friends. This being assumed, it follows that your friend is the sort of man who shares your pleasure in what is good and your pain in what is unpleasant, for your sake and for no other reason. This pleasure and pain of his will be the token of his good wishes for you, since we all feel glad at getting what we wish for, and pained at getting what we do not. Those, then, are friends to whom the same things are good and evil; and those who are, moreover, friendly or unfriendly to the same people; for in that case they must have the same wishes, and thus by wishing for each other what they wish for themselves, they show themselves each other's friends.

[1] *Iliad*, xxiv. 54.

[2] In this chapter and elsewhere it is difficult to translate φιλεῖν (and its related words) by any single English equivalent; 'to be a friend', 'to like', 'to love', may have to be used in turn. Cp. W. D. Ross, *Aristotle*, p. 230.

Again, we feel friendly to those who have treated us well, either ourselves or those we care for, whether on a large scale, or readily, or at some particular crisis; provided it was for our own sake. And also to those who we think *wish* to treat us well. And also to our friends' friends, and to those who like, or are liked by, those whom we like ourselves. And also to those who are enemies to those whose enemies we are, and dislike, or are disliked by, those whom we dislike. For all such persons think the things good which we think good, so that they wish what is good for us; and this, as we saw,[1] is what friends must do. And also to those who are willing to treat us well where money or our personal safety is concerned: and therefore we value those who are liberal, brave, or just. The just we consider to be those who do not live on others; which means those who work for their living, especially farmers and others who work with their own hands. We also like temperate men, because they are not unjust to others; and, for the same reason, those who mind their own business. And also those whose friends we wish to be, if it is plain that they wish to be our friends: such are the morally good, and those well thought of by every one, by the best men, or by those whom we admire or who admire us. And also those with whom it is pleasant to live and spend our days: such are the good-tempered, and those who are not too ready to show us our mistakes, and those who are not cantankerous or quarrelsome—such people are always wanting to fight us, and those who fight us we feel wish for the opposite of what we wish for ourselves—and those who have the tact to make and take a joke; here both parties have the same object in view,[2] when they can stand being made fun of as well as do it prettily themselves. And we also feel friendly towards those who praise such good qualities as we possess, and especially if they praise the good qualities that we are not too sure we *do* possess. And towards those who are cleanly 1381b in their person, their dress, and all their way of life. And towards those who do not reproach us with what we

[1] ii, c. 4, init.
[2] i. e. both wish to pass the time pleasantly.

have done amiss to them or they have done to help us, for both actions show a tendency to criticize us. And towards those who do not nurse grudges or store up grievances, but are always ready to make friends again; for we take it that they will behave to us just as we find them behaving to every one else. And towards those who are not evil speakers and who are aware of neither their neighbours' bad points nor our own, but of our good ones only, as a good man always will be. And towards those who do not try to thwart us when we are angry or in earnest, which would mean being ready to fight us. And towards those who have some serious feeling towards us, such as admiration for us, or belief in our goodness, or pleasure in our company; especially if they feel like this about qualities in us for which we especially wish to be admired, esteemed, or liked. And towards those who are like ourselves in character and occupation, provided they do not get in our way or gain their living from the same source as we do—for then it will be a case of 'potter against potter':

> Potter to potter and builder to builder begrudge their reward.[1]

And those who desire the same things as we desire, if it is possible for us both to share them together; otherwise the same trouble arises here too. And towards those with whom we are on such terms that, while we respect their opinions, we need not blush before them for doing what is conventionally wrong: as well as towards those before whom we should be ashamed to do anything really wrong. Again, our rivals, and those whom we should like to envy us—though without ill-feeling—either we like these people or at least we wish them to like us. And we feel friendly towards those whom we help to secure good for themselves, provided we are not likely to suffer heavily by it ourselves. And those who feel as friendly to us when we are not with them as when we are—which is why all men feel friendly towards those who are faithful to their dead friends. And, speaking generally, towards those who are really fond of their friends

[1] Hesiod, *Works and Days*, 25 καὶ κεραμεὺς κεραμεῖ κοτέει καὶ τέκτονι τέκτων.

and do not desert them in trouble; of all good men, we feel most friendly to those who show their goodness as friends. Also towards those who are honest with us, including those who will tell us of their own weak points: it has just been said that with our friends we are not ashamed of what is conventionally wrong,[1] and if we do have this feeling, we do not love them; if therefore we do not have it, it looks as if we *did* love them. We also like those with whom we do not feel frightened or uncomfortable—nobody can like a man of whom he feels frightened. Friendship has various forms—comradeship, intimacy, kinship, and so on.

Things that cause friendship are: doing kindnesses; doing them unasked; and not proclaiming the fact when they are done, which shows that they were done for our own sake and not for some other reason.

Enmity and Hatred should clearly be studied by reference 1382a to their opposites. Enmity may be produced by anger or spite or calumny. Now whereas anger arises from offences against oneself, enmity may arise even without that; we may hate people merely because of what we take to be their character. Anger is always concerned with individuals—a Callias or a Socrates—whereas hatred is directed also against classes: we all hate any thief and any informer. Moreover, anger can be cured by time; but hatred cannot. The one aims at giving pain to its object, the other at doing him harm; the angry man wants his victims to feel; the hater does not mind whether they feel or not. All painful things are felt; but the greatest evils, injustice and folly, are the least felt, since their presence causes no pain. And anger is accompanied by pain, hatred is not; the angry man feels pain, but the hater does not. Much may happen to make the angry man pity those who offend him, but the hater under no circumstances wishes to pity a man whom he has once hated: for the one would have the offenders suffer for what they have done; the other would have them cease to exist.

It is plain from all this that we can prove people to be friends or enemies; if they are not, we can make them out to be

[1] 1381b 20.

so; if they claim to be so, we can refute their claim; and if it is disputed whether an action was due to anger or to hatred, we can attribute it to whichever of these we prefer.[1]

To turn next to Fear, what follows will show the things 5
and persons of which, and the states of mind in which, we feel afraid. Fear may be defined as a pain or disturbance due to a mental picture of some destructive or painful evil in the future. Of destructive or painful evils only; for there are some evils, e. g. wickedness or stupidity, the prospect of which does not frighten us: I mean only such as amount to great pains or losses. And even these only if they appear not remote but so near as to be imminent: we do not fear things that are a very long way off: for instance, we all know we shall die, but we are not troubled thereby, because death is not close at hand. From this definition it will follow that fear is caused by whatever we feel has great power of destroying us, or of harming us in ways that tend to cause us great pain. Hence the very indications of such things are terrible, making us feel that the terrible thing itself is close at hand; the approach of what is terrible is just what we mean by 'danger'. Such indications are the enmity and anger of people who have power to do something to us; for it is plain that they have the will to do it, and so they are on the point of doing it. Also injustice in possession of power; for it is the unjust man's will to do evil that makes him unjust. Also outraged virtue in
1382b possession of power; for it is plain that, when outraged, it always has the will to retaliate, and now it has the power to do so. Also fear felt by those who have the power to do something to us, since such persons are sure to be ready to do it. And since most men tend to be bad—slaves to greed, and cowards in danger—it is, as a rule, a terrible thing to be at another man's mercy; and therefore, if we have done anything horrible, those in the secret terrify us with the thought that they may betray or desert us. And

[1] Reading *ἀμφισβητοῦντος* with A^c, and *ἐφ' ὁποτέραν* (or *ἐφ' ὁποτέραν ἄν*).—Or: 'if they dispute (*ἀμφισβητοῦντας*) with us through anger or through hatred, we can bring them into whichever of the two we prefer (i. e. into greater anger or greater hatred).'

those who can do us wrong are terrible to us when we are liable to be wronged; for as a rule men do wrong to others whenever they have the power to do it. And those who have been wronged, or believe themselves to be wronged, are terrible; for they are always looking out for their opportunity. Also those who have done people wrong, if they possess power, since they stand in fear of retaliation: we have already [1] said that wickedness possessing power is terrible. Again, our rivals for a thing cause us fear when we cannot both have it at once; for we are always at war with such men. We also fear those who are to be feared by stronger people than ourselves: if they can hurt those stronger people, still more can they hurt us; and, for the same reason, we fear those whom those stronger people are actually afraid of. Also those who have destroyed people stronger than we are. Also those who are attacking people weaker than we are: either they are already formidable, or they will be so when they have thus grown stronger. Of those we have wronged, and of our enemies or rivals, it is not the passionate and outspoken whom we have to fear, but the quiet, dissembling, unscrupulous; since we never know when they are upon us, we can never be sure they are at a safe distance. All terrible things are more terrible if they give us no chance of retrieving a blunder—either no chance at all, or only one that depends on our enemies and not ourselves. Those things are also worse which we cannot, or cannot easily, help. Speaking generally, anything causes us to feel fear that when it happens to, or threatens, others causes us to feel pity.

The above are, roughly, the chief things that are terrible and are feared. Let us now describe the conditions under which we ourselves feel fear. If fear is associated with the expectation that something destructive will happen to us, plainly nobody will be afraid who believes nothing can happen to him; we shall not fear things that we believe cannot happen to us, nor people who we believe cannot inflict them upon us; nor shall we be afraid at times when we think ourselves safe from them. It follows therefore that fear is

[1] 1382a 34.

felt by those who believe something to be likely to happen to them, at the hands of particular persons, in a particular form, and at a particular time. People do not believe this when they are, or think they are, in the midst of great prosperity, and are in consequence insolent, contemptuous, and reckless —the kind of character produced by wealth, physical strength, abundance of friends, power: nor yet when they feel they have experienced every kind of horror already and have grown callous about the future, like men who are being flogged and are already nearly dead—if they are to feel the anguish of uncertainty, there must be some faint expectation of escape. This appears from the fact that fear sets us thinking what can be done, which of course nobody does when things are hopeless. Consequently, when it is advisable that the audience should be frightened, the orator must make them feel that they really are in danger of something, pointing out that it has happened to others who were stronger than they are, and is happening, or has happened, to people like themselves, at the hands of unexpected people, in an unexpected form, and at an unexpected time.

Having now seen the nature of fear, and of the things that cause it, and the various states of mind in which it is felt, we can also see what Confidence is, about what things we feel it, and under what conditions. It is the opposite of fear, and what causes it is the opposite of what causes fear; it is, therefore, the expectation associated with a mental picture of the nearness of what keeps us safe and the absence or remoteness of what is terrible: it may be due either to the near presence of what inspires confidence or to the absence of what causes alarm. We feel it if we can take steps—many, or important, or both—to cure or prevent trouble; if we have neither wronged others nor been wronged by them; if we have either no rivals at all or no strong ones; if our rivals who are strong are our friends or have treated us well or been treated well by us; or if those whose interest is the same as ours are the more numerous party, or the stronger, or both.

As for our own state of mind, we feel confidence if we

believe we have often succeeded and never suffered reverses, or have often met danger and escaped it safely. For there are two reasons why human beings face danger calmly: they may have no experience of it, or they may have means to deal with it: thus when in danger at sea people may feel confident about what will happen either because they have no experience of bad weather, or because their experience gives them the means of dealing with it. We also feel confident whenever there is nothing to terrify other people like ourselves, or people weaker than ourselves, or people than whom we believe ourselves to be stronger—and we believe this if we have conquered them, or conquered others who are as strong as they are, or stronger. Also if we believe ourselves superior to our rivals in the number and importance of the advantages that make men formidable—wealth, 1383b physical strength, strong bodies of supporters, extensive territory, and the possession of all, or the most important, appliances of war. Also if we have wronged no one, or not many, or not those of whom we are afraid; and generally, if our relations with the gods are satisfactory, as will be shown especially by signs and oracles. The fact is that anger makes us confident—that anger is excited by our knowledge that we are not the wrongers but the wronged, and that the divine power is always supposed to be on the side of the wronged.[1] Also when, at the outset of an enterprise, we believe that we cannot and shall not fail, or that we shall succeed completely.—So much for the causes of fear and confidence.

6 We now turn to Shame and Shamelessness; what follows will explain the things that cause these feelings, and the persons before whom, and the states of mind under which, they are felt. Shame may be defined as pain or disturbance in regard to bad things, whether present, past, or future, which seem likely to involve us in discredit; and shamelessness as contempt or indifference in regard to these same bad things. If this definition be granted, it follows that we feel

[1] The connexion of thought, as indicated by the γάρ after θαρραλέον, will be clearer if a colon (rather than a full stop) is placed after φοβοῦνται. The argument runs: the fact that we have the divine favour shows us that we have been wronged; that makes us angry; and anger makes us confident.

shame at such bad things as we think are disgraceful to ourselves or to those we care for. These evils are, in the first place, those due to moral badness. Such are throwing away one's shield or taking to flight; for these bad things are due to cowardice. Also, withholding a deposit or otherwise wronging people about money; for these acts are due to injustice. Also, having carnal intercourse with forbidden persons, at wrong times, or in wrong places; for these things are due to licentiousness. Also, making profit in petty or disgraceful ways, or out of helpless persons, e.g. the poor, or the dead—whence the proverb 'He would pick a corpse's pocket'; for all this is due to low greed and meanness. Also, in money matters, giving less help than you might, or none at all, or accepting help from those worse off than yourself; so also borrowing when it will seem like begging; begging when it will seem like asking the return of a favour; asking such a return when it will seem like begging; praising a man *in order that* it may seem like begging; and going on begging in spite of failure: all such actions are tokens of meanness. Also, praising people to their face,[1] and praising extravagantly a man's good points and glozing over his weaknesses, and showing extravagant sympathy with his grief when you are in his presence, and all that sort of thing; all this shows the disposition of a flatterer. Also, refusing to endure hardships
1384a that are endured by people who are older, more delicately brought up, of higher rank, or generally less capable of endurance than ourselves: for all this shows effeminacy. Also, accepting benefits, especially accepting them often, from another man, and then abusing him for conferring them: all this shows a mean, ignoble disposition. Also, talking incessantly about yourself, making loud professions, and appropriating the merits of others; for this is due to boastfulness. The same is true of the actions due to any of the other forms of badness of moral character, of the tokens of such badness, &c.: they are all disgraceful and shameless. Another sort of bad thing at which we feel shame is, lacking a share in the honourable things shared by every one else, or by all or nearly all who are like ourselves. By 'those

[1] With κολακείας, the meaning may be: '(which is a sign) of flattery.'

like ourselves' I mean those of our own race or country or age or family, and generally those who are on our own level. Once we are on a level with others, it is a disgrace to be, say, less well educated than they are; and so with other advantages: all the more so, in each case, if it is seen to be our own fault: wherever we are ourselves to blame for our present, past, or future circumstances, it follows at once that this is to a greater extent due to our moral badness. We are moreover ashamed of having done to us, having had done, or being about to have done to us acts that involve us in dishonour and reproach; as when we surrender our persons, or lend ourselves to vile deeds, e. g. when we submit to outrage. And acts of yielding to the lust of others are shameful whether willing or unwilling (yielding to force being an instance of unwillingness), since unresisting submission to them is due to unmanliness or cowardice.

These things, and others like them, are what cause the feeling of shame. Now since shame is a mental picture of disgrace, in which we shrink from the disgrace itself and not from its consequences, and we only care what opinion is held of us because of the people who form that opinion, it follows that the people before whom we feel shame are those whose opinion of us matters to us. Such persons are: those who admire us, those whom we admire, those by whom we wish to be admired, those with whom we are competing, and those whose opinion of us we respect. We admire those, and wish those to admire us, who possess any good thing that is highly esteemed; or from whom we are very anxious to get something that they are able to give us—as a lover feels. We compete with our equals. We respect, as true, the views of sensible people, such as our elders and those who have been well educated. And we feel more shame about a thing if it is done openly, before all men's eyes. Hence the proverb, 'shame dwells in the eyes'.[1] For this reason we feel most shame before those who will always be with us and those who notice what we do, since in both cases eyes

[1] Cp. Euripides, *Cresphontes*, fragm. 457, N.² *αἰδὼς ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖσι γίγνεται, τέκνον.*

1384[b] are upon us. We also feel it before those not open to the same imputation as ourselves: for it is plain that their opinions about it are the opposite of ours. Also before those who are hard on any one whose conduct they think wrong; for what a man does himself, he is said not to resent when his neighbours do it: so that of course he does resent their doing what he does not do himself. And before those who are likely to tell everybody about you; not telling others is as good as not believing you wrong. People are likely to tell others about you if you have wronged them, since they are on the look out to harm you; or if they speak evil of everybody, for those who attack the innocent will be still more ready to attack the guilty. And before those whose main occupation is with their neighbours' failings—people like satirists and writers of comedy; these are really a kind of evil-speakers and tell-tales. And before those who have never yet known us come to grief, since their attitude to us has amounted to admiration so far: that is why we feel ashamed to refuse those a favour who ask one for the first time—we have not as yet lost credit with them. Such are those who are just beginning to wish to be our friends; for they have seen our best side only (hence the appropriateness of Euripides'[1] reply to the Syracusans): and such also are those among our old acquaintances who know nothing to our discredit. And we are ashamed not merely of the actual shameful conduct mentioned, but also of the evidences of it: not merely, for example, of actual sexual intercourse, but also of its evidences; and not merely of disgraceful acts but also of disgraceful talk. Similarly we feel shame not merely in presence of the persons mentioned but also of those who will tell them what we have done, such as their servants or friends. And, generally, we feel no shame before those upon whose

[1] The scholiast (ed. Rabe, p. 106) tells us that Euripides was sent to negotiate peace with the Syracusans, and finding them unwilling said: 'You ought, men of Syracuse, to respect our expressions of esteem if only because we are new petitioners.' The Euripides in question may well have been the tragic poet: the popularity of whose poems at Syracuse, and whose turn for rhetorical argument, are beyond dispute. Cp. Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 216.

opinions we quite look down as untrustworthy (no one feels shame before small children or animals); nor are we ashamed of the same things before intimates as before strangers, but before the former of what seem genuine faults, before the latter of what seem conventional ones.

The conditions under which we shall feel shame are these: first, having people related to us like those before whom, as has been said,[1] we feel shame. These are, as was stated, persons whom we admire, or who admire us, or by whom we wish to be admired, or from whom we desire some service that we shall not obtain if we forfeit their good opinion. These persons may be actually looking on (as Cydias represented them in his speech on land assignments in Samos,[2] when he told the Athenians to imagine the Greeks to be standing all around them, actually seeing the way they voted and not merely going to hear about it afterwards): or again they may be near at hand, or may be likely to find out about what we do. This is why in misfortune we do not wish to be seen by those who once wished themselves like us; for such a feeling implies admiration. And men feel shame when they have acts or exploits to their credit on which they are bringing dishonour, 1385a whether these are their own, or those of their ancestors, or those of other persons with whom they have some close connexion. Generally, we feel shame before those for whose own misconduct we should also feel it—those already mentioned; those who take us as their models; those whose teachers or advisers we have been; or other people, it may be, like ourselves, whose rivals we are.[3] For there are many things that shame before such people makes us do or leave undone. And we feel more shame when we are likely to be continually seen by, and go about under the eyes of, those who know of our disgrace. Hence, when Antiphon the poet was to be cudgelled to death by order of Dionysius, and saw those who were to perish with him covering their faces as they

[1] 1384a 27.
[2] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 318.
[3] Or, 'who resemble, it may be, those whose rivals we are.'

went through the gates, he said, 'Why do you cover your faces? Is it lest some of these spectators should see you *to-morrow*?'

So much for Shame; to understand Shamelessness, we need only consider the converse cases, and plainly we shall have all we need.

To take Kindness next: the definition of it will show us towards whom it is felt, why, and in what frames of mind. Kindness—under the influence of which a man is said to 'be kind'—may be defined as helpfulness towards some one in need, not in return for anything, nor for the advantage of the helper himself, but for that of the person helped. Kindness is great if shown to one who is in great need, or who needs what is important and hard to get, or who needs it at an important and difficult crisis; or if the helper is the only, the first, or the chief person to give the help.[1] Natural cravings constitute such needs; and in particular cravings, accompanied by pain, for what is not being attained. The appetites are cravings of this kind: sexual desire, for instance, and those which arise during bodily injuries and in dangers; for appetite is active both in danger and in pain. Hence those who stand by us in poverty or in banishment, even if they do not help us much, are yet really kind to us, because our need is great and the occasion pressing; for instance, the man who gave the mat in the Lyceum.[2] The helpfulness must therefore meet, preferably, just this[3] kind of need; and failing just this kind, some other kind as great or greater. We now see to whom, why, and under what conditions kindness is shown; and these facts must form the basis of our arguments. We must show that the persons helped are, or have been, in such pain and need as has been described, and that their helpers gave, or are giving, the kind of help described, in the kind of need described. We can also see how to **7**

[1] Perhaps ἂν ᾖ should be read, as giving an easier construction for μόνος κτλ.

[2] Particulars unknown. Can some friend in need have provided a mat for a poor and fainting follower of the unwearied peripatetic Aristotle to rest upon? If so, the illustration is semi-humorous

[3] Retaining ταῦτα, A^c.

eliminate the idea of kindness and make our opponents appear unkind: we may maintain that they are being or 1385[b] have been helpful simply to promote their own interest—this, as has been stated,[1] is not kindness: or that their action was accidental, or was forced upon them; or that they were not doing a favour, but merely returning one, whether they know this or not—in either case the action *is* a mere return, and is therefore not a kindness even if the doer does *not* know how the case stands. In considering this subject we must look at all the 'categories':[2] an act may be an act of kindness because (1) it is a particular thing, (2) it has a particular magnitude or (3) quality, or (4) is done at a particular time or (5) place. As evidence of the want of kindness, we may point out that a smaller service had been refused to the man in need; or that the same service, or an equal or greater one, has been given to his enemies; these facts show that the service in question was not done for the sake of the person helped. Or we may point out that the thing desired was worthless and that the helper knew it: no one will admit that he is in need of what is worthless.

8 So much for Kindness and Unkindness. Let us now consider Pity, asking ourselves what things excite pity, and for what persons, and in what states of our mind pity is felt. Pity may be defined as a feeling of pain caused by the sight of some evil, destructive or painful, which befalls one who does not deserve it, and which we might expect to befall ourselves or some friend of ours, and moreover to befall us soon. In order to feel pity, we must obviously be capable of supposing that some evil may happen to us or some friend of ours, and moreover some such evil as is stated in our definition or is more or less of that kind. It is therefore not felt by those completely ruined, who suppose that no further evil can befall them, since the worst has befallen them already; nor by those who imagine themselves immensely fortunate—their feeling is rather presumptuous insolence, for when they think they possess all the good things of life, it is clear that the impossibility

[1] 1385[a] 18. [2] Cp. *Categ.* 1[b] 25 ff.

of evil befalling them will be included, this being one of the good things in question. Those who think evil *may* befall them are such as have already had it befall them and have safely escaped from it; elderly men, owing to their good sense and their experience; weak men, especially men inclined to cowardice; and also educated people, since these can take long views. Also those who have parents living, or children, or wives; for these are our own, and the evils mentioned above may easily befall them. And those who are neither moved by any courageous emotion such as anger or confidence (these emotions take no account of the future), nor by a disposition to presumptuous insolence (insolent men, too, take no account of the possibility that something evil will happen to them), nor yet by great fear (panic-stricken people do not feel pity, because they are taken up with what is happening to themselves); only those feel pity who are between these two extremes. In order to feel pity we must also believe in the goodness of at least some people; if you think nobody good, you will believe that everybody deserves evil fortune. And, generally, we feel pity whenever we are in the condition of remembering that similar misfortunes have happened to us or ours, or expecting them to happen in future.

So much for the mental conditions under which we feel pity. What we pity is stated clearly in the definition. All unpleasant and painful things excite pity if they tend to destroy and annihilate; and all such evils as are due to chance, if they are serious. The painful and destructive evils are: death in its various forms, bodily injuries and afflictions, old age, diseases, lack of food. The evils due to chance are: friendlessness, scarcity of friends (it is a pitiful thing to be torn away from friends and companions), deformity, weakness, mutilation; evil coming from a source from which good ought to have come; and the frequent repetition of such misfortunes. Also the coming of good when the worst has happened: e.g. the arrival of the Great King's gifts for Diopeithes after his death. Also that either no good should have befallen a man at all, or that he should not be able to enjoy it when it has.

The grounds, then, on which we feel pity are these or like these. The people we pity are: those whom we know, if only they are not very closely related to us—in that case we feel about them as if we were in danger ourselves. For this reason Amasis did not weep, they say, at the sight of his son being led to death, but did weep when he saw his friend begging:[1] the latter sight was pitiful, the former terrible, and the terrible is different from the pitiful; it tends to cast out pity, and often helps to produce the opposite of pity. Again, we feel pity when the danger is near ourselves.[2] Also we pity those who are like us in age, character, disposition, social standing, or birth; for in all these cases it appears more likely that the same misfortune may befall us also. Here too we have to remember the general principle that what we fear for ourselves excites our pity when it happens to others.[3] Further, since it is when the sufferings of others are close to us that they excite our pity (we cannot remember what disasters happened a hundred centuries ago, nor look forward to what will happen a hundred centuries hereafter, and therefore feel little pity, if any, for such things): it follows that those who heighten the effect of their words with suitable gestures, tones, dress, and dramatic action generally, are especially successful in exciting pity: they thus put the disasters before our eyes, and make them seem close to us, just coming or just past. Anything that has just happened, or is going to happen soon, is particularly piteous: so too therefore are the tokens and the actions of sufferers—the garments and the like of those who have already suffered; the words and the like of those actually suffering—of those, for instance, who are on the point of death. Most piteous of all is it when, in such times of trial, the victims are persons of noble character: whenever they are so, our pity is especially excited, because their innocence, as well as the setting of their misfortunes before our eyes, makes their misfortunes seem close to ourselves.

[1] Cp. Herod. iii. 14.

[2] Or, inserting οὐ γὰρ with Vahlen: 'For our feeling is no longer pity [but terror] when the danger is near ourselves.'

[3] Cp. 1382ᵇ 26, 27.

Most directly opposed to pity is the feeling called 9
Indignation. Pain at unmerited good fortune is, in one sense, opposite to pain at unmerited bad fortune, and is due to the same moral qualities. Both feelings are associated with good moral character; it is our duty both to feel sympathy and pity for unmerited distress, and to feel indignation at unmerited prosperity; for whatever is undeserved is unjust, and that is why we ascribe indignation even to the gods. It might indeed be thought that envy is similarly opposed to pity, on the ground that envy is closely akin to indignation, or even the same thing. But it is not the same. It is true that it also is a disturbing pain excited by the prosperity of others. But it is excited not by the prosperity of the undeserving but by that of people who are like us or equal with us. The two feelings have this in common, that they must be due not to some untoward thing being likely to befall ourselves, but only to what is happening to our neighbour. The feeling ceases to be envy in the one case and indignation in the other, and becomes fear, if the pain and disturbance are due to the prospect of something bad for ourselves as the result of the other man's good fortune. The feelings of pity and indignation will obviously be attended by the converse feelings of satisfaction. If you are pained by the unmerited distress of others, you will be pleased, or at least not pained, by their merited distress. Thus no good man can be pained by the punishment of parricides or murderers. These are things we are bound to rejoice at, as we must at the prosperity of the deserving; both these things are just, and both give pleasure to any honest man, since he cannot help expecting that what has happened to a man like him will happen to him too. All these feelings are associated with the same type of moral character. And their contraries are associated with the contrary type; the man who is delighted by others' misfortunes is identical with
1387a the man who envies others' prosperity. For any one who is pained by the occurrence or existence of a given thing must be pleased by that thing's non-existence or destruction. We can now see that all these feelings tend to prevent pity

(though they differ among themselves, for the reasons given), so that all are equally useful for neutralizing an appeal to pity.

We will first consider Indignation—reserving the other emotions for subsequent discussion—and ask with whom, on what grounds, and in what states of mind we may be indignant. These questions are really answered by what has been said already. Indignation is pain caused by the sight of undeserved good fortune. It is, then, plain to begin with that there are some forms of good the sight of which cannot cause it. Thus a man may be just or brave, or acquire moral goodness: but we shall not be indignant with him for that reason, any more than we shall pity him for the contrary reason. Indignation is roused by the sight of wealth, power, and the like—by all those things, roughly speaking, which are deserved by good men and by those who possess the goods of nature—noble birth, beauty, and so on. Again, what is long established seems akin to what exists by nature; and therefore we feel more indignation at those possessing a given good if they have as a matter of fact only just got it and the prosperity it brings with it. The newly rich give more offence than those whose wealth is of long standing and inherited. The same is true of those who have office or power, plenty of friends, a fine family, &c. We feel the same when these advantages of theirs secure them others. For here again, the newly rich give us more offence by obtaining office through their riches than do those whose wealth is of long standing; and so in all other cases. The reason is that what the latter have is felt to be really their own, but what the others have is not: what appears to have been always what it is is regarded as real, and so the possessions of the newly rich [1] do not seem to be really their own. Further, it is not any and every man that deserves any given kind of good; there is a certain correspondence and appropriateness in such things; thus it is appropriate for brave men, not for just men, to have fine weapons, and for men of family, not for parvenus, to make distinguished marriages.[2] Indignation may therefore

[1] *οἱ ἕτεροι*: the new men, the outsiders. [2] Insert colon after *εὐγενέσιν*.

properly be felt when any one gets what is not appropriate for him, though he may be a good man enough. It may also be felt when any one sets himself up against his superior, especially against his superior in some particular respect—whence the lines

> Only from battle he shrank with Aias Telamon's son;
> Zeus had been angered with him, had he fought with a mightier one;[1]

1387b but also, even apart from that, when the inferior in any sense contends with his superior; a musician, for instance, with a just man, for justice is a finer thing than music.

Enough has been said to make clear the grounds on which, and the persons against whom, Indignation is felt—they are those mentioned, and others like them. As for the people who feel it; we feel it if we do ourselves deserve the greatest possible goods and moreover have them, for it is an injustice that those who are not our equals should have been held to deserve as much as we have. Or, secondly, we feel it if we are really good and honest people; our judgement is then sound, and we loathe any kind of injustice. Also if we are ambitious and eager to gain particular ends, especially if we are ambitious for what others are getting without deserving to get it. And, generally, if we think that we ourselves deserve a thing and that others do not, we are disposed to be indignant with those others so far as that thing is concerned. Hence servile, worthless, unambitious persons are not inclined to Indignation, since there is nothing they can believe themselves to deserve.

From all this it is plain what sort of men those are at whose misfortunes, distresses, or failures we ought to feel pleased, or at least not pained: by considering the facts described we see at once what their contraries are. If therefore our speech puts the judges in such a frame of mind as that indicated and shows that those who claim pity on certain definite grounds do not deserve to secure

[1] *Iliad*, xi. 542. The second line is not found in the existing manuscripts of the *Iliad*.

pity but do deserve not to secure it, it will be impossible for the judges to feel pity.

To take Envy next: we can see on what grounds, against what persons, and in what states of mind we feel it. Envy is pain at the sight of such good fortune as consists of the good things already mentioned; we feel it towards our equals; not with the idea of getting something for ourselves, but because the other people have it. We shall feel it if we have, or think we have, equals; and by 'equals' I mean equals in birth, relationship, age, disposition, distinction, or wealth. We feel envy also if we fall but a little short of having everything; which is why people in high place and prosperity feel it—they think every one else is taking what belongs to themselves. Also if we are exceptionally distinguished for some particular thing, and especially if that thing is wisdom or good fortune. Ambitious men are more envious than those who are not. So also those who profess wisdom; they are ambitious—to be thought wise. Indeed, generally, those who aim at a reputation for anything are envious on this particular point. And small-minded men are envious, for everything seems great to them. The good things which excite envy have already been mentioned. The deeds or possessions which arouse the love of reputation and honour and the desire for fame, and the various gifts of fortune, are almost all subject to envy; and particularly if we desire the thing ourselves, or think we are entitled to it, or if having it puts us a little above others, or not having it a little below them. It is clear also what kind of people we envy; that was included in what has been said already: we envy those who are near us in time, place, age, or reputation.[1] Hence the line:

Ay, kin can even be jealous of their kin.[2]

Also our fellow-competitors, who are indeed the people just mentioned—we do not compete with men who lived a hundred centuries ago, or those not yet born, or the dead, or those who dwell near the Pillars of Hercules,[3] or

[1] Not inserting καὶ γένει. [2] Aeschylus, fragm. 305, N.²
[3] i.e. those who dwell at the farthest limits of the western world.

those whom, in our opinion or that of others, we take to be far below us or far above us. So too we compete with those who follow the same ends as ourselves: we compete with our rivals in sport or in love, and generally with those who are after the same things; and it is therefore these whom we are bound to envy beyond all others. Hence the saying:

Potter against potter.[1]

We also envy those whose possession of or success in a thing is a reproach to us: these are our neighbours and equals; for it is clear that it is our own fault we have missed the good thing in question; this annoys us, and excites envy in us. We also envy those who have what we ought to have, or have got what we did have once. Hence old men envy younger men, and those who have spent much envy those who have spent little on the same thing. And men who have not got a thing, or not got it yet, envy those who have got it quickly. We can also see what things and what persons give pleasure to envious people, and in what states of mind they feel it: the states of mind in which they feel pain are those under which they will feel pleasure in the contrary things. If therefore we ourselves with whom the decision rests are put into an envious state of mind, and those for whom our pity, or the award of something desirable, is claimed are such as have been described, it is obvious that they will win no pity from us.

11 We will next consider Emulation, showing in what follows its causes and objects, and the state of mind in which it is felt. Emulation is pain caused by seeing the presence, in persons whose nature is like our own, of good things that are highly valued and are possible for ourselves to acquire; but it is felt not because others have these goods, but because we have not got them ourselves. It is therefore a good feeling felt by good persons, whereas envy is a bad feeling felt by bad persons. Emulation makes us take steps to secure the good things in question, envy makes us take steps to stop our neighbour having

[1] Hesiod, *Works and Days*, 25. Cp. ii, c. 4, 1381b 17 above.

them. Emulation must therefore tend to be felt by persons who believe themselves to deserve certain good things that they have not got, it being understood that no one aspires 1388b to things which appear impossible.[1] It is accordingly felt by the young and by persons of lofty disposition. Also by those who possess such good things as are deserved by men held in honour—these are[2] wealth, abundance of friends, public office, and the like; on the assumption that they ought to be good men, they are emulous to gain such goods because they ought, in their belief, to belong to men whose state of mind is good. Also by those whom all others think deserving. We also feel it about anything for which our ancestors, relatives, personal friends, race, or country are specially honoured, looking upon that thing as really our own, and therefore feeling that we deserve to have it. Further, since all good things that are highly honoured are objects of emulation, moral goodness in its various forms must be such an object, and also all those good things that are useful and serviceable to others: for men honour those who are morally good, and also those who do them service. So with those good things our possession of which can give enjoyment to our neighbours—wealth and beauty rather than health. We can see, too, what persons are the objects of the feeling. They are those who have these and similar things—those already mentioned, as courage, wisdom, public office.[3] Holders of public office—generals, orators,[4] and all who possess such powers—can do many people a good turn. Also those whom many people wish to be like; those who have many acquaintances or friends; those whom many admire, or whom we ourselves admire; and those who have been praised and eulogized by poets or prose-writers.[5] Persons of the contrary sort are objects of contempt: for the feeling and notion of contempt are opposite to those of emulation. Those who are such as to emulate or

[1] The sense required seems to be: '. . . good things that they have not got, *provided they are possible*—no one claims what appears impossible to get.'

[2] Retaining γάρ, *videlicet*.

[3] Cp. 1388b 5 and i, c. 6.

[4] ῥήτορες: i. e. public speakers, advocates, politicians, statesmen.

[5] Or, 'speech-writers'; or 'chroniclers'.

be emulated by others are inevitably disposed to be contemptuous of all such persons as are subject to those bad things which are contrary to the good things that are the objects of emulation: despising them for just that reason. Hence we often despise the fortunate, when luck comes to them without their having those good things which are held in honour.

This completes our discussion of the means by which the several emotions may be produced or dissipated, and upon which depend the persuasive arguments connected with the emotions.

12 Let us now consider the various types of human character, in relation to the emotions and moral qualities, showing how they correspond to our various ages and fortunes. By emotions I mean anger, desire, and the like; these we have discussed already.[1] By moral qualities I mean virtues and vices; these also have been discussed already,[2] as well as the various things that various types of men tend to will and to do.[3] By ages I mean youth, the prime of life, and old age. By fortune I mean birth, 1389a wealth, power, and their opposites—in fact, good fortune and ill fortune.

To begin with the Youthful type of character. Young men have strong passions, and tend to gratify them indiscriminately. Of the bodily desires, it is the sexual by which they are most swayed and in which they show absence of self-control. They are changeable and fickle in their desires, which are violent while they last, but quickly over: their impulses are keen but not deep-rooted, and are like sick people's attacks of hunger and thirst. They are hot-tempered and quick-tempered, and apt to give way to their anger; bad temper often gets the better of them, for owing to their love of honour they cannot bear being slighted, and are indignant if they imagine themselves unfairly treated. While they love honour, they love victory still more; for youth is eager for superiority over others, and victory is one form of this. They love both more than

[1] ii, cc. 1 ff. [2] i, c. 9. [3] i, c. 6, 1363a 19.

they love money, which indeed they love very little, not having yet learnt what it means to be without it—this is the point of Pittacus' remark about Amphiaraus.[1] They look at the good side rather than the bad, not having yet witnessed many instances of wickedness. They trust others readily, because they have not yet often been cheated. They are sanguine; nature warms their blood as though with excess of wine; and besides that, they have as yet met with few disappointments. Their lives are mainly spent not in memory but in expectation; for expectation refers to the future, memory to the past, and youth has a long future before it and a short past behind it: on the first day[2] of one's life one has nothing at all to remember, and can only look forward. They are easily cheated, owing to the sanguine disposition just mentioned. Their hot tempers and hopeful dispositions make them more courageous than older men are; the hot temper prevents fear, and the hopeful disposition creates confidence; we cannot feel fear so long as we are feeling angry, and any expectation of good makes us confident. They are shy, accepting the rules of society in which they have been trained, and not yet believing in any other standard of honour. They have exalted notions, because they have not yet been humbled by life or learnt its necessary limitations; moreover, their hopeful disposition makes them think themselves equal to great things—and that means having exalted notions. They would always rather do noble deeds than useful ones: their lives are regulated more by moral feeling than by reasoning; and whereas reasoning leads us to choose what is useful, moral goodness leads us to choose what is noble. They are fonder of their friends, intimates,[3] and companions than older men are, because they like spending their days in the company of others, and have not yet come to value either their friends or anything else by their usefulness to themselves. All their mistakes are in the direction of doing

[1] The remark is unknown.
[2] Not to be taken quite literally: cp. *ἐπὶ τῇ τελευταίᾳ ἡμέρᾳ*, 1389[b] 34.
[3] *καὶ φιλοίκειοι*, with Vahlen.

things excessively and vehemently. They disobey Chilon's precept[1] by overdoing everything; they love too much and hate too much, and the same with everything else. They think they know everything, and are always quite sure about it; this, in fact, is why they overdo everything. If they do wrong to others, it is because they mean to insult them, not to do them actual harm. They are ready to pity others, because they think every one an honest man, or anyhow better than he is: they judge their neighbour by their own harmless natures, and so cannot think he deserves to be treated in that way. They are fond of fun and therefore witty, wit being well-bred insolence.

Such, then, is the character of the Young. The character of Elderly Men—men who are past their prime—may be said to be formed for the most part of elements that are the contrary of all these. They have lived many years; they have often been taken in, and often made mistakes; and life on the whole is a bad business. The result is that they are sure about nothing and *under-do* everything. They 'think', but they never 'know'; and because of their hesitation they always add a 'possibly' or a 'perhaps', putting everything this way and nothing positively. They are cynical;[2] that is, they tend to put the worse construction on everything. Further, their experience makes them distrustful and therefore suspicious of evil. Consequently they neither love warmly nor hate bitterly, but following the hint of Bias they love as though they will some day hate and hate as though they will some day love.[3] They are small-minded, because they have been humbled by life: their desires are set upon nothing more exalted or unusual than what will help them to keep alive. They are not generous, because money is one of the things they must have, and at the same time their experience has taught them how hard it is to get and how easy to lose. They are cowardly, and are always

13

[1] μηδὲν ἄγαν: *ne quid nimis*, '(do) nothing in excess', 'don't overdo anything'.

[2] Taking up 1389ᵃ 17, which may be translated 'they are not cynical but charitable'.

[3] Or, 'they treat their friends as probable future enemies and their enemies as probable future friends'; cp. note on 1380ᵇ 34.

anticipating danger; unlike that of the young, who are warm-blooded, their temperament is chilly; old age has paved the way for cowardice; fear is, in fact, a form of chill. They love life; and all the more when their last day has come, because the object of all desire is something we have not got, and also because we desire most strongly that which we need most urgently. They are too fond of themselves; this is one form that small-mindedness takes. Because of this, they guide their lives too much by considerations of what is useful and too little by what is noble—for the useful is what is good for oneself, and the noble what is good absolutely. They are not shy, but shameless rather; caring less for what is noble than for what is useful, they feel contempt for what people may think of them. They lack confidence in the future; partly through experience—for most things go wrong, or anyhow turn out worse than one expects; and partly because of their cowardice. They live by memory rather than by hope; for what is left to them of life is but little as compared with the long past; and hope is of the future, memory of the past. This, again, is the cause of their loquacity; they are continually talking of the past, because they enjoy remembering it. Their fits of anger are sudden but feeble. Their sensual passions have either altogether gone or have lost their vigour: consequently they do not feel their passions much, and their actions are inspired less by what they do feel than by the love of gain. Hence men at this time of life are often supposed to have a self-controlled character; the fact is that their passions have slackened, and they are slaves to the love of gain. They guide their lives by reasoning more than by moral feeling; reasoning being directed to utility and moral feeling to moral goodness. If they wrong others, they mean to injure them, not to insult them. Old men may feel pity, as well as young men, but not for the same reason. Young men feel it out of kindness; old men out of weakness, imagining that anything that befalls any one else might easily happen to them, which, as we saw,[1] is a thought that excites pity. Hence

[1] ii, c. 8, 1386a 24 and 29.

they are querulous, and not disposed to jesting or laughter —the love of laughter being the very opposite of querulousness.

Such are the characters of Young Men and Elderly Men. People always think well of speeches adapted to, and reflecting, their own character: and we can now see how to compose our speeches so as to adapt both them and ourselves to our audiences.

14 As for Men in their Prime, clearly we shall find that they have a character between that of the young and that of the old, free from the extremes of either. They have neither that excess of confidence which amounts to rashness, nor too much timidity, but the right amount of each. They neither trust everybody nor distrust everybody, but judge people correctly. Their lives will be guided not by the sole 1390b consideration either of what is noble or of what is useful, but by both; neither by parsimony nor by prodigality, but by what is fit and proper. So, too, in regard to anger and desire; they will be brave as well as temperate, and temperate as well as brave; these virtues are divided between the young and the old; the young are brave but intemperate, the old temperate but cowardly. To put it generally, all the valuable qualities that youth and age divide between them are united in the prime of life, while all their excesses or defects are replaced by moderation and fitness. The body is in its prime from thirty to five-and-thirty; the mind about forty-nine.[1]

15 So much for the types of character that distinguish youth, old age, and the prime of life. We will now turn to those Gifts of Fortune by which human character is affected. First let us consider Good Birth. Its effect on character is to make those who have it more ambitious; it is the way of all men who have something to start with to add to the pile, and good birth implies ancestral distinction The well-born man will look down even on those who are as good as his own ancestors, because any far-off distinction is greater than

[1] It is sometimes supposed that Aristotle was writing the *Rhetoric* about the age of forty-nine.

the same thing close to us, and better to boast about.[1] Being well-born, which means coming of a fine stock, must be distinguished from nobility, which means being true to the family nature—a quality not usually found in the well-born, most of whom are poor creatures. In the generations of men as in the fruits of the earth, there is a varying yield; now and then, where the stock is good, exceptional men are produced for a while, and then decadence sets in.[2] A clever stock will degenerate towards the insane type of character, like the descendants of Alcibiades or of the elder Dionysius; a steady stock towards the fatuous and torpid type, like the descendants of Cimon, Pericles, and Socrates.

16 The type of character produced by Wealth lies on the surface for all to see. Wealthy men are insolent and arrogant; their possession of wealth affects their understanding; they feel as if they had every good thing that exists; wealth becomes a sort of standard of value for everything else, and therefore they imagine there is nothing 1391a it cannot buy. They are luxurious and ostentatious; luxurious, because of the luxury in which they live and the prosperity which they display; ostentatious and vulgar, because, like other people's, their minds are regularly occupied with the object of their love and admiration, and also because they think that other people's idea of happiness is the same as their own. It is indeed quite natural that they should be affected thus; for if you have money, there are always plenty of people who come begging from you. Hence the saying of Simonides about wise men and rich men, in answer to Hiero's wife, who asked him whether it was better to grow rich or wise. 'Why, rich,' he said; 'for I see the wise men spending their days at the rich men's doors.' Rich men also consider themselves worthy to hold public office; for they consider they already have the things that give a claim to office. In a word, the type

[1] i.e. his own ancestors may not be any better than the contemporaries he looks down on, but their distinction (such as it is) has the boasted *patina* of age upon it.

[2] ἀναδίδωσιν may also be taken transitively: 'and then (after an interval of unproductiveness) the families begin again to produce them' (Cope).

of character produced by wealth is that of a prosperous fool. There is indeed one difference between the type of the newly-enriched and those who have long been rich: the newly-enriched have all the bad qualities mentioned in an exaggerated and worse form—to be newly-enriched means, so to speak, *no education in riches*. The wrongs they do others are not meant to injure their victims, but spring from insolence or self-indulgence, e. g. those that end in assault or in adultery.

As to Power: here too it may fairly be said that the type **17** of character it produces is mostly obvious enough. Some elements in this type it shares with the wealthy type, others are better. Those in power are more ambitious and more manly in character than the wealthy, because they aspire to do the great deeds that their power permits them to do. Responsibility makes them more serious: they have to keep paying attention to the duties their position involves. They are dignified rather than arrogant, for the respect in which they are held inspires them with dignity and therefore with moderation—dignity being a mild and becoming form of arrogance. If they wrong others, they wrong them not on a small but on a great scale.

Good fortune in certain of its branches produces the types of character belonging to the conditions just described,[1] since these conditions are in fact more or less the kinds of good fortune that are regarded as most important. It may be added that good fortune leads us to gain all we can in the way of family happiness and bodily advantages.[2] It does
1391b indeed make men more supercilious and more reckless; but there is one excellent quality that goes with it—piety, and respect for the divine power, in which they believe because of events which are really the result of chance.

This account of the types of character that correspond to differences of age[3] or fortune[4] may end here; for to arrive at the opposite types to those described, namely, those of the poor, the unfortunate, and the powerless, we have only to ask what the opposite qualities are.

[1] viz. good birth, wealth, and power. [2] Cp. 1360b 19-23.
[3] ii, cc. 12-14. [4] ii cc. 15-17.

18 The use of persuasive speech is to lead to decisions. (When we know a thing, and have decided about it, there is no further use in speaking about it.) This is so even if one is addressing a single person and urging him to do or not to do something, as when we scold a man for his conduct or try to change his views: the single person is as much your 'judge' as if he were one of many; we may say, without qualification, that any one is your judge whom you have to persuade. Nor does it matter whether we are arguing against an actual opponent or against a mere proposition; in the latter case we still have to use speech and overthrow the opposing arguments, and we attack these as we should attack an actual opponent. Our principle holds good of ceremonial speeches also; the 'onlookers' for whom such a speech is put together are treated as the judges of it. Broadly speaking, however, the only sort of person who can strictly be called a judge is the man who decides the issue in some matter of public controversy; that is, in law suits and in political debates, in both of which there are issues to be decided. In the section on political oratory an account has already been given of the types of character that mark the different constitutions.[1]

The manner and means of investing speeches with moral character may now be regarded as fully set forth.

Each of the main divisions of oratory has, we have seen,[2] its own distinct purpose. With regard to each division, we have noted the accepted views and propositions upon which we may base our arguments—for political,[3] for ceremonial,[4] and for forensic speaking.[5] We have further determined completely by what means speeches may be invested with the required moral character. We are now to proceed to discuss the arguments common to *all* oratory. All orators, besides their special lines of argument, are bound to use, for instance, the topic of the Possible and Impossible;[6] and to try to show that a thing has happened, or will happen in future. Again, the topic of Size is common to all oratory; all of us have to argue that things are bigger

[1] i, c. 8. [2] i, c. 3. [3] i, cc. 4–8. [4] i, c. 9. [5] i, cc. 10–14.
[6] Bywater τῷ περὶ δυνατοῦ: and τὸ περὶ μεγέθους in l. 32.

or smaller than they seem, whether we are making political speeches, speeches of eulogy or attack, or prosecuting or
1392a defending in the law-courts. Having analysed these subjects, we will try to say what we can about the general principles of arguing by 'enthymeme' and 'example', by the addition of which we may hope to complete the project with which we set out. Of the above-mentioned general lines of argument, that concerned with Amplification is—as has been already said[1]—most appropriate to ceremonial speeches; that concerned with the Past, to forensic speeches, where the required decision is always about the past; that concerned with Possibility and the Future, to political speeches.

19 Let us first speak of the Possible and Impossible. It may plausibly be argued: That if it is possible for one of a pair of contraries to be or happen, then it is possible for the other: e.g. if a man can be cured, he can also fall ill; for any two contraries are equally possible, in so far as they are contraries. That if of two similar things one is possible, so is the other. That if the harder of two things is possible, so is the easier. That if a thing can come into existence in a good and beautiful form, then it can come into existence generally; thus a house can exist more easily than a beautiful house. That if the beginning of a thing can occur, so can the end; for nothing impossible occurs or begins to occur; thus the commensurability of the diagonal of a square with its side neither occurs nor can begin to occur. That if the end is possible, so is the beginning; for all things that occur have a beginning. That if that which is posterior in essence or in order of generation can come into being, so can that which is prior: thus if a man can come into being, so can a boy, since the boy comes first in order of generation; and if a boy can, so can a man, for the man also is first.[2] That those things are possible of which the love or desire is natural; for no one, as a rule, loves or desires impossibilities. That things which are the

[1] i, c. 9.
[2] viz. in essence: rather than, 'for the boy is the beginning'.

object of any kind of science or art are possible and exist or come into existence. That anything is possible the first step in whose production depends on men or things which we can compel or persuade to produce it, by our greater strength, our control of them, or our friendship with them. That where the parts are possible, the whole is possible; and where the whole is possible, the parts are usually possible. For if the slit in front, the toe-piece, and the upper leather can be made, then shoes can be made; and if shoes, then also the front slit and toe-piece. That if a whole 1392b genus is a thing that can occur, so can the species; and if the species can occur, so can the genus: thus, if a sailing vessel can be made, so also can a trireme; and if a trireme, then a sailing vessel also. That if one of two things whose existence depends on each other is possible, so is the other; for instance, if 'double', then 'half', and if 'half', then 'double'. That if a thing can be produced without art or preparation, it can be produced still more certainly by the careful application of art to it. Hence Agathon has said:

> To some things we by art must needs attain,
> Others by destiny or luck we gain.[1]

That if anything is possible to inferior, weaker, and stupider people, it is more so for their opposites; thus Isocrates said that it would be a strange thing if he could not discover a thing that Euthynus had found out.[2] As for Impossibility, we can clearly get what we want by taking the contraries of the arguments stated above.

Questions of Past Fact may be looked at in the following ways: First, that if the less likely of two things has occurred, the more likely must have occurred also. That if one thing that usually follows another has happened, then that other thing has happened; that, for instance, if a man has forgotten a thing, he has also once learnt it. That if a man had the power and the wish to do a thing, he has done it; for every one does do whatever he intends to do whenever he can do it, there being nothing to stop him. That, further, he has done the thing in question either if he

[1] Agathon, fragm. 8, N.[2]

[2] Cp. Isocr. xviii. 15.

intended it and nothing external prevented him; or if he had the power to do it and was angry at the time; or if he had the power to do it and his heart was set upon it—for people as a rule do what they long to do, if they can; bad people through lack of self-control; good people, because their hearts are set upon good things. Again, that if a thing was 'going to happen', it has happened; if a man was 'going to do something', he has done it, for it is likely that the intention was carried out. That if one thing has happened which naturally happens before another or with a view to it, the other has happened; for instance, if it has lightened, it has also thundered; and if an action has been attempted, it has been done. That if one thing has happened which naturally happens after another, or with a view to which that other happens, then that other (that which happens first, or happens with a view to this thing) has also happened; thus, if it has thundered it has also lightened, and if an action has been done it has been attempted. Of all these sequences some are inevitable and some merely usual. The arguments for the *non*-occurrence of anything can obviously be found by considering the opposites of those that have been mentioned.

1393a How questions of Future Fact should be argued is clear from the same considerations: That a thing will be done if there is both the power and the wish to do it; or if along with the power to do it there is a craving for the result, or anger, or calculation, prompting it.[1] That the thing will be done, in these cases, if the man is actually setting about it, or even if he means to do it later—for usually what we mean to do happens rather than what we do not mean to do. That a thing will happen if another thing which naturally happens before it has already happened; thus, if it is clouding over, it is likely to rain. That if the means to an end have occurred, then the end is likely to occur; thus, if there is a foundation, there will be a house.

For arguments about the Greatness and Smallness of things, the greater and the lesser, and generally great things and small, what we have already said will show the line to

[1] Full stop (not comma) after ὄντα.

take. In discussing deliberative oratory we have spoken about the relative greatness of various goods, and about the greater and lesser in general.[1] Since therefore in each type of oratory the object under discussion is some kind of good—whether it is utility, nobleness, or justice—it is clear that every orator must obtain the materials of amplification through these channels.[2] To go further than this, and try to establish abstract laws of greatness and superiority, is to argue without an object; in practical life, particular facts count more than generalizations.

Enough has now been said about these questions of possibility and the reverse, of past or future fact, and of the relative greatness or smallness of things.

20 The special forms of oratorical argument having now been discussed, we have next to treat of those which are common to all kinds of oratory. These are of two main kinds, 'Example' and 'Enthymeme'; for the 'Maxim' is part of an enthymeme.[3]

We will first treat of argument by Example, for it has the nature of induction, which is the foundation of reasoning. This form of argument has two varieties; one consisting in the mention of actual past facts, the other in the invention of facts by the speaker. Of the latter, again, there are two varieties, the illustrative parallel and the fable (e.g. the fables of Aesop, or those from Libya). As an instance of the mention of actual facts, take the following. The speaker may argue thus: 'We must prepare for war against the king of Persia and not let him subdue Egypt. For Darius of old did not cross the Aegean until he had seized Egypt; but once he had seized it, he did cross. And Xerxes, again, did not attack us until he had seized Egypt; but once he had seized it, he did cross. If therefore the present king seizes Egypt, he also will cross, and therefore we must not let him.'

The illustrative parallel is the sort of argument Socrates used: e.g. 'Public officials ought not to be selected by lot.

[1] i, c. 7. [2] i.e. some kind of good.
[3] i.e. not (as some think) a third main kind. Cp. 1394[a] 27-9.

That is like using the lot to select athletes, instead of choosing those who are fit for the contest; or using the lot to select a steersman from among a ship's crew, as if we ought to take the man on whom the lot falls, and not the man who knows most about it.'

Instances of the fable are that of Stesichorus about Phalaris, and that of Aesop in defence of the popular leader. When the people of Himera had made Phalaris military dictator, and were going to give him a bodyguard, Stesichorus wound up a long talk by telling them the fable of the horse who had a field all to himself. Presently there came a stag and began to spoil his pasturage. The horse, wishing to revenge himself on the stag, asked a man if he could help him to do so. The man said, 'Yes, if you will let me bridle you and get on to your back with javelins in my hand'. The horse agreed, and the man mounted; but instead of getting his revenge on the stag, the horse found himself the slave of the man. 'You too', said Stesichorus, 'take care lest, in your desire for revenge on your enemies, you meet the same fate as the horse. By making Phalaris military dictator, you have already let yourselves be bridled. If you let him get on to your backs by giving him a bodyguard, from that moment you will be his slaves.'

Aesop, defending before the assembly at Samos a popular leader who was being tried for his life, told this story: A fox, in crossing a river, was swept into a hole in the rocks; and, not being able to get out, suffered miseries for a long time through the swarms of fleas that fastened on her. A hedgehog, while roaming around, noticed the fox; and feeling sorry for her asked if he might remove the fleas. But the fox declined the offer; and when the hedgehog asked why, she replied, 'These fleas are by this time full of me and not sucking much blood; if you take them away, others will come with fresh appetites and drink up all the blood I have left.' 'So, men of Samos', said Aesop, 'my client will do you no further harm; he is wealthy already. But if you put him to death, others will come along who are not rich, and their peculations will empty your treasury completely.'

Fables are suitable for addresses to popular assemblies; and they have one advantage—they are comparatively easy to invent, whereas it is hard to find parallels among actual past events. You will in fact frame them just as you frame illustrative parallels: all you require is the power of thinking out your analogy, a power developed by intellectual training. But while it is easier to supply parallels by inventing fables, it is more valuable for the political speaker to supply them by quoting what has actually happened, since in most respects the future will be like what the past has been.

Where we are unable to argue by Enthymeme, we must try to demonstrate our point by this method of Example, and to convince our hearers thereby. If we *can* argue by Enthymeme, we should use our Examples as subsequent supplementary evidence. They should not precede the Enthymemes: that will give the argument an inductive air, which only rarely suits the conditions of speech-making.[1] If they follow the enthymemes, they have the effect of witnesses giving evidence, and this always tells. For the same reason, if you put your examples first you must give a large number of them; if you put them last, a single one is sufficient; even a single witness will serve if he is a good one. It has now been stated how many varieties of argument by Example there are, and how and when they are to be employed.

21 We now turn to the use of Maxims, in order to see upon what subjects and occasions, and for what kind of speaker, they will appropriately form part of a speech. This will appear most clearly when we have defined a maxim. It is a statement; not about a particular fact, such as the character of Iphicrates, but of a general kind; nor is it about any and every subject—e. g. 'straight is the contrary of curved' is not a maxim—but only about questions of practical conduct, courses of conduct to be chosen or avoided. Now an Enthymeme is a syllogism dealing with

[1] Perhaps, 'which does not suit skilled orators except before a small audience'.

such practical subjects. It is therefore roughly true that the premisses or conclusions of Enthymemes, considered apart from the rest of the argument, are Maxims: e.g.

Never should any man whose wits are sound
Have his sons taught more wisdom than their fellows.[1]

Here we have a Maxim; add the reason or explanation, and the whole thing is an Enthymeme; thus—

It makes them idle; and therewith they earn
Ill-will and jealousy throughout the city.[2]

1394b Again,

There is no man in all things prosperous,[3]

and

There is no man among us all is free,

are maxims; but the latter, taken with what follows it, is an Enthymeme—

For all are slaves of money or of chance.[4]

From this definition of a maxim it follows that there are four kinds of maxims. In the first place, the maxim may or may not have a supplement. Proof is needed where the statement is paradoxical[5] or disputable; no supplement is wanted where the statement contains nothing paradoxical,[5] either because the view expressed is already a known truth, e.g.

Chiefest of blessings is health for a man, as it seemeth to me,[6]

this being the general opinion: or because, as soon as the view is stated, it is clear at a glance, e.g.

No love is true save that which loves for ever.[7]

Of the Maxims that do have a supplement attached, some are part of an Enthymeme, e.g.

Never should any man whose wits are sound, &c.[8]

Others have the essential character of Enthymemes, but are not stated as parts of Enthymemes; these latter are reckoned

[1] Euripides, *Medea*, 295. [2] ib. 297. [3] Euripides, fragm. 661, N.[2]
[4] Euripides, *Hecuba*, 864 f.
[5] Surprising, startling, heretical, unorthodox.
[6] Possibly a fragment of Epicharmus; cp. Meineke, *Fragmenta Comicorum Graecorum*, iii, pp. 169, 170.
[7] Euripides, *Troades*, 1051. [8] Euripides, *Medea*, 295.

the best; they are those in which the reason for the view expressed is simply implied, e. g.

O mortal man, nurse not immortal wrath.[1]

To say 'it is not right to nurse immortal wrath' is a maxim; the added words 'O mortal man' give the reason. Similarly, with the words

Mortal creatures ought to cherish mortal, not immortal thoughts.[2]

What has been said has shown us how many kinds of Maxim there are, and to what subjects the various kinds are appropriate. They must not be given without supplement if they express disputed or paradoxical views: we must, in that case, either put the supplement first and make a maxim of the conclusion, e. g. you might say, 'For my part, since both unpopularity and idleness are undesirable, I hold that it is better not to be educated'; or you may say this first, and then add the previous clause. Where a statement, without being paradoxical, is not obviously true, the reason should be added as concisely as possible. In such cases both laconic and enigmatic sayings are suitable: thus one might say what Stesichorus said to the Locrians, 'Insolence is better avoided, lest the cicalas chirp on the ground'.[3]

The use of Maxims is appropriate only to elderly men, and in handling subjects in which the speaker is experienced. For a young man to use them is—like telling stories—unbecoming; to use them in handling things in which one has no experience is silly and ill-bred: a fact sufficiently proved by the special fondness of country fellows for striking out maxims, and their readiness to air them.[4]

To declare a thing to be universally true when it is not is most appropriate when working up feelings of horror and indignation in our hearers; especially by way of preface, or after the facts have been proved. Even hackneyed and commonplace maxims are to be used, if they suit one's purpose: just because they are commonplace, every one

[1] Fragm. Adesp. 79, N.[2] [2] Epicharmus?
[3] Cp. Roberts, *Demetrius on Style*, pp. 119, 181, 260. The cicalas would have to chirp on the ground if an enemy cut down the trees.
[4] Not inserting καθόλου.

seems to agree with them, and therefore they are taken for truth. Thus, any one who is calling on his men to risk an engagement without obtaining favourable omens may quote

One omen of all is best, that we fight for our fatherland.[1]

Or, if he is calling on them to attack a stronger force—

The War-God showeth no favour.[2]

Or, if he is urging people to destroy the innocent children of their enemies—

Fool, who slayeth the father and leaveth his sons to avenge him.[3]

Some proverbs are also maxims, e. g. the proverb 'An Attic neighbour'.[4] You are not to avoid uttering maxims that contradict such sayings as have become public property (I mean such sayings as 'know thyself' and 'nothing in excess'), if doing so will raise your hearers' opinion of your character, or convey an effect of strong emotion—e. g. an angry speaker might well say, 'It is not true that we ought to know ourselves: anyhow, if this man had known himself. he would never have thought himself fit for an army command.' It will raise people's opinion of our character to say, for instance, 'We ought not to follow the saying that bids us treat our friends as future enemies: much better to treat our enemies as future friends.'[5] The moral purpose should be implied partly by the very wording of our maxim. Failing this, we should add our reason: e. g. having said 'We should treat our friends, not as the saying advises, but as if they were going to be our friends always', we should add 'for the other behaviour is that of a traitor': or we might put it, 'I disapprove of that saying. A true friend will treat his friend as if he were going to be his friend for ever'; and again, 'Nor do I approve of the saying "nothing in excess": we are bound to hate bad men excessively.'

[1] *Iliad*, xii. 243. [2] Ibid. xviii. 309. [3] Cp. i, c. 15, 1376ª 7.
[4] When put in the form of a proposition ('An Attic neighbour is a restless neighbour'), this is a maxim. For the proverb itself see *Zenobii Centuria*, ii. 28 (Leutsch and Schneidewin, *Paroemiographi Graeci*, i, p. 40), and cp. Roberts, *Ancient Boeotians*, pp. 21 ff.
[5] Cp. ii, c. 13, 1389 ' 23–5.

One great advantage of Maxims to a speaker is due to 1395[b]
the want of intelligence in his hearers, who love to hear him
succeed in expressing as a universal truth the opinions
which they hold themselves about particular cases. I will
explain what I mean by this, indicating at the same
time how we are to hunt down the maxims required. The
maxim, as has been already said,[1] is a general statement,
and people love to hear stated in general terms what they
already believe in some particular connexion: e.g. if a
man happens to have bad neighbours or bad children, he
will agree with any one who tells him, 'Nothing is more
annoying than having neighbours', or, 'Nothing is more
foolish than to be the parent of children.' The orator
has therefore to guess the subjects on which his hearers
really hold views already, and what those views are, and
then must express, as general truths, these same views on
these same subjects. This is one advantage of using
maxims. There is another which is more important—it
invests a speech with moral character. There is moral
character in every speech in which the moral purpose is
conspicuous: and maxims always produce this effect,
because the utterance of them amounts to a general declara-
tion of moral principles: so that, if the maxims are sound,
they display the speaker as a man of sound moral
character. So much for the Maxim—its nature, varieties,
proper use, and advantages.

22 We now come to the Enthymemes, and will begin the
subject with some general consideration of the proper way
of looking for them, and then proceed to what is a distinct
question, the lines of argument to be embodied in them.
It has already[2] been pointed out that the Enthymeme
is a syllogism, and in what sense it is so. We have also
noted the differences between it and the syllogism of
dialectic. Thus we must not carry its reasoning too far
back, or the length of our argument will cause obscurity:
nor must we put in all the steps that lead to our conclusion,
or we shall waste words in saying what is manifest. It is this

[1] 1394[a] 23. [2] i, c. 2, 1356[b] 3, 1357[a] 16.

simplicity that makes the uneducated more effective than the educated when addressing popular audiences—makes them, as the poets[1] tell us, 'charm the crowd's ears more finely'. Educated men lay down broad general principles; uneducated men argue from common knowledge and draw obvious conclusions. We must not, therefore, start from any and every accepted opinion, but only from those we have defined —those accepted by our judges or by those whose authority they recognize: and there must, moreover, be no doubt in the minds of most, if not all, of our judges that the opinions put forward really are of this sort. We should also base our arguments upon probabilities as well as upon certainties.

The first thing we have to remember is this. Whether our argument concerns public affairs or some other subject, we must know some, if not all, of the facts about the subject on which we are to speak and argue. Otherwise we can have no materials out of which to construct arguments. I mean, for instance, how could we advise the Athenians whether they should go to war or not, if we did not know their strength, whether it was naval or military or both, and how great it is; what their revenues amount to; who their friends and enemies are; what wars, too, they have waged, and with what success; and so on? Or how could we eulogize them if we knew nothing about the sea-fight at Salamis, or the battle of Marathon, or what they did for the Heracleidae, or any other facts like that? All eulogy is based upon the noble deeds—real or imaginary—that stand to the credit of those eulogized. On the same principle, invectives are based on facts of the opposite kind: the orator looks to see what base deeds—real or imaginary—stand to the discredit of those he is attacking, such as treachery to the cause of Hellenic freedom, or the enslavement of their gallant allies against the barbarians (Aegina,[2] Potidaea,[3] &c.), or any other misdeeds of this kind that are recorded against them. So, too, in a court of law: whether we are prosecuting or defending, we must pay attention to the existing facts of the case. It makes no difference

[1] Cp. Euripides, *Hippolytus*, 989. [2] Cp. Thucyd. ii. 27; iv. 57.
[3] Cp. Thucyd. ii. 70.

whether the subject is the Lacedaemonians or the Athenians, a man or a god; we must do the same thing. Suppose it to be Achilles whom we are to advise, to praise or blame, to accuse or defend; here too we must take the facts, real or imaginary; these must be our material, whether we are to praise or blame him for the noble or base deeds he has done, to accuse or defend him for his just or unjust treatment of others, or to advise him about what is or is not to his interest. The same thing applies to any subject whatever. Thus, in handling the question whether justice is or is not a good, we must start with the real facts about justice and goodness. We see, then, that this is the only way in which any one ever proves anything, whether his arguments are 1396b strictly cogent or not: not all facts can form his basis, but only those that bear on the matter in hand: nor, plainly, can proof be effected otherwise by means of the speech. Consequently, as appears in the *Topics*,[1] we must first of all have by us a selection of arguments about questions that may arise and are suitable for us to handle; and then we must try to think out arguments of the same type for special needs as they emerge; not vaguely and indefinitely, but by keeping our eyes on the actual facts of the subject we have to speak on, and gathering in as many of them as we can that bear closely upon it: for the more actual facts we have at our command, the more easily we prove our case; and the more closely they bear on the subject, the more they will seem to belong to that speech only instead of being commonplaces. By 'commonplaces' I mean, for example, eulogy of Achilles because he is a human being or a demi-god, or because he joined the expedition against Troy: these things are true of many others, so that this kind of eulogy applies no better to Achilles than to Diomede. The special facts here needed are those that are true of Achilles alone; such facts as that he slew Hector, the bravest of the Trojans, and Cycnus the invulnerable, who prevented all the Greeks from landing, and again that he was the youngest man who joined the expedition, and was not bound by oath to join it, and so on.

Here, then, we have our first principle of selection of

[1] Cp. *Top.* i, c. 14.

Enthymemes—that which refers to the lines of argument selected. We will now consider the various elementary classes of enthymemes. (By an 'elementary class' of enthymeme I mean the same thing as a 'line of argument') We will begin, as we must begin, by observing that there are two kinds of enthymemes. One kind proves some affirmative or negative proposition; the other kind disproves one. The difference between the two kinds is the same as that between syllogistic proof and disproof in dialectic. The demonstrative enthymeme is formed by the conjunction of compatible propositions; the refutative, by the conjunction of incompatible propositions.

We may now be said to have in our hands the lines of argument for the various *special* subjects that it is useful or necessary to handle, having selected the propositions suitable in various cases. We have, in fact, already ascertained the lines of argument applicable to enthymemes about good and evil, the noble and the base, justice and injustice, and also to those about types of character, emotions, and moral qualities.[1] Let us now lay hold
1397a of certain facts about the whole subject, considered from a different and more general point of view. In the course of our discussion we will take note of the distinction between lines of proof and lines of disproof:[2] and also of those lines of argument used in what seem to be enthymemes, but are not, since they do not represent valid syllogisms.[3] Having made all this clear, we will proceed to classify Objections and Refutations, showing how they can be brought to bear upon enthymemes.[4]

1. One line of positive proof[5] is based upon consideration 23
of the opposite of the thing in question. Observe whether that opposite has the opposite quality.[6] If it has not, you refute the original proposition; if it has, you establish it. E.g. 'Temperance is beneficial; for licentiousness is hurtful'. Or, as in the Messenian speech,[7] 'If war is the

[1] i, cc. 4–14; ii, cc. 1–18. [2] ii, c. 23. [3] ii, c. 24. [4] ii, c. 25.
[5] Positive proof, as opposed to Refutation.
[6] i.e. the quality opposite to that which, in the proposition under examination, is said to attach to the original thing.
[7] Cp. 1373b 18.

cause of our present troubles, peace is what we need to put things right again'.[1] Or—

> For if not even evil-doers should
> Anger us if they meant not what they did,
> Then can we owe no gratitude to such
> As were constrained to do the good they did us.[2]

Or—

> Since in this world liars may win belief,
> Be sure of the opposite likewise—that this world
> Hears many a true word and believes it not.[3]

2. Another line of proof is got by considering some modification of the key-word, and arguing that what can or cannot be said of the one, can or cannot be said of the other: e.g. 'just' does not always mean 'beneficial', or 'justly' would always mean 'beneficially', whereas it is *not* desirable to be justly put to death.[4]

3. Another line of proof is based upon correlative ideas. If it is true that one man *gave* noble or just treatment to another, you argue that the other must have *received* noble or just treatment; or that where it is right to command obedience, it must have been right to obey the command. Thus Diomedon, the tax-farmer, said of the taxes: 'If it is no disgrace for you to sell them,[5] it is no disgrace for us to buy them'.[5] Further, if 'well' or 'justly' is true of the person to whom a thing is done, you argue that it is true of the doer. But it is possible to draw a false conclusion here. It may be just that A should be treated in a certain way, and yet *not* just that he should be so treated by B. Hence you must ask yourself two distinct questions: (1) Is it right that A should be thus treated? (2) Is it right that B should thus treat him? and apply your results properly, according as your answers are Yes or No. Sometimes in such a case the two answers differ: you may quite easily have a position like that in the *Alcmaeon* of Theodectes:

[1] Cp. Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 154 (Alcid., *Messen.*, fragm. 2).
[2] Fragm. Adesp. 80, Nauck²; possibly by Agathon, or Theodectes, or Antiphon.
[3] Euripides, *Thyestes*, fragm. 396, N.²
[4] Cp. i, c. 9, 1366b 33.
[5] i. e. the right of collecting them.

And was there none to loathe thy mother's crime?[1]

to which question Alcmaeon in reply says,

Why, there are two things to examine here.

And when Alphesiboea asks what he means, he rejoins:

They judged *her* fit to die, not *me* to slay her.

Again there is the lawsuit about Demosthenes and the men who killed Nicanor; as they were judged to have killed him justly, it was thought that he was killed justly. And in the case of the man who was killed at Thebes, the judges were requested to decide whether it was unjust that he should be killed, since if it was not, it was argued that it could not have been unjust to kill him.

4. Another line of proof is the *a fortiori*. Thus it may be argued that if even the gods are not omniscient, certainly human beings are not. The principle here is that, if a quality does not in fact exist where it is *more* likely to exist, it clearly does not exist where it is *less* likely. Again, the argument that a man who strikes his father also strikes his neighbours follows from the principle that, if the less likely thing is true, the more likely thing is true also; for a man is less likely to strike his father than to strike his neighbours. The argument, then, may run thus. Or it may be urged that, if a thing is not true where it is more likely, it is not true where it is less likely; or that, if it is true where it is less likely, it is true where it is more likely: according as we have to show that a thing *is* or is *not* true.[2] This argument might also be used in a case of parity, as in the lines:

Thou hast pity for *thy* sire, who has lost his sons:
Hast none for Oeneus, whose brave son is dead?[3]

[1] i. e. was there nobody who thought the slaying of her a just act?—Theodectes, *Alcmaeon*, N.², p. 801.

[2] The reasoning in the text shows confusion, and the text is uncertain. We might rather have expected the following connexion of thought: 'The argument, then, may run thus—that if the less likely is true the more likely is true; or as before—that if the more likely is not true, the less likely is not true: according as we have to show, &c.'

[3] Fragm. Adesp. 81, Nauck²; ? from the *Meleager* of Antiphon or Euripides.

And, again, 'if Theseus did no wrong, neither did Paris'; or 'if the sons of Tyndareus did no wrong, neither did Paris'; or 'if Hector did well to slay Patroclus, Paris did well to slay Achilles'.[1] And 'if other followers of an art are not bad men, neither are philosophers'.[2] And 'if generals are not bad men because it often happens that they are condemned to death, neither are sophists'. And the remark that 'if each individual among you ought to think of his own city's reputation, you ought all to think of the reputation of Greece as a whole'.

5. Another line of argument is based on considerations of time. Thus Iphicrates, in the case against Harmodius, said, 'if before doing the deed I had bargained that, if I did it, I should have a statue, you would have given me one. Will you not give me one now that I *have* done the deed? You must not make promises when you are expecting a thing to be done for you, and refuse to fulfil them when the thing has been done.'[3] And, again, to induce the Thebans to let Philip pass through their territory into Attica, it was argued[4] that 'if he had insisted on this before he helped them against the Phocians, they would have promised to do it. It is monstrous, therefore, that just because he threw away his advantage then, and trusted their honour, they should not let him pass through now'.

6. Another line is to apply to the other speaker what he has said against yourself. It is an excellent turn to give to a debate, as may be seen in the *Teucer*.[5] It was employed by Iphicrates in his reply to Aristophon. 'Would *you*', he asked, 'take a bribe to betray the fleet?' 'No', said Aristophon; and Iphicrates replied, 'Very good: if you, who are Aristophon, would not betray the fleet, would I, who am Iphicrates?'[6] Only, it must be recognized beforehand that the other man is more likely than you are to commit the crime in question. Otherwise you will make

[1] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 223; Polycrates, Or. ix, fragm. 1.
[2] Cp. Isocrates, *Antidosis*, § 209.
[3] Baiter-Sauppe, p. 179; Lysias, Or. xviii, fragm. 1.
[4] Sc. by Philip's ambassadors to the Thebans.
[5] Of Sophocles; cp. iii, c. 15, 1416b 1.
[6] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 191; Lysias, Or. lxv, fragm. 1.

yourself ridiculous; if it is Aristeides who is prosecuting, you cannot say that sort of thing to him. The purpose is to discredit the prosecutor, who as a rule would have it appear that his character is better than that of the defendant, a pretension which it is desirable to upset. But the use of such an argument is in all cases ridiculous if you are attacking others for what you do or would do yourself, or are urging others to do what you neither do nor would do yourself.

7. Another line of proof is secured by defining your terms. Thus, 'What is the supernatural? Surely it is either a god or the work of a god. Well, any one who believes that the work of a god exists, cannot help also believing that gods exist'.[1] Or take the argument of Iphicrates, 'Goodness is true nobility; neither Harmodius nor Aristogeiton had any nobility before they did a noble deed'. He also argued that he himself was more akin to Harmodius and Aristogeiton than his opponent was. 'At any rate, my deeds are more akin to those of Harmodius and Aristogeiton than yours are.'[2] Another example may be found in the *Alexander*.[3] 'Every one will agree that by incontinent people we mean those who are not satisfied with the enjoyment of one love.' A further example is to be found in the reason given by Socrates for not going to the court of Archelaus. He said that 'one is *insulted* by being unable to requite benefits, as well as by being unable to requite injuries'.[4] All the persons mentioned define their term and get at its essential meaning, and then use the result when reasoning on the point at issue.

8. Another line of argument is founded upon the various senses of a word. Such a word is 'rightly', as has been explained in the *Topics*.[5]

[1] Cp. Plato, *Apol.* 27 c–e.

[2] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 179; Lysias, Or. xviii, fragm. 2.

[3] From some rhetorical essay on Alexander (viz. Paris), possibly by Polycrates. Cp. Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 223 (Polycrates, Or. ix, fragm. 2).

[4] Cp. Xenophon, *Apol. Socr.* 17; Diog. Laert., *Vit. Socr.* ii. 5, 25.

[5] ὀρθῶς [presumably in the equivocal senses (1) 'in the correct technical way' and (2) 'with moral justification'] is not found in the existing text of the *Topics*, but may have been in the text of a similar

9. Another line is based upon logical division. Thus, 'All men do wrong from one of three motives, A, B, or C: in my case A and B are out of the question, and even the accusers do not allege C'.[1]

10. Another line is based upon induction. Thus from the case of the woman of Peparethus it might be argued that women everywhere can settle correctly the facts about their children. Another example of this occurred at Athens 1398b in the case between the orator Mantias[2] and his son, when the boy's mother revealed the true facts: and yet another at Thebes, in the case between Ismenias and Stilbon, when Dodonis proved that it was Ismenias who was the father of her son Thettaliscus, and he was in consequence always regarded as being so. A further instance of induction may be taken from the *Law* of Theodectes:[3] 'If we do not hand over our horses to the care of men who have mishandled other people's horses, nor ships to those who have wrecked other people's ships, and if this is true of everything else alike, then men who have failed to secure other people's safety are not to be employed to secure our own.' Another instance is the argument of Alcidamas:[4] 'Every one honours the wise. Thus the Parians have honoured Archilochus, in spite of his bitter tongue; the Chians Homer, though he was not their countryman; the Mytilenaeans Sappho, though she was a woman; the Lacedaemonians actually made Chilon a member of their senate, though they are the least literary of men; the Italian Greeks honoured Pythagoras; the inhabitants of Lampsacus gave public burial to Anaxagoras, though he was an alien, and honour him even to this day. ⟨It may be argued that peoples for whom philosophers legislate are always prosperous⟩ on the ground that the Athenians became

work when the *Rhetoric* was written. Possibly, however, the meaning is, 'It may be mentioned that in the *Topics* the right use of words has been discussed.'—Cp. *Topics*, i, c. 15 and ii, c. 3.

[1] The speaker is supposed to be disproving some charge of wrong-doing.

[2] Cp. Demosth., Or. xviii, *Boeot. de nom.*, §§ 7, 10.

[3] Cp. 1399b 1 *infra*, and Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 247 (Theodectes, Νόμος, fragm. 1).

[4] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 155 (Alcidamas, Μουσεῖον, fragm. 2).

prosperous under Solon's laws and the Lacedaemonians under those of Lycurgus, while at Thebes no sooner did the leading men become philosophers than the country began to prosper.

11. Another line of argument is founded upon some decision already pronounced, whether on the same subject or on one like it or contrary to it. Such a proof is most effective if every one has always decided thus; but if not every one, then at any rate most people; or if all, or most, wise or good men have thus decided, or the actual judges of the present question, or those whose authority they accept, or any one whose decision they cannot gainsay because he has complete control over them, or those whom it is not seemly to gainsay, as the gods, or one's father, or one's teachers. Thus Autocles said, when attacking Mixidemides, that it was a strange thing that the Dread Goddesses could without loss of dignity submit to the judgement of the Areopagus, and yet Mixidemides could not.[1] Or as Sappho said, 'Death is an evil thing; the gods have so judged it, or they would die'.[2] Or again as Aristippus said in reply to Plato when he spoke somewhat too dogmatically,[3] as Aristippus thought: 'Well, anyhow, our *friend*', meaning Socrates, 'never spoke like that'. And Hegesippus, having previously consulted Zeus at Olympia, asked Apollo at Delphi 'whether his opinion was the same as his father's', implying that it would be shameful for him to contradict his father. Thus too Isocrates argued that Helen must have been a good woman, because Theseus decided that she was;[4] and Paris a good man, because the goddesses chose him before all others;[5] and Evagoras also, says Isocrates, was good, since when Conon met with his misfortune he betook himself to Evagoras without trying any one else on the way.[6]

12. Another line of argument consists in taking separately

[1] Cp. Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 220 (Autocles).
[2] Sappho, fragm. 137, Bergk[4].
[3] 'too professorially': ἐπαγγελτικώτερον.
[4] Isocrates, *Helen*, 18–38.
[5] Ibid., 41–8; but cp. Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 223.
[6] Isocrates, *Evagoras*, 51 ff.

the parts of a subject. Such is that given in the *Topics*:[1] 'What *sort* of motion is the soul? for it must be this or that.' The *Socrates* of Theodectes provides an example: 'What temple has he profaned? What gods recognized by the state has he not honoured?'[2]

13. Since it happens that any given thing usually has both good and bad consequences, another line of argument consists in using those consequences as a reason for urging that a thing should or should not be done, for prosecuting or defending any one, for eulogy or censure. E. g. education leads both to unpopularity, which is bad,[3] and to wisdom, which is good.[4] Hence you either argue, 'It is therefore not well to be educated, since it is not well to be unpopular': or you answer, 'No, it is well to be educated, since it is well to be wise'. The *Art of Rhetoric*[5] of Callippus is made up of this line of argument, with the addition of those of Possibility and the others of that kind already described.[6]

14. Another line of argument is used when we have to urge or discourage a course of action that may be done in either of two opposite ways, and have to apply the method just mentioned to both. The difference between this one and the last is that, whereas in the last any two things are contrasted, here the things contrasted are opposites. For instance, the priestess enjoined upon her son not to take to public speaking: 'For', she said, 'if you say what is right, men will hate you; if you say what is wrong, the gods will hate you.' The reply might be, 'On the contrary, you *ought* to take to public speaking: for if you say what is right, the gods will love you; if you say what is wrong, men will love you.' This amounts to the proverbial 'buying the marsh with the salt'. It is just this situation, viz. when each of two opposites has both a good and a bad consequence opposite respectively to each other, that has been termed *divarication*.

[1] Cp. *Top.* ii. 4; iv. 1.
[2] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 247 (Theodectes, Σωκράτους Ἀπολογία, fragm. 1).
[3] Reading κακὸν ὄν, with Herbert Richards.
[4] Cp. Euripides, *Medea*, 294: ii, c. 2 *supra*.
[5] Lit. the *Art*: viz. the *Art* (*System*) *of Rhetoric* (*Oratory*).
[6] ii, c. 19 *supra*.

15. Another line of argument is this: The things people approve of openly are not those which they approve of secretly: openly, their chief praise is given to justice and nobleness; but in their hearts they prefer their own advantage. Try, in face of this, to establish the point of view which your opponent has not adopted. This is the most effective of the forms of argument that contradict common opinion.

16. Another line is that of rational correspondence. E. g. Iphicrates, when they were trying to compel his son, a youth under the prescribed age, to perform one of the state duties because he was tall, said 'If you count tall boys men, you will next be voting short men boys'.[1] And Theodectes in his *Law*[2] said, 'You make citizens of such mercenaries as Strabax and Charidemus, as a reward of their merits; will you not make exiles of such citizens as those who have done irreparable harm among the mercenaries?'

17. Another line is the argument that if two results are the same their antecedents are also the same. For instance, it was a saying of Xenophanes that to assert that the gods had birth is as impious as to say that they die; the consequence of both statements is that there is a time when the gods do not exist.[3] This line of proof assumes generally that the result of any given thing is always the same: e. g. 'you are going to decide not about Isocrates, but about the value of the whole profession of philosophy.'[4] Or, 'to give earth and water' means slavery[5]; or, 'to share in the Common Peace' means obeying orders.[6] We are to make either such assumptions or their opposite, as suits us best.

18. Another line of argument is based on the fact that men do not always make the same choice on a later as on an earlier occasion, but reverse their previous choice. E. g. the following enthymeme: 'When we were exiles, we fought in order to return; now we have returned, it would

[1] Cp. Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 219. [2] Cp. 1398[b]6.
[3] Diels, *Vors.*[3], i, pp. 43, 44.
[4] Adopting Spengel's conjecture *περὶ Ἰσοκράτους* for the manuscript reading *περὶ Σωκράτους*: cp. Isocrates *περὶ ἀντιδόσεως*, § 173.
[5] Cp. Herodotus, iv. 126, 127. [6] Cp. [Demosthenes] Or. xvii, § 30.

be strange to choose exile in order not to have to fight.'[1] On one occasion, that is, they chose to be true to their homes at the cost of fighting, and on the other to avoid fighting at the cost of deserting their homes.

19. Another line of argument is the assertion that some *possible* motive for an event or state of things is the *real* one: e.g. that a gift was given in order to cause pain by its withdrawal. This notion underlies the lines:

> God gives to many great prosperity,
> Not of good will towards them, but to make
> The ruin of them more conspicuous.[2]

Or take the passage from the *Meleager* of Antiphon:

> To slay no boar, but to be witnesses
> Of Meleager's prowess unto Greece.[3]

Or the argument in the *Ajax*[4] of Theodectes, that Diomede chose out Odysseus[5] not to do him honour, but in order that his companion might be a lesser man than himself—such a motive for doing so is quite possible.

20. Another line of argument is common to forensic and deliberative oratory, namely, to consider inducements and deterrents, and the motives people have for doing or avoiding the actions in question. These are the conditions which make us bound to act if they are for us, and to refrain from action if they are against us: that is, we are bound to act if the action is possible, easy, and useful to ourselves or our friends or hurtful to our enemies; this is true even if the action entails loss, provided the loss is outweighed by the solid advantage. A speaker will urge action by pointing to such conditions, and discourage it by pointing to the opposite. These same arguments also form the 1400a materials for accusation or defence—the deterrents being pointed out by the defence, and the inducements by the prosecution. As for the defence, . . . This topic forms the whole *Art of Rhetoric* both of Pamphilus and of Callippus.

21. Another line of argument refers to things which are supposed to happen and yet seem incredible. We may argue

[1] Cp. Lysias, Or. xxxiv, § 11.
[2] Fragm. Adesp. 82, N.[2]
[3] Antiphon, fragm. 2, N.[2], p. 792.
[4] Cp. Nauck[2], p. 801.
[5] Cp. *Iliad*, x. 218–54.

that people could not have believed them, if they had not been true or nearly true: even that they are the more likely to be true because they are incredible. For the things which men believe are either facts or probabilities: if, therefore, a thing that *is* believed is improbable and even incredible, it must be true, since it is certainly not believed because it is at all probable or credible. An example is what Androcles of the deme Pitthus said in his well-known arraignment of the law. The audience tried to shout him down when he observed that the laws required a law to set them right. 'Why,' he went on, 'fish need salt, improbable and incredible as this might seem for creatures reared in salt water; and olive-cakes[1] need oil, incredible as it is that what produces oil should need it.'[2]

22. Another line of argument is to refute our opponent's case by noting any contrasts or contradictions of dates, acts, or words that it anywhere displays; and this in any of the three following connexions. (1) Referring to our opponent's conduct, e. g. 'He says he is devoted to you, yet he conspired with the Thirty.' (2) Referring to our own conduct, e. g. 'He says I am litigious, and yet he cannot prove that I have been engaged in a single lawsuit.' (3) Referring to both of us together, e. g. '*He* has never even *lent* any one a penny, but *I* have *ransomed* quite a number of you.'

23. Another line that is useful for men and causes that have been really or seemingly slandered, is to show why the facts are not as supposed; pointing out that there is a reason for the false impression given. Thus a woman, who had palmed off her son on another woman, was thought to be the lad's mistress because she embraced him; but when her action was explained the charge was shown to be groundless. Another example is from the *Ajax*[3] of Theodectes, where Odysseus tells Ajax the reason why, though he is really braver than Ajax, he is not thought so.

24. Another line of argument is to show that if the *cause* is present, the *effect* is present, and if absent, absent. For

[1] i.e. cakes made of dried olives.
[2] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, pp. 153-4 (Androcles).
[3] Cp. Nauck², p. 801.

by proving the cause you at once prove the effect, and conversely nothing can exist without its cause. Thus Thrasybulus accused Leodamas of having had his name recorded as a criminal on the slab in the Acropolis, and of erasing the record in the time of the Thirty Tyrants: to which Leodamas replied, 'Impossible: for the Thirty would have trusted me all the more if my quarrel with the commons had been inscribed on the slab.'[1]

25. Another line is to consider whether the accused person can take or could have taken a better[2] course than that which he is recommending or taking, or has taken. If he has *not* taken this better course, it is clear that he is not guilty, since no one deliberately and consciously chooses what is bad.[3] This argument is, however, fallacious, for it often becomes clear after the event how the action could have been done better, though before the event this was far from clear.

26. Another line is, when a contemplated action is inconsistent with any past action, to examine them both together.[4] Thus, when the people of Elea asked Xenophanes if they should or should not sacrifice to Leucothea and mourn for her, he advised them not to mourn for her if they thought her a goddess, and not to sacrifice to her if they thought her a mortal woman.[5]

27. Another line is to make previous mistakes the grounds of accusation or defence. Thus, in the *Medea*[6] of Carcinus the accusers allege that Medea has slain her children; 'at all events', they say, 'they are not to be seen'—Medea having made the mistake of sending her children away. In defence she argues that it is not her children, but Jason, whom she would have slain; for it would have been a mistake on her part not to do this if she *had* done the other. This special line of argument for enthymeme forms the whole of the *Art of Rhetoric* in use before Theodorus.[7]

[1] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, pp. 216–17.
[2] i. e. better suited to effect the evil purpose with which he is charged.
[3] i. e. bad *means* to effect his purpose.
[4] Comma after πεπραγμένοις, not after ἅμα.
[5] Diels, *Vors.*[3], i, p. 44 (Xenophanes).
[6] Cp. Nauck[2], p. 798.
[7] But cp. Spengel, συναγωγὴ τεχνῶν, pp. 102, 103.

28. Another line is to draw meanings from names. Sophocles, for instance, says,

O steel in heart as thou art steel in name.[1]

This line of argument is common in praises of the gods. Thus, too, Conon called Thrasybulus *rash in counsel.* And Herodicus said of Thrasymachus, 'You are always *bold in battle*'; of Polus, 'you are always *a colt*'; and of the legislator Draco that his laws were those not of a human being but of *a dragon*, so savage were they. And, in Euripides, Hecuba says of Aphrodite,

Her name and Folly's (ἀφροσύνης) rightly begin alike,[2]

and Chaeremon writes

Pentheus—a name foreshadowing grief (πένθος) to come.[3]

The Refutative Enthymeme has a greater reputation than the Demonstrative, because within a small space it works out two opposing arguments, and arguments put side by side are clearer to the audience. But of all syllogisms, whether refutative or demonstrative, those are most applauded of which we foresee the conclusions from the beginning, so long as they are not obvious at first sight—for part of the pleasure we feel is at our own intelligent anticipation; or those which we follow well enough to see the point of them as soon as the last word has been uttered.

Besides genuine syllogisms, there may be syllogisms that look genuine but are not; and since an enthymeme is merely a syllogism of a particular kind, it follows that, besides genuine enthymemes, there may be those that look genuine but are not. 24

1. Among the lines of argument that form the Spurious 1401a Enthymeme the first is that which arises from the particular words employed.

(*a*) One variety of this is when—as in dialectic, without having gone through any reasoning process, we make a final statement as if it were the conclusion of such a process, 'Therefore so-and-so is not true', 'Therefore

[1] Soph. fragm. 597, N.[2]: the construction of σιδήρῳ is made clear by the scholiast (Rabe, p. 146), who gives the context of the line.
[2] Euripides, *Troades*, 990. [3] Chaeremon, fragm. 4, N.[2], p. 783.

also so-and-so must be true'—so too in rhetoric[1] a compact and antithetical utterance passes for an enthymeme, such language being the proper province of enthymeme, so that it is seemingly the form of wording here that causes the illusion mentioned. In order to produce the effect of genuine reasoning by our form of wording it is useful to summarize the results of a number of previous reasonings: as 'some he saved—others he avenged—the Greeks he freed'.[2] Each of these statements has been previously proved from other facts; but the mere collocation of them gives the impression of establishing some fresh conclusion.

(*b*) Another variety is based on the use of similar words for different things; e. g. the argument that the mouse must be a noble creature, since it gives its name to the most august of all religious rites—for such the Mysteries are.[3] Or one may introduce, into a eulogy of the dog, the dog-star; or Pan, because Pindar said:

> O thou blessed one!
> Thou whom they of Olympus call
> The hound of manifold shape
> That follows the Mother of Heaven:[4]

or we may argue that, because there is much disgrace in there *not* being a dog about, there is honour in *being* a dog.[5] Or that Hermes is readier than any other god to go shares, since we never say 'shares all round' except of him.[6] Or that speech[7] is a very excellent thing, since good men are not said to be worth money but to be worthy of esteem[7]—the phrase 'worthy of esteem' also having the meaning of 'worth speech'.

2. Another line is to assert of the whole what is true of the parts, or of the parts what is true of the whole. A whole and its parts are supposed to be identical, though

[1] Lit. 'in the case of enthymemes': i. e. 'in the sphere of speech which ought to produce enthymemes', i. e. rhetoric)(dialectic. Bad dialectic and bad rhetoric are here in question.

[2] Isocrates, *Evagoras*, 65-9.

[3] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 228 (Polycrates).

[4] Pindar, fragm. 96, Bergk[5]. [5] viz. a dog-philosopher, a Cynic.

[6] Alluding to the proverb Κοινὸς Ἑρμῆς, 'Hermes is common', 'Shares in your luck!'

[7] The same Greek word (λόγος) is here used for 'speech' and 'esteem': hence what follows.

often they are not. You have therefore to adopt whichever of these two lines better suits your purpose. That is how Euthydemus argues: e.g. that any one knows that there is a trireme in the Peiraeus, since he knows the separate details that make up this statement.[1] There is also the argument that one who knows the letters knows the whole word, since the word is the same thing as the letters which compose it; or that, if a double portion of a certain thing is harmful to health, then a single portion must not be called wholesome, since it is absurd that two good things should make one bad thing. Put thus, the enthymeme is refutative; put as follows, demonstrative: 'For one good thing cannot be made up of two bad things.' The whole line of argument is fallacious. Again, there is Polycrates' saying that Thrasybulus put down thirty tyrants, where the speaker adds them up one by one.[2] Or the argument in the *Orestes* of Theodectes, where the argument is from part to whole:

'Tis right that she who slays her lord should die.[3]

'It is right, too, that the son should avenge his father. Very good: these two things are what Orestes has done.'[4] Still, perhaps the two things, once they are put together, do not form a right act. The fallacy might also be said to be due to omission, since the speaker fails to say by whose hand a husband-slayer should die.

3. Another line is the use of indignant language, whether to support your own case or to overthrow your opponent's. We do this when we paint a highly-coloured picture of the situation without having proved the facts of it: if the defendant does so, he produces an impression of his innocence; and if the prosecutor goes into a passion, he produces an impression of the defendant's guilt. Here there is no genuine enthymeme: the hearer infers guilt or

[1] For this 'argument of Euthydemus', see Cope's *Commentary*, ii, pp. 307, 308.

[2] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 221 (Polycrates). Thirty separate tyrants are suggested by 'thirty tyrants', as contrasted with 'The Thirty Tyrants' (= one single tyranny).

[3] Theodectes, fragm. 5, N.[2], p. 803. [4] Retaining *πέπρακται*.

innocence, but no proof is given, and the inference is fallacious accordingly.

4. Another line is to use a 'Sign', or single instance, as certain evidence; which, again, yields no valid proof. Thus, it might be said that lovers are useful to their countries, since the love of Harmodius and Aristogeiton caused the downfall of the tyrant Hipparchus.[1] Or, again, that Dionysius is a thief, since he is a vicious man—there is, of course, no valid proof here; not every vicious man is a thief, though every thief is a vicious man.

5. Another line represents the accidental as essential. An instance is what Polycrates says of the mice, that they 'came to the rescue' because they gnawed through the bowstrings.[2] Or it might be maintained that an invitation to dinner is a great honour, for it was because he was *not* invited that Achilles was 'angered' with the Greeks at Tenedos.[3] As a fact, what angered him was the *insult* involved; it was a mere accident that this was the particular form that the insult took.

6. Another is the argument from consequence. In the *Alexander*, for instance, it is argued that Paris must have had a lofty disposition, since he despised society and lived by himself on Mount Ida: because lofty people do this kind of thing, therefore Paris too, we are to suppose, had a lofty soul.[4] Or, if a man dresses fashionably and roams around at night, he is a rake, since that is the way rakes behave. Another similar argument points out that beggars sing and dance in temples, and that exiles can live wherever they please, and that such privileges are at the disposal of those we account happy; and therefore every one might be regarded as happy if only he has those privileges. What matters, however, is the *circumstances* under which the privileges are enjoyed. Hence this line too falls under the head of fallacies by omission.

7. Another line consists in representing as causes things which are not causes, on the ground that they happened

[1] Cp. Plato, *Symposium*, 182 B, C.
[2] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, pp. 221, 222 (Polycrates).
[3] Sophocles, Ἀχαιῶν σύλλογος, Nauck², p. 161. [4] B.-S., pp. 222, 223.

along with or before the event in question. They assume that, because B happens *after* A, it happens *because* of A. Politicians are especially fond of taking this line. Thus Demades said that the policy of Demosthenes was the cause of all the mischief, 'for after it the war occurred'.[1]

8. Another line consists in leaving out any mention of time and circumstances. E.g. the argument that Paris was justified in taking Helen, since her father left her free to choose: here the freedom was presumably not perpetual; it could only refer to her first choice, beyond which her father's authority could not go.[2] Or again, one might say that to strike a free man is an act of wanton outrage; but it is not so in every case—only when it is unprovoked.

9. Again, a spurious syllogism may, as in 'eristical' discussions, be based on the confusion of the absolute with that which is not absolute but particular. As, in dialectic, for instance, it may be argued that what-is-not *is*, on the ground that what-is-not *is* what-is-not; or that the unknown can be known, on the ground that it can be known to *be* unknown: so also in rhetoric a spurious enthymeme may be based on the confusion of some particular probability with absolute probability. Now no particular probability is universally probable: as Agathon says,

> One might perchance say this was probable—
> That things improbable oft will hap to men.[3]

For what is improbable does happen, and therefore it is probable that improbable things *will* happen. Granted this, one might argue that 'what is improbable is probable'. But this is not true absolutely. As, in eristic, the imposture comes from not adding any clause specifying relationship or reference or manner; so here it arises because the probability in question is not general but specific. It is of this line of argument that Corax's *Art of Rhetoric* is composed. If the accused is not open to the charge—for instance if a weakling be tried for violent assault—the defence is that

[1] B.–S., p. 315 (Demades): cp. Dionysius of Halicarnassus, *The Three Literary Letters*, pp. 80, 81, 166, 167.
[2] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 223 (Polycrates).
[3] Agathon, fragm. 9, N.², p. 765.

he was not likely to do such a thing. But if he *is* open to the charge—i.e. if he is a *strong* man—the defence is still that he was not likely to do such a thing, since he could be sure that people would think he *was* likely to do it. And so with any other charge: the accused must be either open or not open to it: there is in either case an appearance of probable innocence, but whereas in the latter case the probability is genuine, in the former it can only be asserted in the special sense mentioned.[1] This sort of argument illustrates what is meant by making the worse argument seem the better. Hence people were right in objecting to the training Protagoras undertook to give them.[2] It was a fraud; the probability it handled was not genuine but spurious, and has a place in no art except Rhetoric[3] and Eristic.

25 Enthymemes, genuine and apparent, have now been described; the next subject is their Refutation.

An argument may be refuted either by a counter-syllogism or by bringing an objection. It is clear that counter-syllogisms can be built up from the same lines of arguments as the original syllogisms: for the materials of syllogisms are the ordinary opinions of men, and such opinions often contradict each other. Objections, as appears in the *Topics*,[4] may be raised in four ways—either by directly attacking your opponent's own statement, or by putting forward another statement like it, or by putting forward a statement contrary to it, or by quoting previous decisions.

1. By 'attacking your opponent's own statement' I mean, for instance, this: if his enthymeme should assert that love is always good, the objection can be brought in two 1402[b] ways, either by making the general statement that 'all

[1] ἁπλῶς seems to mean 'in the broad simple sense as opposed to special unusual senses' (such as that in Agathon's proposition).

[2] Cp. Plato, *Protag.*, 319 A.

[3] i.e. in the perverted form of rhetoric that is related to genuine rhetoric as eristic (and other sophistic) is related to genuine dialectic. Aristotle is hampered throughout by having no special name for this perverted rhetoric, as he has noted at the end of the opening chapter of his treatise (1355[b] 17–21 above).

[4] Cp. *Topics*, viii. 10, and *Anal. Pr.*, ii. 26.

want is an evil', or by making the particular one that there would be no talk of 'Caunian love'[1] if there were not evil loves as well as good ones.

2. An objection 'from a contrary statement' is raised when, for instance, the opponent's enthymeme having concluded that a good man does good to all his friends, you object, 'That proves nothing, for a bad man does not do evil to all his friends'.

3. An example of an objection 'from a like statement' is, the enthymeme having shown that ill-used men always hate their ill-users, to reply, 'That proves nothing, for well-used men do not always love those who used them well'.

4. The 'decisions' mentioned are those proceeding from well-known men; for instance, if the enthymeme employed has concluded that 'Some allowance ought to be made for drunken offenders, since they did not know what they were doing', the objection will be, 'Pittacus, then, deserves no approval, or he would not have prescribed specially severe penalties for offences due to drunkenness'.

Enthymemes are based upon one or other of four kinds of alleged fact: (1) Probabilities, (2) Examples, (3) Infallible Signs, (4) Ordinary Signs.[2] (1) Enthymemes based upon Probabilities are those which argue from what is, or is supposed to be, usually true. (2) Enthymemes based upon Example are those which proceed by induction[3] from one or more similar cases, arrive at a general proposition, and then argue deductively to a particular inference. (3) Enthymemes based upon Infallible Signs are those which argue from the inevitable and invariable. (4) Enthymemes based upon ordinary Signs are those which argue from some universal or particular proposition, true or false.

Now (1) as a Probability is that which happens usually but not always, Enthymemes founded upon Probabilities can, it is clear, always be refuted by raising some objection. The refutation is not always genuine: it may be spurious: for it consists in showing not that your opponent's premiss is not probable, but only in showing that it is not inevitably

[1] The incestuous love of Byblis for her brother Caunus.
[2] Fallible signs. [3] Retaining δι' ἐπαγωγῆς.

true. Hence it is always in defence rather than in accusation that it is possible to gain an advantage by using this fallacy. For the accuser uses probabilities to prove his case: and to refute a conclusion as improbable is not the same thing as to refute it as not inevitable. Any argument based upon what usually happens is always open to objection: otherwise it would not be a probability[1] but an invariable and necessary truth. But the judges think, if the refutation takes this form, either that the accuser's case is not probable or that they must not decide it; which, as we said, is a false piece of reasoning. For they ought to decide by considering not merely what *must* be true but also what is *likely* to be true: this is, indeed, the meaning of 'giving a verdict in accordance with one's honest opinion'. Therefore it is not enough for the defendant to refute the accusation by proving that the charge is not *bound* to be true: he must do so by showing that it is not *likely* to be true. For this purpose his objection must state what is more usually true than the statement attacked. It may do so in either of two ways: either in respect of frequency or in respect of exactness. It will be most convincing if it does so in both respects; for if the thing in question *both* happens *oftener* as we represent it *and* happens more *as* we represent it, the probability is particularly great.[2]

(2) Fallible Signs, and Enthymemes based upon them, can be refuted even if the facts are correct, as was said at the outset.[3] For we have shown in the *Analytics*[4] that no Fallible Sign can form part of a valid logical proof.

(3) Enthymemes depending on examples may be refuted in the same way as probabilities. If we have a[5] negative instance, the argument is refuted, in so far as it is proved not inevitable, even though the positive examples are more similar and more frequent. And if the positive examples *are* more numerous and more frequent, we must contend that the present case is dissimilar, or that its conditions are dissimilar, or that it is different in some way or other.

[1] Not inserting ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ καί.
[2] τὰ wrongly repeated in Roemer's text.
[3] i, c. 2, 1357b 13, 14.
[4] *Anal. Pr.*, ii. 27.
[5] Not inserting ἕν.

(4) It will be impossible to refute Infallible Signs, and Enthymemes resting on them, by showing in any way that they do not form a valid logical proof: this, too, we see from the *Analytics*.[1] All we can do is to show that the fact alleged does not exist. If there is no doubt that it does, and that it is an Infallible Sign, refutation now becomes impossible: for this is equivalent to a demonstration which is clear in every respect.

Amplification and Depreciation are not an element[2] of enthymeme. By 'an element[2] of enthymeme' I mean the same thing as 'a line of enthymematic argument'—a general class embracing a large number of particular kinds of enthymeme. Amplification and Depreciation are one kind of enthymeme, viz. the kind used to show that a thing is great or small; just as there are other kinds used to show that a thing is good or bad, just or unjust, and anything else of the sort. All these things are the *subject-matter* of syllogisms and enthymemes; none of these is the line of argument of an enthymeme; no more, therefore, are Amplification and Depreciation. **26**

Nor are Refutative Enthymemes a different species from Constructive. For it is clear that refutation consists either in offering positive proof or in raising an objection. In the first case we prove the opposite of our adversary's statements. Thus, if he shows that a thing has happened, we show that it has not; if he shows that it has not happened, we show that it has. This, then, could not be the distinction if there were one, since the same means are employed by both parties, enthymemes being adduced to show that the fact is or is not so-and-so. An objection, on the other hand, is not an enthymeme at all, but, as was said in the *Topics*,[3] it consists in stating some accepted opinion from which it will be clear that our opponent has not reasoned correctly or has made a false assumption.

Three points must be studied in making a speech; and we have now completed the account of (1) Examples, Maxims,

[1] *Anal. Pr.*, ii. 27.
[2] i.e. an elementary class, a primary type: cp. 1396ᵇ 21.
[3] Cp. *Top.*, viii. 10.

Enthymemes, and in general the *thought*-element—the way to invent and refute arguments. We have next to discuss 1403b (2) Style,[1] and (3) Arrangement.

BOOK III

1 In making a speech one must study three points: first, the means of producing persuasion; second, the style, or language, to be used; third, the proper arrangement of the various parts of the speech. We have already specified the sources of persuasion. We have shown that these are three in number;[2] what they are; and why there are only these three: for we have shown that persuasion must in every case be effected either (1) by working on the emotions of the judges themselves, (2) by giving them the right impression of the speakers' character, or (3) by proving the truth of the statements made.

Enthymemes also have been described, and the sources from which they should be derived; there being both special and general lines of argument for enthymemes.[3]

Our next subject will be the style of expression. For it is not enough to know *what* we ought to say; we must also say it *as* we ought; much help is thus afforded towards producing the right impression of a speech. The first question to receive attention was naturally the one that comes first naturally—how persuasion can be produced from the facts themselves. The second is how to set these facts out in language. A third would be the proper method of delivery; this is a thing that affects the success of a speech greatly; but hitherto the subject has been neglected. Indeed, it was long before it found a way into the arts of tragic drama and epic recitation: at first poets acted[4] their tragedies themselves. It is plain that delivery has just as much to do with oratory as with poetry. (In connexion with poetry, it has been studied by Glaucon

[1] λέξις: to be translated 'language', 'speech', 'diction', 'style', 'expression', 'wording', &c., according to the shade of meaning conveyed in each context. Cp. the definition of λέξις given in the *Poetics*, c. 6, 1450b 13, 14.

[2] i, c. 2. [3] i and ii. [4] Or, 'delivered'.

of Teos among others.) It is, essentially, a matter of the right management of the voice to express the various emotions—of speaking loudly, softly, or between the two; of high, low, or intermediate pitch; of the various rhythms that suit various subjects. These are the three things—volume of sound, modulation of pitch, and rhythm—that a speaker bears in mind. It is those who *do* bear them in mind who usually win prizes in the dramatic contests; and just as in drama the actors now count for more than the poets, so it is in the contests of public life, owing to the defects of our political institutions. No systematic treatise upon the rules of delivery has yet been composed; indeed, even the study of language[1] made no progress till late in the day. Besides, delivery is—very properly—not regarded as an elevated subject of inquiry.[2] Still, the whole business of rhetoric being concerned with appearances, we must pay attention to the subject of delivery, unworthy though it is, because we cannot do without it. The right thing in speaking really is that we should be satisfied not to annoy our hearers, without trying to delight them: we ought in fairness to fight our case with no help beyond the bare facts: nothing, therefore, should matter except the proof of those facts. Still, as has been already said, other things affect the result considerably, owing to the defects of our hearers.[3] The arts of language cannot help having a small but real importance, whatever it is we have to expound to others: the way in which a thing is said does affect its intelligibility. Not, however, so much importance as people think. All such arts are fanciful and meant to charm the hearer. Nobody uses fine language when teaching geometry.

When the principles of delivery have been worked out, they will produce the same effect as on the stage. But only

[1] From this and other indications it would seem that Aristotle regards delivery as a subordinate part of λέξις, 'expression'. The classification of ὑπόκρισις under λέξις is helped by the relation of the latter to λέγειν. λέξις is 'a mode of speaking'.

[2] Or, 'is thought to be vulgar, when viewed from a lofty standpoint', 'on any noble view'.

[3] i, c. 1. The average member of a large audience is regarded as a 'sorry creature' (μοχθηρός), carried away by his feelings and paying little heed to reason.

very slight attempts to deal with them have been made and by a few people, as by Thrasymachus in his 'Appeals to Pity'.[1] Dramatic ability is a natural gift, and can hardly be systematically taught. The principles of good diction can be so taught, and therefore we have men of ability in this direction too, who win prizes in their turn, as well as those speakers who excel in delivery—speeches of the written or literary kind owe more of their effect to their diction than to their thought.

It was naturally the poets who first set the movement[2] going; for words represent things, and they had also the human voice at their disposal, which of all our organs can best represent other things. Thus the arts of recitation and acting were formed, and others as well. Now it was because poets seemed to win fame through their fine language when their thoughts were simple enough, that the language of oratorical prose at first took a poetical colour, e.g. that of Gorgias.[3] Even now most uneducated people think that poetical language makes the finest discourses. That is not true: the language of prose is distinct from that of poetry. This is shown by the state of things to-day, when even the language of tragedy has altered its character. Just as iambics were adopted, instead of tetrameters, because they are the most prose-like[4] of all metres, so tragedy has given up all those words, not used in ordinary talk, which decorated the early drama and are still used by the writers of hexameter poems. It is therefore ridiculous to imitate a poetical manner which the poets themselves have dropped; and it is now plain that we have not to treat in detail the whole question of style, but may confine ourselves to that part of it which concerns our present subject, rhetoric. The other—the poetical—part of it has been discussed in the treatise on the *Art of Poetry*.[5]

2 We may, then, start from the observations there made, 1404[b]

[1] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 164; Spengel, *Artium Scriptores*, pp. 93 ff.

[2] i. e. the movement towards the conscious cultivation of beautiful language.

[3] Cp. Spengel, *Artium Scriptores*, pp. 69 ff.

[4] Cp. λόγου, 1404[a] 28. Or, 'speech-like'.

[5] *Poetics*, cc. 20-2.

including the definition of style. Style to be good must be clear, as is proved by the fact that speech which fails to convey a plain meaning will fail to do just what speech has to do. It must also be appropriate, avoiding both meanness and undue elevation; poetical language is certainly free from meanness, but it is not appropriate to prose.[1] Clearness is secured by using the words (nouns and verbs alike) that are current and ordinary. Freedom from meanness, and positive adornment too, are secured by using the other words mentioned in the *Art of Poetry*.[2] Such variation from what is usual makes the language appear more stately. People do not feel towards strangers as they do towards their own countrymen, and the same thing is true of their feeling for language. It is therefore well to give to everyday speech an unfamiliar air: people like what strikes them, and are struck by what is out of the way. In verse such effects are common, and there they are fitting: the persons and things there spoken of are comparatively remote from ordinary life. In prose passages they are far less often fitting because the subject-matter is less exalted. Even in poetry, it is not quite appropriate that fine language should be used by a slave or a very young man, or about very trivial subjects: even in poetry the style, to be appropriate, must sometimes be toned down, though at other times heightened. We can now see that a writer must disguise his art and give the impression of speaking naturally and not artificially. Naturalness is persuasive, artificiality is the contrary; for our hearers are prejudiced and think we have some design against them, as if we were mixing their wines for them. It is like the difference between the quality of Theodorus' voice and the voices of all other actors: his really seems to be that of the character who is speaking, theirs do not. We can hide our

[1] This last clause explains the cautious addition just made to the definition as given in the *Poetics*. Poetry, it is pointed out, often heightens expression in a way which would seem pretentious and intolerable in prose; cp. the examples from Euripides and Dionysius the Brazen in 1405[a] 28–34. Still, in the main, the same definition and methods apply to both poetical and prose style.

[2] *Poetics*, cc. 21, 22.

purpose successfully by taking the single words of our composition from the speech of ordinary life. This is done in poetry by Euripides, who was the first to show the way to his successors.[1]

Language is composed of nouns and verbs. Nouns are of the various kinds considered in the treatise on Poetry.[2] Strange words, compound words, and invented words must be used sparingly and on few occasions: on *what* occasions we shall state later.[3] The reason for this restriction has been already indicated: they depart from what is suitable, in the direction of excess. In the language of prose, besides the regular and proper terms for things, metaphorical terms only can be used with advantage. This we gather from the fact that these two classes of terms, the proper or regular and the metaphorical—these and no others—are used by everybody in conversation. We can now see that a good writer can produce a style that is distinguished without being obtrusive, and is at the same time clear, thus satisfying our definition[4] of good oratorical prose. Words of ambiguous meaning[5] are chiefly useful to enable the sophist to mislead his hearers. Synonyms are useful to the poet, by which I mean words whose ordinary meaning is the same, e.g. πορεύεσθαι (*advancing*) and βαδίζειν (*proceeding*); these two are ordinary words and have the same meaning. 1405a

In the *Art of Poetry*,[6] as we have already said, will be found definitions of these kinds of words; a classification of Metaphors; and mention of the fact that metaphor is of great value both in poetry and in prose. Prose-writers must, however, pay specially careful attention to metaphor, because their other resources are scantier than those of poets. Metaphor, moreover, gives style clearness, charm, and distinction as nothing else can: and it is not a thing whose use can be taught by one man to another. Metaphors, like epithets, must be fitting, which means that they must fairly correspond to the thing signified: failing this, their inappropriateness will be conspicuous: the want of harmony

[1] Cp. Dionysius of Halicarnassus, *On Literary Composition*, p. 78 n.
[2] *Poetics*, c. 21. [3] iii, cc. 3, 7. [4] iii, c. 2 *ad init.*
[5] *Homonyms*, in the Greek. [6] Cp. *Poetics*, cc. 21, 22.

between two things is emphasized by their being placed side by side. It is like having to ask ourselves what dress will suit an old man ; certainly not the crimson cloak that suits a young man. And if you wish to pay a compliment, you must take your metaphor from something better in the same line; if to disparage, from something worse. To illustrate my meaning: since opposites are in the same class, you do what I have suggested if you say that a man who begs 'prays', and a man who prays 'begs'; for praying and begging are both varieties of asking. So Iphicrates called Callias a 'mendicant priest' instead of a 'torch-bearer', and Callias replied that Iphicrates must be uninitiated or he would have called him not a 'mendicant priest' but a 'torch-bearer'. Both are religious titles, but one is honourable and the other is not. Again, somebody calls actors 'hangers-on of Dionysus', but they call themselves 'artists': each of these terms is a metaphor, the one intended to throw dirt at the actor, the other to dignify him. And pirates now call themselves 'purveyors'. We can thus call a crime a mistake, or a mistake a crime. We can say that a thief 'took' a thing, or that he 'plundered' his victim. An expression like that of Euripides' Telephus,

King of the oar, on Mysia's coast he landed,[1]

is inappropriate ; the word 'king' goes beyond the dignity of the subject, and so the art is *not* concealed. A metaphor may be amiss because the very syllables of the words conveying it fail to indicate sweetness of vocal utterance. Thus Dionysius the Brazen in his elegies calls poetry 'Calliope's screech'.[2] Poetry and screeching are both, to be sure, vocal utterances. But the metaphor is bad, because the sounds of 'screeching', unlike those of poetry, are discordant and unmeaning.[3] Further, in using metaphors to give names to nameless things, we must draw them not from remote but from kindred and similar things,

[1] Euripides, *Telephus*, N.[2], p. 583.
[2] Dionysius Chalcus, fragm. 7, Bergk[4], vol. ii, p. 264.
[3] The syllables of κραυγή are, it seems, regarded as ugly and non-significant.

so that the kinship is clearly perceived as soon as the words are said. Thus in the celebrated riddle

I marked how a man glued bronze with fire to another man's body,[1] 1405[b]

the process is nameless; but both it and gluing are a kind of application, and that is why the application of the cupping-glass is here called a 'gluing'. Good riddles do, in general, provide us with satisfactory metaphors: for metaphors imply riddles, and therefore a good riddle can furnish a good metaphor. Further, the materials of metaphors must be beautiful; and the beauty, like the ugliness, of all words may, as Licymnius says, lie in their sound or in their meaning.[2] Further, there is a third consideration—one that upsets the fallacious argument of the sophist Bryson, that there is no such thing as foul language, because in whatever words you put a given thing your meaning is the same. This is untrue. One term may describe a thing more truly than another, may be more like it, and set it more intimately before our eyes. Besides, two different words will represent a thing in two different lights; so on this ground also one term must be held fairer or fouler than another. For both of two terms will indicate what *is* fair, or what *is* foul, but not simply their fairness or their foulness, or if so, at any rate not in an equal degree. The materials of metaphor must be beautiful to the ear, to the understanding, to the eye or some other physical sense. It is better, for instance, to say 'rosy-fingered morn',[3] than 'crimson-fingered' or, worse still, 'red-fingered morn'. The epithets that we apply, too, may have a bad and ugly aspect, as when Orestes is called a 'mother-slayer'; or a better one, as when he is called his 'father's avenger'.[4] Simonides, when the victor in the mule-race offered him a small fee, refused to write him an ode, because, he said, it was so unpleasant to write odes to half-asses: but on receiving an adequate fee, he wrote

[1] Cleobulina, fragm. 1, Bergk[4], vol. ii, p. 62. Cp. Demetrius, *On Style*, p. 231.
[2] Cp. Blass, *Att. Bereds.*[2], i, p. 86.
[3] *Iliad*, i. 477, &c. [4] Euripides, *Orestes*, 1587, 1588.

Hail to you, daughters of storm-footed steeds,[1]

though of course they were daughters of asses too. The same effect is attained by the use of diminutives, which make a bad thing less bad and a good thing less good. Take, for instance, the banter of Aristophanes in the *Babylonians*[2] where he uses 'goldlet' for 'gold', 'cloaklet' for 'cloak', 'scofflet' for 'scoff', and 'plaguelet'. But alike in using epithets and in using diminutives we must be wary and must observe the mean.

Bad taste in language may take any of four forms:— 3

(1) The misuse of compound words. Lycophron, for instance, talks of the '*many-visaged* heaven' above the '*giant-crested* earth', and again the '*strait-pathed* shore';[3] and Gorgias of the '*pauper-poet* flatterer' and 'oath-breaking and *over-oath-keeping*'.[4] Alcidamas uses such expressions as 'the soul filling with rage and face becoming *flame-flushed*', and 'he thought their enthusiasm would be *issue-fraught*' and '*issue-fraught* he made the persuasion of his words', and '*sombre-hued* is the floor of the sea'.[5] The way all these words are compounded makes them, we feel, fit for verse only.[6] This, then, is one form in which bad taste is shown.

(2) Another is the employment of strange words. For instance, Lycophron talks of 'the *prodigious* Xerxes' and '*spoliative* Sciron';[7] Alcidamas of 'a *toy* for poetry' and 'the *witlessness* of nature', and says '*whetted* with the *unmitigated* temper of his spirit'.[8]

(3) A third form is the use of long, unseasonable, or frequent epithets. It is appropriate enough for a poet to talk of 'white milk',[9] but in prose such epithets are sometimes lacking in appropriateness or, when spread too thickly, plainly reveal the author turning his prose into poetry.

[1] Simonides, fragm. 7, Bergk[4], vol. iii, p. 390.
[2] Aristophanes, *Babylonians*, Meineke, ii. 982.
[3] Cp. Blass, *Att. Bereds.*[2], ii, p. 364.
[4] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 131 (Gorgias, fragm. vii. 2).
[5] Ibid., p. 156 (Alcidamas).
[6] The meaning seems to be that such compounds have a dithyrambic cast; cp. ὅταν διθυραμβώδης συντεθῇ ἡ δίπλωσις τοῦ ὀνόματος, Demetrius, *On Style*, pp. 125, 233 (referring to this chapter), and also 1406b 2 infra.
[7] Blass, *loc. cit.* [8] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 156 (Alcidamas).
[9] e.g. *Iliad*, iv. 434.

Of course we must use some epithets, since they lift our style above the usual level and give it an air of distinction. But we must aim at the due mean, or the result will be worse than if we took no trouble at all; we shall get something actually bad instead of something merely not good. That is why the epithets of Alcidamas seem so tasteless; he does not use them as the seasoning of the meat, but as the meat itself, so numerous and swollen and aggressive[1] are they. For instance, he does not say 'sweat', but 'the *moist* sweat'; not 'to the Isthmian games', but 'to the *world-concourse* of the Isthmian games'; not 'laws', but 'the laws *that are monarchs of states*'; not 'at a run', but '*his heart impelling him to speed of foot*'; not 'a school of the Muses', but '*Nature's* school of the Muses had he inherited'; and so '*frowning* care of heart', and 'achiever' not of 'popularity' but of '*universal* popularity', and '*dispenser* of pleasure to his audience', and 'he concealed it' not 'with boughs' but 'with boughs *of the forest trees*', and 'he clothed' not 'his body' but '*his body's nakedness*', and 'his soul's desire was *counter-imitative*' (this is at one and the same time a compound and an epithet, so that it seems a poet's effort), and 'so *extravagant* the excess of his wickedness'.[2] We thus see how the inappropriateness of such poetical language imports absurdity and tastelessness into speeches, as well as the obscurity that comes from all this verbosity—for when the sense is plain, you only obscure and spoil its clearness by piling up words.

The ordinary use of compound words is where there is no term for a thing and some compound can be easily formed, like 'pastime' (χρονοτριβεῖν); but if this is much done, the prose character disappears entirely. We now see 1406b why the language of compounds is just the thing for writers of dithyrambs, who love sonorous noises; strange words for writers of epic poetry, which is a proud and stately affair; and metaphor for iambic verse, the metre which (as has been already[3] said) is widely used to-day.

[1] ἐπιδήλοις, with the MSS.
[2] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 156 (Alcidamas). [3] iii, c. 1, 1404a 13.

(4) There remains the fourth region in which bad taste may be shown, metaphor. Metaphors like other things may be inappropriate. Some are so because they are ridiculous; they are indeed used by comic as well as tragic poets. Others are too grand and theatrical; and these, if they are far-fetched, may also be obscure. For instance, Gorgias talks of 'events that are green and full of sap', and says 'foul was the deed you sowed and evil the harvest you reaped'.[1] That is too much like poetry. Alcidamas, again, called philosophy 'a fortress that threatens the power of law', and the *Odyssey* 'a goodly looking-glass of human life',[2] and talked about 'offering no such toy to poetry':[3] all these expressions fail, for the reasons given, to carry the hearer with them. The address of Gorgias to the swallow, when she had let her droppings fall on him as she flew overhead, is in the best tragic manner. He said, 'Nay, shame, O Philomela'. Considering her as a bird, you could not call her act shameful; considering her as a girl, you could; and so it was a good gibe to address her as what she was once and not as what she is.

4 The Simile also is a metaphor; the difference is but slight. When the poet says of Achilles that he

Leapt on the foe as a lion,[4]

this is a simile; when he says of him 'the lion leapt', it is a metaphor—here, since both are courageous, he has transferred[5] to Achilles the name of 'lion'. Similes are useful in prose as well as in verse; but not often, since they are of the nature of poetry. They are to be employed just as metaphors are employed, since they are really the same thing except for the difference mentioned.

The following are examples of similes. Androtion said

[1] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 131 (Gorgias).

[2] Ib., p. 156 (Alcidamas). This metaphor apparently strikes Aristotle as 'far-fetched' and incongruous, and as reflecting the surface only: it makes a peep-show of the great epic of human life. It would probably obscure his point to render 'a fair *mirror* of the life of man', since 'mirror' is now one of the most familiar and edge-worn of metaphors.

[3] Cp. 1406a 8 *supra*.

[4] Cp. *Iliad*, xx. 164, ὥρτο λέων ὥς.

[5] μετενέγκας, 'transferred-by-metaphor'.

of Idrieus that he was like a terrier let off the chain, that flies at you and bites you—Idrieus too was savage now that he was let out of *his* chains.[1] Theodamas compared Archidamus to an Euxenus who could not do geometry—a proportional[2] simile, implying that Euxenus is an Archidamus who *can* do geometry. In Plato's *Republic* those who strip the dead are compared to curs which bite the stones thrown at them but do not touch the thrower;[3] and there is the simile about the Athenian people, who are compared to a ship's captain who is strong but a little deaf;[4] and the one about poets' verses, which are likened to persons who lack beauty but possess youthful freshness—when the freshness has faded the charm perishes, and so with verses when broken up into prose.[5] Pericles compared the Samians to children who take their pap but go on crying; and the Boeotians to holm-oaks, because they were ruining one another by civil wars just as one oak causes another oak's fall.[6] Demosthenes said that the Athenian people were like sea-sick men on board ship.[7] Again, Democrates compared the political orators to nurses who swallow the bit of food themselves and then smear the children's lips with the spittle.[8] Antisthenes compared the lean Cephisodotus to frankincense, because it was his consumption that gave one pleasure. All these ideas may be expressed either as similes or as metaphors; those which succeed as metaphors will obviously do well also as similes, and similes, with the explanation omitted, will appear as metaphors. But the proportional metaphor[9] must always apply reciprocally to either of its co-ordinate terms. For instance, if a drinking-bowl is the shield of Dionysus, a shield may fittingly be called the drinking-bowl of Ares.[10]

1407a

5 Such, then, are the ingredients of which speech is

[1] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 245 (Androtion).
[2] A 'rule-of-three' simile, an 'analogical' simile.
[3] Plato, *Rep.*, v. 469 E. [4] Ib., vi. 488 A. [5] Cp. ib., x. 601 B.
[6] Cp. Roberts, *Ancient Boeotians*, pp. 15, 16.
[7] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 254 (Demosthenes).
[8] Ib., p. 320 (Democrates).
[9] i. e. metaphor *or simile*: μεταφορά used as being the more general and inclusive term (cp. beginning of chapter).
[10] Timotheus (ap. Athen. 433 D).

composed. The foundation of good style is correctness of language,[1] which falls under five heads. (1) First, the proper use of connecting words, and the arrangement of them in the natural sequence which some of them require. For instance, the connective μέν (e.g. ἐγὼ μέν) requires the correlative δέ (e.g. ὁ δέ). The answering word must be brought in before the first has been forgotten, and not be widely separated from it; nor, except in the few cases where this is appropriate, is another connective to be introduced before the one required. Consider the sentence, 'But I, as soon as he told me (for Cleon had come begging and praying), took them along and set out.'[2] In this sentence many connecting words are inserted in front of the one required to complete the sense; and if there is a long interval before 'set out', the result is obscurity. One merit, then, of good style lies in the right use of connecting words. (2) The second lies in calling things by their own special names and not by vague general ones. (3) The third is to avoid ambiguities; unless, indeed, you definitely desire to be ambiguous, as those do who have nothing to say but are pretending to mean something. Such people are apt to put that sort of thing into verse. Empedocles, for instance, by his long circumlocutions imposes on his hearers; these are affected in the same way as most people are when they listen to diviners, whose ambiguous utterances are received with nods of acquiescence—

Croesus by crossing the Halys will ruin a mighty realm.[3]

1407b Diviners use these vague generalities about the matter in hand because their predictions are thus, as a rule, less likely to be falsified. We are more likely to be right, in the game of 'odd and even', if we simply guess 'even' or 'odd' than if we guess at the actual number; and the oracle-monger is more likely to be right if he simply says

[1] τὸ ἑλληνίζειν, 'to use good, pure, correct Greek'.

[2] Bywater (*Journal of Philology*, xxxii. 119) would read ἐγὼ μέν for ἐγὼ δ', the apodotic particle (e.g. ὁ δέ . . . .) being mentally supplied after αὐτούς. Or συνδέσμου may be omitted after ἀποδοθησομένου, when the sense will be 'before the apodosis ἐπορευόμην'.

[3] Cp. Herod., i. 53, 91.

that a thing will happen than if he says *when* it will happen, and therefore he refuses to add a definite date. All these ambiguities have the same sort of effect,[1] and are to be avoided unless we have some such object as that mentioned. (4) A fourth rule is to observe Protagoras' classification of nouns into male, female, and inanimate; for these distinctions also must be correctly given. 'Upon her arrival she said her say and departed (ἡ δ' ἐλθοῦσα καὶ διαλεχθεῖσα ᾤχετο).' (5) A fifth rule is to express plurality, fewness, and unity by the correct wording,[2] e.g. 'Having come, they struck me (οἱ δ' ἐλθόντες ἔτυπτόν με).'

It is a general rule that a written composition should be easy to read and therefore easy to deliver.[3] This cannot be so where there are many connecting words or clauses, or where punctuation is hard, as in the writings of Heracleitus. To punctuate Heracleitus is no easy task, because we often cannot tell whether a particular word belongs to what precedes or what follows it. Thus, at the outset of his treatise he says, 'Though this truth is always men understand it not',[4] where it is not clear with which of the two clauses the word 'always' should be joined by the punctuation. Further, the following fact leads to solecism, viz. that the sentence does not work out properly if you annex to two terms a third which does not suit them both.[5] Thus either 'sound' or 'colour' will fail to work out properly with some verbs:[6] 'perceive' will apply to both, 'see' will not. Obscurity is also caused if, when you intend to insert a number of details, you do not first make your meaning clear; for instance, if you say, 'I meant, after telling him this, that, and the other thing, to set out', rather than something of this kind 'I meant to set out after telling him; then this, that, and the other thing occurred.'

6 The following suggestions will help to give your language

[1] i.e. are equally destructive of clearness.
[2] i.e. to write singular, dual, and plural endings correctly.
[3] Or, 'easy to understand': cp. δύσφραστος.
[4] Heracleitus, fragm. 1 (Diels).
[5] Mr. W. D. Ross's view of the construction and meaning of this passage is followed in this and the next sentence. He reads τόδε in place of τάδε.
[6] i.e. will be unsuitable if you have used either ἰδών or ἀκούσας.

impressiveness.[1] (1) Describe a thing instead of naming it: do not say 'circle', but 'that surface which extends equally from the middle every way'. To achieve conciseness, do the opposite—put the name instead of the description. When mentioning anything ugly or unseemly, use its name if it is the description that is ugly, and describe it if it is the name that is ugly. (2) Represent things with the help of metaphors and epithets, being careful to avoid poetical effects. (3) Use plural for singular, as in poetry, where one finds

Unto havens Achaean,[2]

though only one haven is meant,
and

Here are my letter's many-leavèd folds.[3]

(4) Do not bracket two words under one article, but put one article with each; e.g. τῆς γυναικὸς τῆς ἡμετέρας.[4] The reverse to secure conciseness; e.g. τῆς ἡμετέρας γυναικός.[5] (5) Use plenty of connecting words; conversely, to secure conciseness, dispense with connectives, while still preserving connexion; e.g. 'having gone and spoken',[6] and 'having gone, I spoke',[7] respectively. (6) And the practice of Antimachus, too, is useful—to describe a thing by mentioning attributes it does not possess; as he does in talking of Teumessus—

There is a little wind-swept knoll . . .[8]

A subject can be developed indefinitely along these lines. You may apply this method of treatment by negation either to good or to bad qualities, according to which your subject requires. It is from this source that the poets draw

[1] ὄγκος sometimes means 'inflation', 'bombast', 'pomp', 'grandiloquence', rather than 'dignity'. Cp. Longinus, *On the Sublime*, iii. 4, and Demetrius, *On Style*, pp. 294–5. A neutral rendering like 'amplitude', 'grandeur', 'impressiveness', seems best.

[2] Fragm. Adesp. 83, Nauck².

[3] Euripides, *Iph. Taur.* 727: more literally, 'here are the tablet's folds with many doors'.

[4] 'that wife of ours'.

[5] 'our wife'.

[6] πορευθεὶς καὶ διαλεχθείς.

[7] πορευθεὶς διελέχθην. [Either this form or that in note 6 will stand, but *not* πορευθεὶς διαλεχθείς, 'having gone spoken'].

[8] Antimachus, *Thebais*, fragm. 2; Kinkel, *Ep. Gr. Fr.*, p. 277. The significant part of the passage is not given in the text: it would be well known in Aristotle's day.

expressions such as the 'stringless' or 'lyreless' melody, thus forming epithets out of negations. This device is popular in proportional metaphors, as when the trumpet's note is called 'a lyreless melody'.[1]

7 Your language will be *appropriate* if it expresses emotion and character, and if it corresponds to its subject. 'Correspondence to subject' means that we must neither speak casually about weighty matters, nor solemnly about trivial ones; nor must we add ornamental epithets to commonplace nouns, or the effect will be comic, as in the works of Cleophon, who can use phrases as absurd as 'O queenly fig-tree'. To express emotion, you will employ the language of anger in speaking of outrage; the language of disgust and discreet reluctance to utter a word when speaking of impiety or foulness; the language of exultation for a tale of glory, and that of humiliation for a tale of pity; and so in all other cases.

This aptness of language is one thing that makes people believe in the truth of your story: their minds draw the false conclusion that you are to be trusted from the fact that others behave as you do when things are as you describe them; and therefore they take your story to be true, whether it is so or not. Besides, an emotional speaker always makes his audience feel with him, even when there is nothing in his arguments; which is why many speakers try to overwhelm their audience by mere noise.

Furthermore, this way of proving your story by displaying these signs of its genuineness expresses your personal character.[2] Each class of men, each type of disposition, will have its own appropriate way of letting the truth appear. Under 'class' I include differences of age, as boy, man, or old man; of sex, as man or woman; of nationality, as Spartan or Thessalian. By 'dispositions' I here mean those dispositions only which determine the character of a man's life, for it is not every disposition that does this. If, then, a speaker uses the very words which

[1] The Greek word for 'melody' is appropriate to the lyre and not to the trumpet.

[2] No lacuna.

are in keeping with a particular disposition, he will reproduce the corresponding character; for a rustic and an educated man will not say the same things nor speak in the same way. Again, some impression is made upon an audience by a device which speech-writers employ to nauseous excess, when they say 'Who does not know this?' or 'It is known to everybody.' The hearer is ashamed of his ignorance, and agrees with the speaker, so as to have a share of the knowledge that everybody else possesses.

1408b All the variations of oratorical style are capable of being used in season or out of season. The best way to counteract any exaggeration is the well-worn device by which the speaker puts in some criticism of himself; for then people feel it must be all right for him to talk thus, since he certainly knows what he is doing. Further, it is better not to have everything always just corresponding to everything else—your hearers will see through you less easily thus. I mean for instance, if your words are harsh, you should not extend this harshness to your voice and your countenance and have everything else in keeping. If you do, the artificial character of each detail becomes apparent; whereas if you adopt one device and not another, you are using art all the same and yet nobody notices it. (To be sure, if mild sentiments are expressed in harsh tones and harsh sentiments in mild tones, you become comparatively unconvincing.) Compound words, fairly plentiful epithets, and strange words best suit an emotional speech. We forgive an angry man for talking about a wrong as 'heaven-high' or 'colossal'; and we excuse such language when the speaker has his hearers already in his hands and has stirred them deeply either by praise or blame or anger or affection, as Isocrates, for instance, does at the end of his *Panegyric*, with his 'name and fame'[1] and 'in that they brooked'.[2] Men do speak in this strain when they are deeply stirred, and so, once the audience is in a like state of feeling, approval of course follows. This is why such language is fitting in poetry, which is an inspired thing.

[1] *φήμην δὲ καὶ μνήμην*, *Paneg.*, § 186. [2] *οἵτινες ἔτλησαν*, ib., § 95.

This language, then, should be used either under stress of emotion, or ironically, after the manner of Gorgias and of the passages in the *Phaedrus*.[1]

8 The form of a prose composition should be neither metrical nor destitute of rhythm.[2] The metrical form destroys the hearer's trust by its artificial appearance, and at the same time it diverts his attention, making him watch for metrical recurrences, just as children catch up the herald's question, 'Whom does the freedman choose as his advocate?', with the answer 'Cleon!' On the other hand, unrhythmical language is too unlimited; we do not want the limitations of metre, but some limitation we must have, or the effect will be vague and unsatisfactory. Now it is number that limits all things; and it is the numerical limitation of the form of a composition that constitutes rhythm, of which metres are definite sections.[3]

Prose, then, is to be rhythmical, but not metrical, or it will become not prose but verse. It should not even have too precise a prose rhythm, and therefore should only be rhythmical to a certain extent.

Of the various rhythms, the heroic has dignity, but lacks the tones of the spoken language.[4] The iambic is the very language of ordinary people, so that in common talk iambic lines occur oftener than any others: but in a speech we need dignity and the power of taking the hearer out of his ordinary self. The trochee is too much akin to wild dancing: we can see this in tetrameter verse, which is one of the trochaic rhythms.[5] 1409a

There remains the paean, which speakers began to use in the time of Thrasymachus, though they had then no name

[1] Cp. Plato, *Phaedrus*, 238 D, 241 E. *Irony* is attributed to Gorgias, with an illustration, in the *Politics*, iii. 2, 1275b 27.

[2] Cp. Dionysius of Halicarnassus, *On Literary Composition*, pp. 254–6.

[3] Reading τμήματα, with Bywater.

[4] Or, read (with Victorius) σεμνὸς καὶ οὐ λεκτικὸς καὶ ἁρμονίας δεόμενος and translate 'is stately and not suited to ordinary speech and demands ("needs" rather than "lacks") musical quality (musical delivery or accompaniment)'.

[5] Or, 'which is a tripping rhythm', if τροχαῖος is equivalent to the τροχερός of some MSS.

to give it.[1] The paean is a third class of rhythm, closely akin to both the two already mentioned; it has in it the ratio of three to two, whereas the other two kinds have the ratio of one to one, and two to one respectively. Between the two last ratios comes the ratio of one-and-a-half to one, which is that of the paean.

Now the other two kinds of rhythm must be rejected in writing prose, partly for the reasons given, and partly because they are too metrical; and the paean must be adopted, since from this alone of the rhythms mentioned no definite metre arises, and therefore it is the least obtrusive of them. At present the same form of paean is employed at the beginning as at the end of sentences, whereas the end should differ from the beginning. There are two opposite kinds of paean, one of which is suitable to the beginning of a sentence, where it is indeed actually used; this is the kind that begins with a long syllable and ends with three short ones, as

– ∪ ∪ ∪ | – ∪ ∪ ∪
Δαλογενὲς | εἴτε Λυκί|αν,[2]

and

– ∪ ∪ ∪ – ∪ ∪ ∪
Χρυσεοκόμ|α Ἑκατε | παῖ Διός.[3]

The other paean begins, conversely, with three short syllables and ends with a long one, as

∪ ∪ ∪ – ∪ ∪ ∪ – ∪ ∪ ∪ – ∪ ∪ ∪ –
μετὰ δὲ γᾶν | ὕδατά τ' ὠκ|εανὸν ἠ|φάνισε νύξ.[4]

This kind of paean makes a real close: a short syllable can give no effect of finality, and therefore makes the rhythm appear truncated. A sentence should break off with the long syllable: the fact that it is over should be indicated not by the scribe, or by his period-mark in the margin, but by the rhythm itself.

We have now seen that our language must be rhythmical

[1] Cp. Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 164 (Thrasymachus).
[2] 'O Delos-born, or if perchance Lycia (thou callest thy birthplace).'
[3] 'Golden-haired Archer, Son of Zeus.'
[4] 'After earth and its waters, night shrouded the Ocean from sight.' This line and the two which precede it are given as fragments of the *Paeans* of Simonides in Bergk[4], iii, p. 398; Simonides, fragm. 26[b].

and not destitute of rhythm, and what rhythms, in what particular shape, make it so.

9 The language of prose must be either free-running, with its parts united by nothing except the connecting words, like the preludes in dithyrambs; or compact and antithetical, like the strophes of the old poets. The free-running style is the ancient one, e.g. 'Herein is set forth the inquiry of Herodotus the Thurian.'[1] Every one used this method formerly; not many do so now. By 'free-running' style I mean the kind that has no natural stopping-places, and comes to a stop only because there is no more to say of that subject. This style is unsatisfying just because it goes on indefinitely—one always likes to sight a stopping-place in front of one: it is only at the goal that men in a race faint and collapse; while they see the end of the course before them, they can keep going. Such, then, is the free-running kind of style; the compact is that which is in periods. By a period I mean a portion of speech that has in itself a beginning and an end, being at the same time not too big to be taken in at a glance. Language of this kind is satisfying and easy to follow. 1409ᵇ It is satisfying, because it is just the reverse of indefinite; and moreover, the hearer always feels that he is grasping something and has reached some definite conclusion; whereas it is unsatisfactory to see nothing in front of you and get nowhere.[2] It is easy to follow, because it can easily be remembered; and this because language when in periodic form can be numbered,[3] and number is the easiest of all things to remember. That is why verse, which is measured, is always more easily remembered than prose, which is not: the measures of verse can be numbered. The period must, further, not be completed until the sense is complete: it must not be capable of

[1] Herodotus, i. 1, init. Ἡροδότου Ἁλικαρνησσέος ἱστορίης ἀπόδεξις ἥδε, ὡς μήτε κτλ. Aristotle intends to indicate the first complete sentence, or more than that.

[2] Omitting εἶναι.

[3] i. e. is recognized as consisting of a countable number of parts or divisions.

breaking off abruptly, as may happen with the following iambic lines of Sophocles—

Calydon's soil is this; of Pelops' land
⟨The smiling plains face us across the strait⟩.[1]

By a wrong division[2] of the words the hearer may take the meaning to be the reverse of what it is: for instance, in the passage quoted, one might imagine that Calydon is in the Peloponnesus.

A Period may be either divided into several members[3] or simple. The period of several members is a portion of speech (1) complete in itself, (2) divided into parts, and (3) easily delivered at a single breath—as a whole, that is; not by fresh breath being taken at the division.[4] A member is one of the two parts of such a period. By a 'simple' period, I mean that which has only one member. The members, and the whole periods, should be neither curt nor long. A member which is too short often makes the listener stumble; he is still expecting the rhythm to go on to the limit his mind has fixed for it; and if meanwhile he is pulled back by the speaker's stopping, the shock is bound to make him, so to speak, stumble. If, on the other hand, you go on too long, you make him feel left behind, just as people who when walking pass beyond the boundary before turning back leave their companions[5] behind. So too if a period is too long you turn it into a speech, or something like a dithyrambic prelude. The result is much like the preludes that Democritus of Chios jeered at Melanippides for writing instead of antistrophic stanzas—

[1] Euripides, *Meleager*, N.², p. 525; cp. Demetrius, *On Style*, pp. 98, 222.

[2] i. e. by coming to an abrupt stop at the end of the first line and making no pause in its middle.

[3] κῶλον: *limb of a period, clause of a sentence.*

[4] Omitting ὥσπερ καὶ ἡ περίοδος. With these words the sense may be 'not with divisions left to the speaker as in the period quoted, but when taken as a continuous whole'. But Aristotle's meaning seems to be that the 'colic' period must not merely consist of *parts* that are εὐανάπνευστα. Unless the whole thing is so, you get the over-long period, open to the objections mentioned presently.

[5] τοὺς συμπεριπατοῦντας: 'their fellow-peripatetics.' There may be a humorous allusion to occasions on which Aristotle's slower-footed pupils in the Lyceum had got out of earshot of their strenuous teacher who refused to turn when he had reached the recognized limit of the walk.

He that sets traps for another man's feet
  Is like to fall into them first;
And long-winded preludes do harm to us all,
  But the preluder catches it worst.[1]

Which applies likewise to long-membered[2] orators. Periods whose members are altogether too short are not periods at all; and the result is to bring the hearer down with a crash.

The periodic style which is divided into members is of two kinds. It is either simply divided, as in 'I have often wondered at the conveners of national gatherings and the founders of athletic contests';[3] or it is antithetical, where, in each of the two members, one of one pair of opposites is put along with one of another pair, or the same word is used to bracket two opposites, as 'They aided both parties—not only those who stayed behind but those who accompanied them: for the latter they acquired new territory larger than that at home, and to the former they left territory at home that was large enough'.[4] Here the contrasted words are 'staying behind' and 'accompanying', 'enough' and 'larger'. So in the example, 'Both to those who want to get property and to those who desire to enjoy it',[5] where 'enjoyment' is contrasted with 'getting'. Again, 'it often happens in such enterprises that the wise men fail and the fools succeed';[6] 'they were awarded the prize of valour immediately, and won the command of the sea not long afterwards';[7] 'to sail through the mainland and march through the sea, by bridging the Hellespont and cutting through Athos';[8] 'nature gave them their country and law took it away again';[9] 'some of them perished in misery, others were saved in disgrace';[10] 'Athenian citizens keep foreigners in their houses as

[1] Democritus, Χῖος μουσικός (Diog. Laert. ix. 49). Cp. a note in Mullach, *Democriti Abderitae Operum Fragmenta*, p. 91, and also see Hesiod, *Works and Days*, 266.

[2] i. e. long-winded framers of long-membered periods; possibly with a play on 'long-limbed', 'lanky'.

[3] Isocrates, *Paneg.*, § 1.

[4] Ib. §§ 35, 36 (with variations, as often elsewhere, from the originals).

[5] Ib., § 41. [6] Ib., § 48. [7] Ib., § 72. [8] Ib., § 89.
[9] Ib., § 105. [10] Ib., § 149.

servants, while the city of Athens allows her allies by thousands to live as the foreigner's slaves';[1] and 'to possess in life or to bequeath at death'.[2] There is also what some one said about Peitholaus and Lycophron in a law-court, 'These men used to sell you when they were at home, and now they have come to you here and bought you'.[3] All these passages have the structure described above. Such a form of speech is satisfying, because the significance of contrasted ideas is easily felt, especially when they are thus put side by side, and also because it has the effect of a logical argument; it is by putting two opposing conclusions side by side that you prove one of them false.

Such, then, is the nature of *antithesis*. *Parisosis* is making the two members of a period equal in length. *Paromoeosis* is making the extreme words of both members like each other. This must happen either at the beginning or at the end of each member. If at the beginning, the resemblance must always be between whole words; at the end, between final syllables or inflexions of the same word or the same word repeated. Thus, at the beginning

ἀγρὸν γὰρ ἔλαβεν ἀργὸν παρ' αὐτοῦ[4]

and

δωρητοί τ' ἐπέλοντο παράρρητοί τ' ἐπέεσσιν.[5]

At the end

οὐκ ᾠήθησαν αὐτὸν παιδίον τετοκέναι, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ αἴτιον γεγονέναι,[6]

and

ἐν πλείσταις δὲ φροντίσι καὶ ἐν ἐλαχίσταις ἐλπίσιν.[7]

An example of inflexions of the same word is

ἄξιος δὲ σταθῆναι χαλκοῦς, οὐκ ἄξιος ὢν χαλκοῦ;[8]

[1] Ib., § 181. [2] Ib., § 186.

[3] Cp. Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 346.

[4] Aristophanes, fragm. 649, Kock, *Comicorum Atticorum Fragmenta*, i, p. 553. 'A field he took from him, a fallow field.'

[5] *Iliad*, ix. 526, 'Yet might they by presents be won, and by pleadings be pacified'.

[6] *Auct. Inc.* With οὐκ, the meaning will be 'they didn't imagine that he *had borne* the child, but that he was the cause of its *having been borne*'. Presumably a humorous remark in a paternity case. Bonitz conjectures: ᾠήθης ἂν αὐτὸν οὐ παιδίον κτλ.

[7] *Inc.* 'In the midst of plenteous cares and exiguous hopes'.

[8] *Inc.* 'Is he worthy to have a copper statue, when he is not worth a copper?'

Of the same word repeated,

σὺ δ' αὐτὸν καὶ ζῶντα ἔλεγες κακῶς καὶ νῦν γράφεις κακῶς.[1]

Of one syllable,

τί δ' ἂν ἔπαθες δεινόν, εἰ ἄνδρ' εἶδες ἀργόν;[2]

It is possible for the same sentence to have all these features together—*antithesis*, *parison*, and *homoeoteleuton*. 1410ᵇ (The possible beginnings[3] of periods have been pretty fully enumerated in the *Theodectea*.)[4] There are also spurious antitheses, like that of Epicharmus—

There one time I as their guest did stay,
And they were my hosts on another day.[5]

We may now consider the above points settled, and pass on to say something about the way to devise lively and taking sayings. Their actual invention can only come through natural talent or long practice; but this treatise may indicate the way it is done. We may deal with them by enumerating the different kinds of them. We will begin by remarking that we all naturally find it agreeable to get hold of new ideas easily: words express ideas, and therefore those words are the most agreeable that enable us to get hold of new ideas. Now strange words simply puzzle us; ordinary words convey only what we know already; it is from metaphor that we can best get hold of something fresh. When the poet calls old age 'a withered stalk',[6] he conveys a new idea, a new fact, to us by means of the general notion of 'lost bloom', which is common to both things. The similes of the poets do the same, and therefore, if they are good similes, give an effect of brilliance. The simile, as has been said before,[7] is a metaphor, differing from it only in the way it is put; and just because it is longer it is less attractive. Besides, it does not say outright that 'this' *is*

[1] *Inc.* 'When he was alive you spoke evil of him, and now you write evil of him'.

[2] *Inc.* 'Would it have been very shocking to you if you had seen a man idling?' [3] Reading ἀρχαί with the MSS.

[4] Cp. Berlin Aristotle, vol. v, p. 1499 a.

[5] Epicharmus, fragm. 49 in Lorenz's *Leben und Schriften des Koers Epicharmos*, p. 273: τόκα μὲν ἐν τήνων ἐγὼν ἦν, τόκα δὲ παρὰ τήνοις ἐγών, 'one time in their midst was I, another time beside them I'. Cp. Demetrius, *On Style*, pp. 80, 216.

[6] *Odyssey*, xiv. 213, 'stubble.' [7] iii, c. 4 init.

'that', and therefore the hearer is less interested in the idea. We see, then, that both speech and reasoning are lively in proportion as they make us seize a new idea promptly. For this reason people are not much taken either by obvious arguments (using the word 'obvious' to mean what is plain to everybody and needs no investigation), nor by those which puzzle us[1] when we hear them stated, but only by those which convey their information to us as soon as we hear them, provided we had not the information already; or which the mind only just fails to keep up with. These two kinds do convey to us a sort of information: but the obvious and the obscure kinds convey nothing, either at once or later on. It is these qualities, then, that, so far as the meaning of what is said is concerned, make an argument acceptable. So far as the style is concerned, it is the antithetical form that appeals to us, e.g. 'judging that the peace common to all the rest was a war upon their own private interests,'[2] where there is an antithesis between war and peace. It is also good to use metaphorical words; but the metaphors must not be far-fetched, or they will be difficult to grasp, nor obvious, or they will have no effect. The words, too, ought to set the scene before our eyes; for events ought to be seen in progress rather than in prospect. So we must aim at these three points: Antithesis, Metaphor, and Actuality.

1411a Of the four kinds of Metaphor the most taking is the proportional kind. Thus Pericles, for instance, said that the vanishing from their country of the young men who had fallen in the war was 'as if the spring were taken out of the year'.[3] Leptines, speaking of the Lacedaemonians, said that he would not have the Athenians let Greece 'lose one of her two eyes'.[4] When Chares was pressing for leave to be examined upon his share in the Olynthiac war, Cephisodotus was indignant, saying that he wanted his examination to take place 'while he had his fingers upon the people's

[1] Cp. ii, c. 23, 1400b 34. Bywater's conjecture ἀγνοοῦμεν seems right here.
[2] Isocrates, *Philippus*, 73. [3] Cp. i, c. 7, 1365a 32, 33.
[4] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 250 (Leptines).

throat'.[1] The same speaker once urged the Athenians to march to Euboea, 'with Miltiades' decree as their rations'.[2] Iphicrates, indignant at the truce made by the Athenians with Epidaurus and the neighbouring sea-board, said that they had stripped themselves of their travelling-money for the journey of war.[3] Peitholaus called the state-galley 'the people's big stick', and Sestos 'the corn-bin of the Peiraeus'.[4] Pericles bade his countrymen remove Aegina, 'that eyesore of the Peiraeus.' And Moerocles said he was no more a rascal than was a certain respectable citizen he named, 'whose rascality was worth over thirty[5] per cent. per annum to him, instead of a mere ten like his own'.[6] There is also the iambic line of Anaxandrides about the way his daughters put off marrying—

My daughters' marriage-bonds are overdue.[7]

Polyeuctus said of a paralytic man named Speusippus that he could not keep quiet, 'though fortune had fastened him in the pillory of disease'. Cephisodotus called warships 'painted millstones'.[8] Diogenes the Dog called taverns 'the mess-rooms of Attica'. Aesion said that the Athenians had 'emptied' their town into Sicily: this is a graphic metaphor.[9] 'Till all Hellas shouted aloud' may be regarded as a metaphor, and a graphic one again. Cephisodotus bade the Athenians take care not to hold too many 'parades'.[10] Isocrates used the same word of those who 'parade' at the national festivals.[11] Another example occurs in the Funeral Speech:[12] 'It is fitting that Greece should cut off her hair beside the tomb of those who fell at Salamis, since her freedom and their valour are buried in the same grave.' Even if the speaker here had only said

[1] i. e. while he was still in command of his mercenaries, and so could coerce the people.
[2] Baiter-Sauppe, p. 220 (Cephisodotus).
[3] Ib., p. 219 (Iphicrates).
[4] Ib., p. 318 (Peitholaus).
[5] To be precise, 33⅓%. [6] Baiter-Sauppe, p. 275 (Moerocles).
[7] Anaxandrides; Kock, *Com. Att. Fragm.*, ii, p. 162.
[8] Baiter-Sauppe, p. 220 (Cephisodotus). [9] Ib., p. 318 (Aesion).
[10] Ib., p. 220 (Cephisodotus). If *ἐκκλησίας* is retained, the meaning will be 'take care not to turn many of their mobs into assemblies'.
[11] Isocrates, *Philippus*, 12. [12] *Epitaphius* (by Lysias?), 60.

that it was right to weep when valour was being buried in their grave, it would have been a metaphor, and a graphic one; but the coupling of 'their valour' and 'her freedom' presents a kind of antithesis as well. 'The course of my words', said Iphicrates, 'lies straight through the middle of Chares' deeds': [1] this is a proportional metaphor, and the phrase 'straight through the middle' makes it graphic. The expression 'to call in one danger to rescue us from another' is a graphic metaphor. Lycoleon said, defending Chabrias, 'They did not respect even that bronze statue of his that intercedes for him yonder'.[2] This was a metaphor for the moment, though it would not always apply; a vivid metaphor, however; Chabrias is in danger, and his statue intercedes for him—that lifeless yet living thing which records his services to his country.[3] 'Practising in every way littleness of mind' [4] is metaphorical, for practising a quality implies increasing it.[5] So is 'God kindled our reason to be a lamp within our souls',[6] for both reason and light reveal things. So is 'we are not putting an end to our wars, but only postponing them',[7] for both literal postponement and the making of such a peace as this apply to future action. So is such a saying as 'This treaty is a far nobler trophy than those we set up on fields of battle; *they* celebrate small gains and single successes; *it* celebrates our triumph in the war as a whole'; [8] for both trophy and treaty are signs of victory. So is [9] 'A country pays a heavy reckoning in being condemned by the judgement of mankind',[10] for a reckoning is damage deservedly incurred.

11 It has already been mentioned that liveliness is got by using the proportional type of metaphor and by being graphic (i.e. making your hearers *see* things). We have still to explain what we mean by their 'seeing things', and

[1] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 191 (under Lysias). [2] Ib., p. 249 (Lycoleon).
[3] Or, 'the great deeds of his country' (Chares' glory being regarded as the glory of Athens). The translation given above would be easier if the conjecture ὑπὲρ τῆς πόλεως were followed.
[4] Isocrates, *Paneg.*, 151.
[5] 'Practising' being a *kind* of 'increasing', the present metaphor is one ἀπὸ τοῦ εἴδους ἐπὶ τὸ γένος, 'from species to genus' (*Poetics*, c. 21)
[6] *Auct. Inc.* [7] Isocrates, *Paneg.*, 172. [8] Ib., 180.
[9] Reading καὶ ὅτι. [10] *Auct. Inc.*; cp. Isocrates, *De Pace*, 120.

what must be done to effect this. By 'making them see things' I mean using expressions that represent things as in a state of activity. Thus, to say that a good man is 'four-square'[1] is certainly a metaphor; both the good man and the square are perfect; but the metaphor does not suggest activity. On the other hand, in the expression 'with his vigour in full bloom'[2] there is a notion of activity; and so in 'But you must roam as free as a sacred victim';[3] and in

Thereat up sprang the Hellenes to their feet,[4]

where 'up sprang' gives us activity as well as metaphor, for it at once suggests swiftness. So with Homer's common practice of giving metaphorical life to lifeless things: all such passages are distinguished by the effect of activity they convey. Thus,

Downward anon to the valley rebounded the boulder *remorseless*;[5]

and

The ⟨bitter⟩ arrow *flew*;[6]

and

Flying on *eagerly*;[7]

and

Stuck in the earth, still *panting* to feed on the flesh of the heroes;[8]

and

And the point of the spear *in its fury* drove full through his breastbone.[9]

In all these examples the things have the effect of being active because they are made into living beings; shameless behaviour and fury and so on are all forms of activity. And the poet has attached these ideas to the things by means of proportional metaphors: as the stone is to Sisyphus, so is

[1] Simonides, fragm. 5, Bergk⁴. [2] Isocrates, *Philippus*, 10.
[3] Ib., 127.
[4] Euripides, *Iph. Aul.*, 80. The received text of Euripides has not ποσίν but δορί, 'spear in hand'.
[5] *Odyssey*, xi. 598, J. E. Sandys; 'Bounded the pitiless boulder with thunder of doom to the plain', A. S. Way.
[6] *Iliad*, xiii. 587 ἀπὸ δ' ἔπτατο πικρὸς ὀϊστός; cp. 592.
[7] *Iliad*, iv. 126. Here too an arrow is spoken of.
[8] *Iliad*, xi. 574. Spears are falling short of their mark.
[9] *Iliad*, xv. 542.

the shameless man to his victim. In his famous similes, too, he treats inanimate things in the same way:

> Curving and crested with white, host following host without ceasing.[1]

Here he represents everything as moving and living; and activity is movement.

Metaphors must be drawn, as has been said already,[2] from things that are related to the original thing, and yet not obviously so related—just as in philosophy also an acute mind will perceive resemblances even in things far apart. Thus Archytas said that an arbitrator and an altar were the same, since the injured fly to both for refuge.[3] Or you might say that an anchor and an overhead hook were the same, since both are in a way the same, only the one secures things from below and the other from above. And to speak of states as 'levelled'[4] is to identify two widely different things, the equality of a physical surface and the equality of political powers.

Liveliness is specially conveyed by metaphor, and by the further power of surprising the hearer; because the hearer expected something different, his acquisition of the new idea impresses him all the more. His mind seems to say, 'Yes, to be sure; I never thought of that'. The liveliness of epigrammatic remarks is due to the meaning not being just what the words say: as in the saying of Stesichorus that 'the cicalas will chirp to themselves on the ground'.[5] Well-constructed riddles are attractive for the same reason; a new idea is conveyed, and there is metaphorical expression. So with the 'novelties' of Theodorus.[6] In these the thought is startling, and, as Theodorus puts it, does not fit in with the ideas you already have. They are like the burlesque words that one finds in the comic writers. The effect is produced even by jokes depending upon changes of the letters of a word;[7] this too is a surprise. You find this in verse as well

[1] *Iliad*, xiii. 799. Ocean waves rolling to the shore.
[2] iii, c. 10, 1410b 32.
[3] Diels, Vors.[3], i, p. 326.
[4] Cp. Isocrates, *Philippus*, 40.
[5] Cp. ii, c. 21, *supra*.
[6] Cp. Spengel, *Artium Scriptores*, p. 103.
[7] Plays upon words are meant, here and eight lines lower down.

as in prose. The word which comes is not what the hearer imagined: thus

> Onward he came, and his feet were shod with his— chilblains,[1]

where one imagined the word would be 'sandals'. But the point should be clear the moment the words are uttered. Jokes made by altering the letters of a word consist in meaning, not just what you say, but something that gives a twist to the word used; e.g. the remark of Theodorus about Nicon the harpist Θρᾷττ' εἶ σύ[2] ('you Thracian slavey'), where he pretends to mean θράττεις σύ[3] ('you harp-player'), and surprises us when we find he means something else. So you enjoy the point when you see it, 1412[b] though the remark will fall flat unless you are aware that Nicon is a Thracian. Or again: βούλει αὐτὸν πέρσαι.[4] In both these cases the saying must fit the facts.[5] This is also true of such lively remarks as the one to the effect that to the Athenians their empire (ἀρχή) of the sea was not the beginning (ἀρχή) of their troubles, since they gained by it. Or the opposite one of Isocrates, that their empire (ἀρχή) *was* the beginning (ἀρχή) of their troubles.[6] Either way, the speaker says something unexpected, the soundness of which is thereupon recognized. There would be nothing clever in saying 'empire is empire'. Isocrates means more

[1] *Auct. Inc.* Probably from some burlesque hexameter poem.

[2] The MSS. have θράττει σε in both cases. The readings given conjecturally above are suggested by Mr. Greenwood, following Professor Lane Cooper's article in the *American Journal of Philology*, January 1920. For a possible colloquial use of θράττω as 'play the harp' (or rather 'strum', with a pun here on 'strumpet'), cp. the φλαττόθραττ passage of the *Frogs*, 1296. There may be a further pun here on the sense 'you are confounded (θράττει σύ)', 'confound you' (θράττω=ταράττω).

[3] See preceding note.

[4] 'You wish [or, do you wish] to *perse*cute him': a pun on Πέρσαι and πέρσαι (aor. infin. of πέρθω). The same play-on-words is found, I think, in Aeschylus' *Persians*, e.g. line 178 Ἰαόνων γῆν οἴχεται πέρσαι θέλων ('fain to ravage-in-the-Persian-way', viz. σαγηνεῦσαι), which should be compared with Ἑλέναν . . . . ἑλένας, ἕλανδρος, ἑλέπτολις in *Agamemnon* 687. Others have detected here a play on βουλὴ αὐτὸν πέρσαι, 'may counsel (or, the Council) destroy him'; or a play, again, on βουλῇ (dative). But Θρᾷκα suggests that Πέρσαι is the real point.

[5] Or, 'there must be a proper enunciation', i. e. a significant stress must be laid on the ambiguous word—θράττει in the one case and πέρσαι in the other. But cp. 1412[b] 11 and 13.

[6] Cp. Isocrates, *Philippus* 61; *Paneg.* 119; *De Pace* 101.

than that, and uses the word with a new meaning. So too with the former saying, which denies that ἀρχή in one sense was ἀρχή in another sense. In all these jokes, whether a word is used in a second sense or metaphorically, the joke is good if it fits the facts. For instance, Ἀνάσχετος (proper name) οὐκ ἀνασχετός :[1] where you say that what is so-and-so in one sense is not so-and-so in another; well, if the man is unpleasant, the joke fits the facts. Again, take—

> Thou must not be a stranger stranger than
> Thou should'st.[2]

Do not[3] the words 'thou must not be', &c., amount to saying that the stranger must not always be strange? Here again is the use of one word in different senses. Of the same kind also is the much-praised verse of Anaxandrides:

> Death is most fit before you do
> Deeds that would make death fit for you.[4]

This amounts to saying 'it is a fit thing to die when you are not fit to die', or 'it is a fit thing to die when death is not fit for you', i. e. when death is not the fit return for what you are doing. The type of language employed is the same in all these examples; but the more briefly and antithetically such sayings can be expressed, the more taking they are, for antithesis impresses the new idea more firmly and brevity more quickly. They should always have either some personal application or some merit of expression,[5] if they are to be true without being commonplace—two requirements not always satisfied simultaneously. Thus 'a man should die having done no wrong' is true but dull: 'the right man should marry the right woman'[6] is also true but dull. No, there must be both good qualities together, as in 'it is fitting to die when you are not fit for death'. The more a saying has these qualities, the livelier it appears: if, for instance, its wording is meta-

[1] 'Baring is past bearing.'
[2] Kock, *Com. Fragm.*, iii. 209. The above rendering retains the second ξένος.
[3] Retaining ἢ and regarding the sentence as a question.
[4] Anaxandrides: Kock, *Com. Att. Fragm.*, ii, p. 161.
[5] ὀρθῶς λέγεσθαι, implying the use of the *mot juste*.
[6] Kock, *Com. Att. Fragm.*, iii, p. 447; fragm. adesp. 206.

phorical, metaphorical in the right way, antithetical, and balanced, and at the same time it gives an idea of activity.

Successful similes also, as has been said above,[1] are in a sense metaphors, since they always involve two relations like the proportional metaphor. Thus: a shield, we say, is the 'drinking-bowl of Ares',[2] and a bow is the 'chordless lyre'.[3] This way of putting a metaphor is not 'simple', as it would be if we called the bow a lyre or the shield a drinking-bowl. There are 'simple' similes also: we may say that a flute-player is like a monkey, or that a short-sighted man's eyes are like a lamp-flame with water dropping on it, since both eyes and flame keep winking.[4] A simile succeeds best when it is a converted metaphor, for it is possible to say that a shield *is like* the drinking-bowl of Ares, or that a ruin *is like* a house in rags, and to say that Niceratus *is like* a Philoctetes stung by Pratys—the simile made by Thrasymachus when he saw Niceratus, who had been beaten by Pratys in a recitation competition, still going about unkempt and unwashed. It is in these respects that poets fail worst when they fail, and succeed best when they succeed, i. e. when they give the resemblance pat, as in

Those legs of his curl just like parsley leaves;[5]

and

Just like Philammon struggling with his punch-ball.[6]

These are all similes; and that similes are metaphors has been stated often already.[7]

Proverbs, again, are metaphors from one species to another.[8] Suppose, for instance, a man to start some undertaking in hope of gain and then to lose by it later on, 'Here we have

[1] iii, cc. 4 and 10.
[2] Timotheus, fragm. 16, Bergk[4]. Cp. iii, c. 4 fin.
[3] *φόρμιγξ ἄχορδος*: attributed to Theognis in Demetrius, *de Eloc.*, § 85. Probably Theognis tragicus; cp. Demetrius, *On Style*, p. 228. But see Bergk[4], fragm. adesp. 127, vol. iii, p. 728.
[4] Or, 'that a short-sighted man is like a sputtering lamp, since both wink', if *ψακαζομένῳ* can be taken as middle.
[5] Kock, *Com. Att. Fragm.*, iii, fr. adesp. 207, p. 448.
[6] Ib., iii, fr. 208, p. 448. [7] iii, cc. 4, 10, 11. [8] Cp. *Poetics*, c. 21.

once more the man of Carpathus and his hare',[1] says he. For both alike went through the said experience.

It has now been explained fairly completely how liveliness is secured and why it has the effect it has. Successful hyperboles are also metaphors, e. g. the one about the man with a black eye, 'you would have thought he was a basket of mulberries'; here the 'black eye' is compared to a mulberry because of its colour, the exaggeration lying in the quantity of mulberries suggested. The phrase '*like* so-and-so' may introduce a hyperbole under the form of a simile. Thus

Just like Philammon struggling with his punch-ball

is equivalent to '*you would have thought he was* Philammon struggling with his punch-ball'; and

Those legs of his curl *just like* parsley leaves

is equivalent to 'his legs are so curly that *you would have thought* they were not legs but parsley leaves'. Hyperboles are for young men to use; they show vehemence of character; and this is why angry people use them more than other people.

Not though he gave me as much as the dust or the sands of the sea . . .[2]
But her, the daughter of Atreus' son, I never will marry,
Nay, not though she were fairer than Aphrodite the Golden,
Defter of hand than Athene . . .[3]

1413b (The Attic orators are particularly fond of this method of speech.[4]) Consequently it does not suit an elderly speaker.

12 It should be observed that each kind of rhetoric has its own appropriate style. The style of written prose is not that of spoken oratory,[5] nor are those of political and forensic speaking the same. Both written and spoken have to be known. To know the latter is to know how to

[1] Hares, introduced with good intention into the island, increased to a plague.
[2] *Iliad*, ix. 385. [3] *Iliad*, ix. 388–90. [4] i. e. hyperbole.
[5] ἀγωνιστική: more strictly, the oratory of debate—of the actual 'struggles' of the law-courts and the assembly; the 'combative', 'controversial' style.

speak good Greek. To know the former means that you are not obliged, as otherwise you are, to hold your tongue when you wish to communicate something to the general public.

The written style is the more finished: the spoken better admits of dramatic delivery—alike the kind of oratory that reflects character and the kind that reflects emotion. Hence actors look out for plays written in the latter style, and poets for actors competent to act in such plays. Yet poets whose plays are meant to be read *are* read and circulated:[1] Chaeremon, for instance, who is as finished as a professional speech-writer; and Licymnius among the dithyrambic poets. Compared with those of others, the speeches of professional writers sound thin in actual contests. Those of the orators, on the other hand, are good to hear spoken, but look amateurish enough when they pass into the hands of a reader. This is just because they are so well suited for an actual tussle, and therefore contain many dramatic touches, which, being robbed of all dramatic rendering, fail to do their own proper work, and consequently look silly. Thus strings of unconnected words, and constant repetitions of words and phrases, are very properly condemned in written speeches: but not in spoken speeches—speakers use them freely, for they have a dramatic effect. In this repetition there must be variety of tone, paving the way, as it were, to dramatic effect; e.g. 'This is the villain among you who deceived you, who cheated you, who meant to betray you completely'. This is the sort of thing that Philemon the actor used to do in the *Old Men's Madness* of Anaxandrides, whenever he spoke the words 'Rhadamanthus and Palamedes',[2] and also in the prologue to the *Saints* whenever he pronounced the pronoun 'I'.[3] If one does not deliver such things cleverly, it becomes a case of 'the man who swallowed a poker'.[4] So too with strings of unconnected words, e.g. 'I came to him; I met him;

[1] *βαστάζονται*: are carried about as 'pocket-companions'.
[2] Kock, *Com. Att. Fragm.*, ii, p. 139; Anaxandrides, *Γεροντομανία*, fr. 10.
[3] Ib., ii, p. 140; Anaxandrides, *Εὐσεβεῖς*.
[4] Lit., 'the man who carries the beam'.

I besought him'. Such passages must be *acted*, not delivered with the same quality and pitch of voice, as though they had only one idea in them. They have the further peculiarity of suggesting that a number of separate statements have been made in the time usually occupied by one. Just as the use of conjunctions makes many statements into a single one, so the omission of conjunctions acts in the reverse way and makes a single one into many. It thus makes everything more important: e.g. 'I came to him; I talked to him; I entreated him'—what a lot of facts! the hearer thinks—'he paid no attention to anything I said'.[1] This is the effect which Homer seeks when he writes,

> Nireus likewise from Syme ⟨three well-fashioned ships did bring⟩,
> Nireus, the son of Aglaia ⟨and Charopus, bright-faced king⟩,
> Nireus, the comeliest man ⟨of all that to Ilium's strand⟩.[2]

If many things are said about a man, his name must be mentioned many times; and therefore people think that, if his name is mentioned many times, many things have been said about him. So that Homer, by means of this illusion, has made a great deal of Nireus, though he has mentioned him only in this one passage, and has preserved his memory, though he nowhere says a word about him afterwards.

Now the style of oratory addressed to public assemblies is really just like scene-painting. The bigger the throng, the more distant is the point of view: so that, in the one and the other, high finish in detail is superfluous and seems better away. The forensic style is more highly finished; still more so is the style of language addressed to a single judge, with whom there is very little room for rhetorical artifices, since he can take the whole thing in better, and judge of what is to the point and what is not; the struggle is less intense and so the judgement is undisturbed. This

[1] Ac has πολλὰ δοκεῖ ὑπεριδεῖν ὅσα εἶπεν, 'the hearer seems to survey quite a number of things that the speaker has said'. But this is not the usual meaning of ὑπερορᾶν.

[2] *Iliad*, ii. 671–3. Cp. Demetrius, *On Style*, pp. 100–3, 222, 223.

is why the same speakers do not distinguish themselves in all these branches at once; high finish is wanted least where dramatic delivery is wanted most, and here the speaker must have a good voice, and above all, a strong one. It is ceremonial oratory that is most literary, for it is meant to be read; and next to it forensic oratory.

To analyse style still further, and add that it must be agreeable or magnificent, is useless; for why should it have these traits any more than 'restraint', 'liberality', or any other moral excellence? Obviously agreeableness will be produced by the qualities already mentioned, if our definition of excellence of style has been correct.[1] For what other reason should style be 'clear', and 'not mean' but 'appropriate'? If it is prolix, it is not clear; nor yet if it is curt. Plainly the middle way suits best. Again, style will be made agreeable by the elements mentioned, namely by a good blending of ordinary and unusual words, by the rhythm, and by the persuasiveness that springs from appropriateness.

This concludes our discussion of style, both in its general[2] aspects and in its special[3] applications to the various branches of rhetoric. We have now to deal with Arrangement.

13 A speech has two parts. You must state your case, and you must prove it. You cannot either state your case and omit to prove it, or prove it without having first stated it; since any proof must be a proof of something, and the only use of a preliminary statement is the proof that follows it. Of these two parts the first part is[4] called the Statement of the case, the second part the Argument, just as we distinguish[5] between Enunciation and Demonstration. The current division is absurd. For 'narration' surely is part of a forensic speech only: how in a political speech or a speech of display can there be 'narration' in the technical sense? or a reply to a forensic opponent? or an epilogue[6] in closely-reasoned speeches? Again, introduction, comparison

[1] Cp. iii, c. 2 init. [2] iii, cc. 2–11.
[3] iii, c. 12. [4] sc. in rhetoric. [5] sc. in dialectic.
[6] Or 'peroration', except that the *ἐπίλογος*, or conclusion of a speech, is usually a longer affair than what we now understand by 'peroration'.

of conflicting arguments, and recapitulation are only found in political speeches when there is a struggle between two policies. They *may* occur then; so may even accusation and defence, often enough; but they form no essential part of a political speech. Even forensic speeches do not always need epilogues; not, for instance, a short speech, nor one in which the facts are easy to remember, the effect of an epilogue being always a reduction in the apparent length.[1] It follows, then, that the only necessary parts of a speech are the Statement and the Argument. These are the essential features of a speech; and it cannot in any case have more than Introduction, Statement, Argument, and Epilogue. 'Refutation of the Opponent' is part of the arguments: so is 'Comparison' of the opponent's case with your own, for that process is a magnifying of your own case and therefore a part of the arguments, since one who does this *proves* something. The Introduction does nothing like this; nor does the Epilogue—it merely reminds us of what has been said already. If we make such distinctions we shall end, like Theodorus and his followers, by distinguishing 'narration' proper from 'post-narration' and 'pre-narration', and 'refutation' from 'final refutation'.[2] But we ought only to bring in a new name if it indicates a real species with distinct specific qualities; otherwise the practice is pointless and silly, like the way Licymnius[3] invented names in his *Art of Rhetoric*—'Secundation',[4] 'Divagation', 'Ramification'.

The Introduction is the beginning of a speech, corresponding to the prologue in poetry and the prelude in flute-music; they are all beginnings, paving the way, as it were, for what is to follow. The musical prelude resembles the introduction to speeches of display; as flute-players play 14

[1] A good effect where a speech may seem too long; bad, where it may seem too short already.

[2] Cp. Spengel, *Artium Scriptores*, p. 99, and Plato, *Phaedrus*, 266, 267.

[3] Cp. Spengel, *op. cit.*, p. 88.

[4] Or, 'Acceleration'. But the reference in ἐπούρωσις seems to be to subsidiary arguments which speed on the speech *like a favouring breeze*. 'Secundation' or 'Proflation' may serve to suggest the metaphor.

first some brilliant passage they know well and then fit it on to the opening notes of the piece itself, so in speeches of display the writer should proceed in the same way; he should begin with what best takes his fancy, and then strike up his theme and lead into it; which is indeed what *is* always done. (Take as an example the introduction to the *Helen*[1] of Isocrates—there is nothing in common between the 'eristics'[2] and Helen.) And here, even if you travel far from your subject, it is fitting, rather than that there should be sameness in the entire speech.

The usual subject for the introductions to speeches of display is some piece of praise or censure. Thus Gorgias writes in his *Olympic Speech*, 'You deserve widespread admiration, men of Greece', praising thus those who started the festival gatherings.[3] Isocrates, on the other hand, censures them for awarding distinctions to fine athletes but giving no prize for intellectual ability.[4] Or one may begin with a piece of advice, thus: 'We ought to honour good men and so I myself am praising Aristeides' or 'We ought to honour those who are unpopular but not bad men, men whose good qualities have never been noticed, like Alexander son of Priam.' Here the orator gives *advice*. Or we may begin as speakers do in the law-courts; that is to say, with appeals to the audience to excuse us if our speech is about something paradoxical, difficult, or hackneyed; like Choerilus in the lines—

But now when allotment of all has been made . . .[5]

Introductions to speeches of display, then, may be composed of some piece of praise or censure, of advice to do or not to do something, or of appeals to the audience; and you must choose between making these preliminary passages connected or disconnected with the speech itself.

[1] Isocrates, *Helena*, 1–13.
[2] i. e. the disputatious dialecticians to whom Isocrates refers in the introduction to his *Helena*, 3, 4: Protagoras, Gorgias, &c.
[3] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 129 (Gorgias).
[4] Isocrates, *Paneg.* 1,2.
[5] From the epic poem (*Perseis*) on the Persian war by Choerilus of Samos. The context is given in Kinkel's *Epicorum Graecorum Fragmenta*, pp. 266, 267. The apology is for a theme as hackneyed as the Persian war had become.

Introductions to forensic speeches, it must be observed, have the same value as the prologues of dramas and the introductions to epic poems; the dithyrambic prelude resembling the introduction to a speech of display, as

For thee, and thy gifts, and thy battle-spoils . . .[1]

In prologues,[2] and in epic poetry, a foretaste of the theme is given, intended to inform the hearers of it in advance instead of keeping their minds in suspense. Anything vague puzzles them: so give them a grasp of the beginning, and they can hold fast to it and follow the argument. So we find—

Sing, O goddess of song, of the Wrath . . .[3]

Tell me, O Muse, of the hero . . .[4]

Lead me to tell a new tale, how there came great warfare to Europe
Out of the Asian land . . .[5]

The tragic poets, too, let us know the pivot of their play; if not at the outset like Euripides, at least somewhere in the preface to a speech[6] like Sophocles—

Polybus was my father . . .;[7]

and so in Comedy. This, then, is the most essential function and distinctive property of the introduction, to show what the aim of the speech is; and therefore no introduction ought to be employed where the subject is not long or intricate.

The other kinds of introduction employed are remedial in purpose, and may be used in any type of speech. They are concerned with the speaker, the hearer, the subject, or the speaker's opponent. Those concerned with the speaker

[1] Bergk⁴, iii, p. 728, fragm. adesp. 124.
[2] sc. dramatic prologues (cp. 1414ᵇ 20 and 1415ª 9). Reading (with the Old Latin Translation, cp. the Scholiast, Rabe, p. 230) ἐν δὲ προλόγοις, in place of ἐν δὲ τοῖς λόγοις.
[3] *Iliad*, i. 1. [4] *Odyssey*, i. 1.
[5] Choerilus?; cp. Kinkel, *op. cit.*, p. 267.
[6] Some such rendering seems necessary if the manuscript reading is retained, the πρόλογος being regarded for the nonce as the beginning not of a play but of a dramatic speech. But Spengel's conjecture ὥσπερ Εὐριπίδης ἐν τῷ προλόγῳ, ἀλλά γέ που ὥσπερ Σοφοκλῆς is attractive.
[7] Sophocles, *Oedipus Tyrannus*, 774.

himself or with his opponent are directed to removing or exciting prejudice. But whereas the defendant will begin by dealing with this sort of thing, the prosecutor will take quite another line and deal with such matters in the closing part of his speech. The reason for this is not far to seek. The defendant, when he is going to bring himself on the stage, must clear away any obstacles, and therefore must begin by removing any prejudice felt against him. But if you are to *excite* prejudice, you must do so at the close, so that the judges may more easily remember what you have said.

The appeal to the hearer aims at securing his goodwill, or at arousing his resentment, or sometimes at gaining his serious attention to the case, or even at distracting it—for gaining it is not always an advantage, and speakers will often for that reason try to make him laugh.

You may use any means you choose to make your hearer receptive; among others, giving him a good impression of your character, which always helps to secure his attention He will be ready to attend to anything that touches himself, 1415[b] and to anything that is important, surprising, or agreeable; and you should accordingly convey to him the impression that what you have to say is of this nature. If you wish to distract his attention, you should imply that the subject does not affect him, or is trivial or disagreeable. But observe, all this has nothing to do with the speech itself. It merely has to do with the weak-minded tendency of the hearer to listen to what is beside the point. Where this tendency is absent, no introduction is wanted beyond a summary statement of your subject, to put a sort of head on the main body of your speech. Moreover, calls for attention, when required, may come equally well in any part of a speech; in fact, the beginning of it is just where there is least slackness of interest; it is therefore ridiculous to put this kind of thing at the beginning, when every one is listening with most attention. Choose therefore any point in the speech where such an appeal is needed, and then say 'Now I beg you to note this point—it concerns you quite as much as myself'; or

I will tell you that whose like you have never yet[1]

heard for terror, or for wonder. This is what Prodicus called 'slipping in a bit of the fifty-drachma show-lecture for the audience whenever they began to nod'. It is plain that such introductions are addressed not to ideal hearers, but to hearers as we find them. The use of introductions to excite prejudice or to dispel misgivings is universal—

My lord, I will not say that eagerly . . .[2]

or

Why all this preface?[3]

Introductions are popular with those whose case is weak, or looks weak; it pays them to dwell on anything rather than the actual facts of it. That is why slaves, instead of answering the questions put to them, make indirect replies with long preambles. The means of exciting in your hearers goodwill and various other feelings of the same kind have already been described.[4] The poet finely says

May I find in Phaeacian hearts, at my coming, goodwill and compassion;[5]

and these are the two things we should aim at. In speeches of display we must make the hearer feel that the eulogy includes either himself or his family or his way of life or something or other of the kind. For it is true, as Socrates says in the *Funeral Speech*,[6] that 'the difficulty is not to praise the Athenians at Athens but at Sparta'.

The introductions of political oratory will be made out of the same materials as those of the forensic kind, though the nature of political oratory makes them very rare. The subject is known already, and therefore the *facts* of the case need no introduction; but you may have to say something on account of yourself or your opponents; or those present may be inclined to treat the matter either more or less seriously than you wish them to. You may accordingly have to excite or dispel some prejudice, or to make the

[1] *Auct. Inc.* [2] Sophocles, *Antigone*, 223.
[3] Cp. Euripides, *Iph. Taur.*, 1162.
[4] ii, cc. i ff. [5] *Odyssey*, vi. 327.
[6] Cp. Plato, *Menexenus*, 235 D.

matter under discussion seem more or less important than before:[1] for either of which purposes you will want an introduction. You may also want one to add elegance to your remarks, feeling that otherwise they will have a casual air, like Gorgias' eulogy of the Eleans, in which, without 1416a any preliminary sparring or fencing, he begins straight off with 'Happy city of Elis!'[2]

15 In dealing with prejudice, one class of argument is that whereby you can dispel objectionable suppositions about yourself. It makes no practical difference whether such a supposition has been put into words or not, so that this distinction may be ignored. Another way[3] is to meet any of the issues directly: to deny the alleged fact; or to say that you have done no harm, or none to *him*, or not as much as he says; or that you have done him no injustice, or not much; or that you have done nothing disgraceful, or nothing disgraceful enough to matter: these are the sort of questions on which the dispute hinges. Thus Iphicrates, replying to Nausicrates, admitted that he had done the deed alleged, and that he had done Nausicrates harm, but not that he had done him wrong.[4] Or you may admit the wrong, but balance it with other facts, and say that, if the deed harmed him, at any rate it was honourable; or that, if it gave him pain, at least it did him good; or something else like that. Another way is to allege that your action was due to mistake, or bad luck, or necessity—as Sophocles said he was not trembling, as his traducer maintained, in order to make people think him an old man, but because he could not help it; he would rather *not* be eighty years old.[5] You may balance your motive against your actual deed; saying, for instance, that you did not mean to injure him but to do so-and-so; that you did not do what you are falsely charged with doing—the damage was accidental—'I

[1] to amplify (magnify) or depreciate.
[2] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 130 (Gorgias).
[3] Reading τρόπος, with A^c, here and in 1416a 14. [In 1416b 1 A^c has τόπος, which should be retained.] For the connexion, or confusion, between τόπος and τρόπος see Bonitz's Index, pp. 767, 772.
[4] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 219 (Iphicrates).
[5] sc. but he *was*.

should indeed be a detestable person if I had deliberately intended this result.' Another way is open when your calumniator, or any of his connexions, is or has been subject to the same grounds for suspicion. Yet another, when others are subject to the same grounds for suspicion but are admitted to be in fact innocent of the charge: e.g. 'Must 'I be a profligate because I am well-groomed?[1] Then so-and-so must be one too.' Another, if other people have been calumniated by the same man or some one else, or, without being calumniated, have been suspected, like yourself now, and yet have been proved innocent. Another way is to return calumny for calumny and say, 'It is monstrous to trust the man's statements when you cannot trust the man himself.' Another is when the question has been already decided. So with Euripides' reply to Hygiaenon, who, in the action for an exchange of properties, accused him of impiety in having written a line encouraging perjury—

My tongue hath sworn: no oath is on my soul.[2]

Euripides said that his opponent himself was guilty in bringing into the law-courts cases whose decision belonged to the Dionysiac contests. 'If I have not already answered for my words there, I am ready to do so if you choose to prosecute me there.'[3] Another method is to denounce calumny, showing what an enormity it is, and in particular that it raises false issues,[4] and that it means a lack of confidence in the merits of his case. The argument from evidential circumstances is available for both parties: thus 1416[b] in the *Teucer*[5] Odysseus says that Teucer is closely bound to Priam, since his mother Hesione was Priam's sister. Teucer replies that Telamon his father was Priam's enemy, and that he himself did not betray the spies to Priam. Another method, suitable for the calumniator, is to praise some trifling merit at great length,[6] and then attack some important failing concisely; or after mentioning a number

[1] Reading εἰ, ὅτι καθάριος, μοιχός.
[2] Euripides, *Hippolytus*, 612.
[3] Baiter-Sauppe, *Or. Att.*, Pt. ii, p. 216.
[4] Or, 'that it leads from one prosecution (trial) to another'.
[5] Sophocles, *Teucer*, Nauck[2], p. 256.
[6] Reading τὸ ἐπαινοῦντι κτλ.

of good qualities to attack one bad one that really bears on the question. This is the method of thoroughly skilful and unscrupulous prosecutors. By mixing up the man's merits with what is bad, they do their best to make use of them to damage him.

There is another method open to both calumniator and apologist. Since a given action can be done from many motives, the former must try to disparage it by selecting the worse motive of two, the latter to put the better construction on it. Thus one might argue that Diomedes chose Odysseus as his companion[1] because he supposed Odysseus to be the best man for the purpose; and you might reply to this that it was, on the contrary, because he was the only hero so worthless that Diomedes need not fear his rivalry.

16 We may now pass from the subject of calumny to that of Narration.

Narration in ceremonial oratory is not continuous but intermittent. There must, of course, be some survey of the actions that form the subject-matter of the speech. The speech is a composition containing two parts. One of these is not provided by the orator's art, viz. the actions themselves, of which the orator is in no sense author. The other part is provided by his art, namely, the proof (where proof is needed) that the actions were done, the description of their quality or of their extent, or even all these three things together. Now the reason why sometimes it is not desirable to make the whole narrative continuous is that the case thus expounded is hard to keep in mind. Show, therefore, from one set of facts that your hero is, e. g. brave, and from other sets of facts that he is able, just, &c. A speech thus arranged is comparatively simple, instead of being complicated and elaborate. You will have to recall well-known deeds among others; and because they are well-known, the hearer usually needs no narration of them; none, for instance, if your object is the praise of Achilles; we all know the facts of his life—what you have to do is to apply those facts. But if your object is the praise of

[1] Cp. *Iliad*, x. 242–7.

Critias, you *must* narrate his deeds, which not many people know of . . .[1]

Nowadays it is said, absurdly enough, that the narration should be rapid. Remember what the man said to the baker who asked whether he was to make the cake hard or soft: 'What, can't you make it *right*?' Just so here. We are not to make long narrations, just as we are not to make long introductions or long arguments. Here, again, rightness does not consist either in rapidity or in conciseness, but in the happy mean; that is, in saying just so much as will make the facts plain, or will lead the hearer to 1417a believe that the thing has happened, or that the man has caused injury or wrong to some one, or that the facts are really as important as you wish them to be thought: or the opposite facts to establish the opposite arguments.

You may also narrate as you go anything that does credit to yourself, e.g. 'I kept telling him to do his duty and not abandon his children'; or discredit to your adversary, e.g. 'But he answered me that, wherever he might find himself, there he would find other children', the answer Herodotus[2] records of the Egyptian mutineers. Slip in anything else that the judges will enjoy.

The defendant will make less of the narration. He has to maintain that the thing has not happened, or did no harm, or was not unjust, or not so bad as is alleged. He must therefore not waste time about what is admitted fact, unless this bears on his own contention; e.g. that the thing was done, but was not wrong. Further, we must speak of events as past and gone, except where they excite pity or indignation by being represented as present. The Story told to Alcinous[3] is an example of a brief chronicle, when it is repeated to Penelope in sixty lines.[4] Another instance is the Epic Cycle as treated by Phayllus, and the prologue to the *Oeneus*.[5]

The narration should depict character; to which end you

[1] There may be a *lacuna* here in the Greek text.
[2] Cp. Herodotus, ii. 30. [3] *Odyssey*, ix–xii.
[4] *Odyssey*, xxiii. 264–84 and 310–43.
[5] Euripides, *Oeneus*, fragm. 558, 559, Nauck², pp. 536, 537.

must know what makes it do so. One such thing is the indication of moral purpose; the quality of purpose indicated determines the quality of character depicted and is itself determined by the end pursued. Thus it is that mathematical discourses depict no character; they have nothing to do with moral purpose, for they represent nobody as pursuing any end. On the other hand, the Socratic dialogues[1] do depict character, being concerned with moral questions. This end will also be gained by describing the manifestations of various types of character, e.g. 'he kept walking along as he talked', which shows the man's recklessness and rough manners. Do not let your words seem inspired so much by intelligence, in the manner now current, as by moral purpose: e.g. 'I willed this; aye, it was my moral purpose; true, I gained nothing by it, still it is better thus.' For the other way shows good sense, but this shows good character; good sense making us go after what is useful, and good character after what is noble. Where any detail may appear incredible, then add the cause of it; of this Sophocles provides an example in the *Antigone*, where Antigone says she had cared more for her brother than for husband or children, since if the latter perished they might be replaced,

> But since my father and mother in their graves
> Lie dead, no brother can be born to me.[2]

If you have no such cause to suggest, just say that you are aware that no one will believe your words, but the fact remains that such is your nature, however hard the world may find it to believe that a man deliberately does anything except what pays him.

Again, you must make use of the emotions. Relate the familiar manifestations of them, and those that distinguish yourself and your opponent; for instance, 'he went away scowling at me'. So Aeschines described Cratylus as 'hissing with fury and shaking his fists'. These details carry conviction: the audience take the truth of what they

[1] Cp. Bywater, *Aristotle on the Art of Poetry*, p. 108.
[2] Sophocles, *Antigone*, 911, 912.

know as so much evidence for the truth of what they do not. Plenty of such details may be found in Homer:

Thus did she say: but the old woman buried her face in her hands:[1]

a true touch—people beginning to cry do put their hands over their eyes.

Bring yourself on the stage from the first in the right character, that people may regard you in that light; and the same with your adversary; but do not let them see what you are about. How easily such impressions may be conveyed we can see from the way in which we get some inkling of things we know nothing of by the mere look of the messenger bringing news of them. Have some narrative in many different parts of your speech; and sometimes let there be none at the beginning of it.

In political oratory there is very little opening for narration; nobody can 'narrate' what has not yet happened. If there is narration at all, it will be of past events, the recollection of which is to help the hearers to make better plans for the future. Or it may be employed to attack some one's character, or to eulogize him—only then you will not be doing what the political speaker, as such, has to do.

If any statement you make is hard to believe, you must guarantee its truth, and at once offer an explanation, and then furnish it with such particulars as will be expected.[2] Thus Carcinus' Jocasta, in his *Oedipus*,[3] keeps guaranteeing the truth of her answers to the inquiries of the man who is seeking her son; and so with Haemon in Sophocles.[4]

17 The duty of the Arguments is to attempt demonstrative proofs. These proofs must bear directly upon the question in dispute, which must fall under one of four heads. (1) If you maintain that the act *was not committed*, your main task in court is to prove this. (2) If you maintain that the act *did no harm*, prove this. If you maintain that (3) the act

[1] *Odyssey*, xix. 361.

[2] Or possibly, 'and then arrange your reasons systematically for those who demand them'. But cp. the Scholia (Rabe, p. 248).

[3] Carcinus, *Oedipus*, N.[2], p. 798.

[4] Cp. Sophocles, *Antigone*, 635–8, 701–4.

was *less* than is alleged, or (4) *justified*, prove these facts, just as you would prove the act not to have been committed if you were maintaining that.

It should be noted that only where the question in dispute falls under the first of these heads can it be true that one of the two parties is necessarily a rogue. Here ignorance cannot be pleaded, as it might if the dispute were whether the act was justified or not. This argument must therefore be used[1] in this case only, not in the others.

In ceremonial speeches you will develop your case mainly by arguing that what has been done is, e.g., noble and useful. The facts themselves are to be taken on trust; proof of them is only submitted on those rare occasions when they are not easily credible or when they have been set down to some one else.

In political speeches you may maintain that a proposal is impracticable; or that, though practicable, it is unjust, or will do no good, or is not so important as its proposer thinks. Note any falsehoods about irrelevant matters—they will look like proof that his other statements also are false. Argument by 'example' is highly suitable for political oratory, argument by 'enthymeme' better suits forensic. Political oratory deals with future events, of which it can do no more than quote past events as examples. Forensic oratory deals with what is or is not *now* true, which can better be demonstrated, because not contingent—there is no contingency in what has now already happened. Do not use a continuous succession of enthymemes: intersperse them with other matter, or they will spoil one another's effect. There are limits to their number—

Friend, you have spoken *as much* as a sensible man would have spoken.[2]—

'as *much*' says Homer, not 'as *well*'. Nor should you try to make enthymemes on every point; if you do, you

[1] Reading χρηστέον with A^c. Other MSS. give χρονιστέον, 'must be dwelt upon', 'time must be given to'.

[2] *Odyssey*, iv. 204.

will be acting just like some students of philosophy, whose conclusions are more familiar and believable than the premisses from which they draw them. And avoid the enthymeme form when you are trying to rouse feeling; for it will either kill the feeling or will itself fall flat: all simultaneous motions tend to cancel each other either completely or partially. Nor should you go after the enthymeme form in a passage where you are depicting character —the process of demonstration can express neither moral character nor moral purpose. Maxims should be employed in the Arguments—and in the Narration too—since these do express character: 'I have given him this, though I am quite aware that one should "Trust no man".' Or if you are appealing to the emotions: 'I do not regret it, though I have been wronged; if he has the profit on his side, I have justice on mine.'

Political oratory is a more difficult task than forensic; and naturally so, since it deals with the future, whereas the pleader deals with the past, which, as Epimenides of Crete said, even the diviners already know. (Epimenides did not practise divination about the future; only about the obscurities of the past.) Besides, in forensic oratory you have a basis in the law; and once you have a starting-point, you can prove anything with comparative ease. Then again, political oratory affords few chances for those leisurely digressions in which you may attack your adversary, talk about yourself, or work on your hearers' emotions; fewer chances, indeed, than any other affords, unless your set purpose is to divert your hearers' attention.[1] Accordingly, if you find yourself in difficulties, follow the lead of the Athenian speakers, and that of Isocrates, who makes regular attacks upon people in the course of a political speech, e.g. upon the Lacedaemonians in the *Panegyricus*,[2] and upon Chares in the speech about the allies.[3] In ceremonial oratory, intersperse your speech with bits of episodic eulogy, like Isocrates, who is always bringing some

[1] ἐξιστῇ; cp. 1408ᵇ36. ἐξίστηται would mean 'without quitting your proper ground'; cp. ἐκτοπίσῃ, 1414ᵇ 29.
[2] Isocrates, *Paneg.*, 110–14. [3] Cp. Isocrates, *De Pace*, 27.

one forward for this purpose.[1] And this is what Gorgias meant by saying that he always found something to talk about.[2] For if he speaks of[3] Achilles, he praises Peleus, then Aeacus, then Zeus; and in like manner the virtue of valour, describing its good results, and saying what it is like.[4]

Now if you have proofs to bring forward, bring them forward, and your moral discourse as well; if you have no enthymemes, then fall back upon moral discourse: after all, it is more fitting for a good man to display himself as an honest fellow than as a subtle reasoner. Refutative enthymemes are more popular than demonstrative ones: their logical cogency is more striking: the facts about two opposites always stand out clearly when the two are put side by side.

The 'Reply to the Opponent' is not a separate division of the speech; it is part of the Arguments to break down the opponent's case, whether by objection or by counter-syllogism.[5] Both in political speaking and when pleading in court, if you are the first speaker you should put your own arguments forward first, and then meet the arguments on the other side by refuting them and pulling them to pieces beforehand. If, however, the case for the other side contains a great variety of arguments, begin with these, like Callistratus in the Messenian assembly, when he demolished the arguments likely to be used against him before giving his own.[6] If you speak later, you must first, by means of refutation and counter-syllogism, attempt some answer to your opponent's speech, especially if his arguments have been well received. For just as our minds refuse a favourable reception to a *person* against whom they are prejudiced, so they refuse it to a speech when they

[1] Isocrates has episodic passages on Theseus (*Helena* 23–38), on Paris (*Helena* 41–8), on Pythagoras and the Egyptian priests (*Busiris* 21–9), on the poets (*Busiris* 38–40), and on Agamemnon (*Panathenaicus*, 72–84).

[2] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 130 (Gorgias).

[3] Reading λέγει (rather than λέγων).

[4] More briefly: 'and in like manner the value and goodness of that great virtue Courage'.

[5] Omitting the comma after ἐστίν.

[6] Baiter-Sauppe, *op. cit.*, p. 218 (Callistratus).

have been favourably impressed by the speech on the other side. You should, therefore, make room in the minds of the audience for your coming speech; and this will be done by getting your opponent's speech out of the way. So attack that first—either the whole of it, or the most important, successful, or vulnerable points in it, and thus inspire confidence in what you have to say yourself—

> First, champion will I be of Goddesses . . .
> Never, I ween, would Hera . . .:[1]

where the speaker has attacked the silliest argument first. So much for the Arguments.

With regard to the element of moral character: there are assertions which, if made about yourself, may excite dislike, appear tedious, or expose you to the risk of contradiction; and other things which you cannot say about your opponent without seeming abusive or ill-bred. Put such remarks, therefore, into the mouth of some third person. This is what Isocrates does in the *Philippus*[2] and in the *Antidosis*,[3] and Archilochus in his satires. The latter represents the father himself as attacking his daughter in the lampoon

> Think nought impossible at all,
> Nor swear that it shall not befall . . .[4]

and puts into the mouth of Charon the carpenter the lampoon which begins

> Not for the wealth of Gyges. . . .[5]

So too Sophocles makes Haemon appeal to his father on behalf of Antigone as if it were others who were speaking.[6]

Again, sometimes you should restate your enthymemes in the form of maxims; e.g. 'Wise men will come to terms in the hour of success; for they will gain most if

[1] Euripides, *Troades*, 969 and 971.
[2] Isocrates, *Philippus*, 4–7.
[3] Ib., *Antidosis*, 132–9, 141–9.
[4] Archilochus, fragm. 74, Bergk[4], ii, p. 403. The father is Lycambes; the daughter, Neobule.
[5] Ib., fragm. 25, Bergk[4], ii, p. 390.
[6] Sophocles, *Antigone*, 688–700.

they do'.[1] Expressed as an enthymeme, this would run, '*If* we ought to come to terms when doing so will enable us to gain the greatest advantage, *then* we ought to come to terms in the hour of success.'

18 Next as to Interrogation. The best moment to employ this is when your opponent has so answered one question 1419a that the putting of just one more lands him in absurdity. Thus Pericles questioned Lampon about the way of celebrating the rites of the Saviour Goddess.[2] Lampon declared that no uninitiated person could be told of them. Pericles then asked, 'Do you know them yourself?' 'Yes', answered Lampon. 'Why,' said Pericles, 'how can that be, when you are uninitiated?'

Another good moment is when one premiss of an argument is obviously true, and you can see that your opponent must say 'yes' if you ask him whether the other is true. Having first got this answer about the other, do not go on to ask him about the obviously true one, but just state the conclusion yourself. Thus, when Meletus denied that Socrates believed in the existence of gods but admitted[3] that he talked about a supernatural power, Socrates proceeded to ask whether 'supernatural beings were not either children of the gods or in some way divine?' 'Yes', said Meletus. 'Then', replied Socrates, 'is there any one who believes in the existence of children of the gods and yet not in the existence of the gods themselves?'[4] Another good occasion is when you expect to show that your opponent is contradicting either his own words or what every one believes. A fourth is when it is impossible for him to meet your question except by an evasive answer. If he answers 'True, and yet not true', or 'Partly true and partly not true', or 'True in one sense but not in another', the audience thinks he is in difficulties, and applauds his discomfiture. In other cases do not attempt interrogation; for if your opponent gets in an objection, you are felt to have been worsted.

[1] Cp. Isocrates, *Archidamus*, 50. [2] sc. Demeter.
[3] Reading with Madvig εἰρηκότος δὲ ὡς δαιμόνιον, instead of εἴρηκεν ὡς ἂν δαιμόνιον with Roemer and Ac.
[4] Cp. Plato, *Apology*, 27 C.

You cannot ask a series of questions owing to the incapacity of the audience to follow them; and for this reason you should also make your enthymemes as compact as possible.

In replying, you must meet ambiguous questions by drawing reasonable distinctions, not by a curt answer. In meeting questions that seem to involve you in a contradiction, offer the explanation at the outset of your answer, before your opponent asks the next question or draws his conclusion. For it is not difficult to see the drift of his argument in advance. This point, however, as well as the various means of refutation, may be regarded as known to us from the *Topics*.[1]

When your opponent in drawing his conclusion puts it in the form of a question, you must justify your answer. Thus when Sophocles was asked by Peisander whether he had, like the other members of the Board of Safety, voted for setting up the Four Hundred, he said 'Yes.' 'Why, did you not think it wicked?'—'Yes.'—'So *you* committed this wickedness?'—'Yes', said Sophocles, 'for there was nothing better to do.' Again, the Lacedaemonian, when he was being examined on his conduct as ephor, was asked whether he thought that the other ephors had been justly put to death. 'Yes', he said. 'Well then', asked his opponent, 'did not *you* propose the same measures as they?' —'Yes.'—'Well then, would not *you* too be justly put to death?'—'Not at all', said he; '*they* were bribed to do it, and I did it from conviction'. Hence you should not ask any further questions after drawing the conclusion, nor put the conclusion itself in the form of a further question, unless there is a large balance of truth on your side.

As to jests. These are supposed to be of some service in controversy. Gorgias said that you should kill your opponents' earnestness with jesting and their jesting with earnestness; in which he was right.[2] Jests have been classified in the *Poetics*.[3] Some are becoming to a gentleman, others are not; see that you choose such as become *you*. Irony

[1] *Topics*, viii. [2] Baiter-Sauppe, *op cit.*, p. 131 (Gorgias).
[3] Not in the existing *Poetics*. Cp. 1372[a] 1.

better befits a gentleman than buffoonery; the ironical man jokes to amuse himself, the buffoon to amuse other people.

19 The Epilogue has four parts. You must (1) make the audience well-disposed towards yourself and ill-disposed towards your opponent, (2) magnify or minimize [1] the leading facts, (3) excite the required state of emotion in your hearers, and (4) refresh their memories.

(1) Having shown your own truthfulness and the untruthfulness of your opponent, the natural thing is to commend yourself, censure him, and hammer in your points.[2] You must aim at one of two objects—you must make yourself out a good man and him a bad one either in yourselves or in relation to your hearers. How this is to be managed—by what lines of argument you are to represent people as good or bad—this has been already explained.[3]

(2) The facts having been proved, the natural thing to do next is to magnify or minimize their importance. The facts must be admitted before you can discuss how important they are; just as the body cannot grow except from something already present. The proper lines of argument to be used for this purpose of amplification and depreciation have already been set forth.[4]

(3) Next, when the facts and their importance are clearly understood, you must excite your hearers' emotions. These emotions are pity, indignation, anger, hatred, envy, emulation, pugnacity. The lines of argument to be used for these purposes also have been previously mentioned.[5]

(4) Finally you have to review what you have already said. Here you may properly do what some wrongly recommend doing in the introduction—repeat your points frequently so as to make them easily understood. What you *should* do in your introduction is to state your subject, in order that the point to be judged may be quite plain; in the epilogue you should summarize the arguments by which your case has been proved. The first step in this reviewing

[1] amplify or depreciate (extenuate).
[2] Or, 'mould your audience to your will.'
[3] i, c. 9.
[4] ii, c. 19.
[5] ii, cc. 1–11.

process is to observe that you have done what you undertook to do. You must, then, state what you have said and why you have said it. Your method may be a comparison of your own case with that of your opponent; and you may
35 compare either the ways you have both handled the same point or make your comparison less direct: 'My opponent said so-and-so on this point; I said so-and-so, and this is why
1420a I said it'. Or with modest irony, e.g. 'He certainly said so-and-so, but I said so-and-so'. Or 'How vain he would have been if he had proved all this instead of *that!*' Or put it in the form of a question, 'What has *not* been proved by me?' or 'What *has* my opponent proved?' You may proceed, then, either in this way by setting point against point, or by following the natural order of the arguments as
1420b spoken, first giving your own, and then separately, if you wish, those of your opponent.

For the conclusion, the disconnected style of language is appropriate, and will mark the difference between the oration and the peroration.[1] 'I have done. You have heard me. The facts are before you. I ask for your judgement.'[2]

[1] λόγος, ἐπίλογος: *speech* and *after-speech*, *the words of your speech* and *the words that end it.* ἐπίλογος is vaguely a *conclusion*, and its length may vary; cp. its use at the beginning of this chapter, and also the note on 1414b 1 above.

[2] Cp. Lysias, *Eratosthenes*, fin.

INDEX

54ª—99ᵇ = 1354ª—1399ᵇ. 0ª—20ᵇ = 1400ª—1420ᵇ.

accusation and defence, 58ᵇ 11 ff.; 68ᵇ 1 ff.
Achilles, 59ª 2; 63ª 19; 78ᵇ 31; 80ᵇ 29; 96ª 26; 96ᵇ 12, 15, 16; 1ᵇ 18; 6ᵇ 21, 24; 16ᵇ 27; 18ª 36.
acting and actors, 3ᵇ 31 ff.; 4ª 23; 4ᵇ 22; 5ª 23; 13ᵇ 11, 25, 28.
actions, voluntary and involuntary, 68ᵇ 6 ff.
actuality (vividness of style), 10ᵇ 36; 11ᵇ 24 ff.; 12ᵇ 32.
Aegina and Aeginetans, 96ª 20; 11ª 15.
Aenesidemus, 73ª 22.
Aeschines (Socraticus), 17ᵇ 1.
Aeschylus quoted, 88ª 7.
Aesion quoted, 11ª 25.
Aesop and Aesop's Fables, 93ª 31; 93ᵇ 10, 23.
Agathon quoted, 92ᵇ 7; 2ª 9.
ages of man: (1) youth, 89ª 3 ff.; (2) prime of life, 90ª 29 ff.; (3) old age, 89ᵇ 14 ff. Happy old age, 60ᵇ 21; 61ᵇ 27 ff.
Agesipolis (v. l.), 98ᵇ 32.
agonistic style: see under 'combative'.
agreement (covenant), 6cª 15; 73ᵇ 8.
agriculture, 81ª 24.
Ajax of Theodectes, 99ᵇ 28; 0ª 28.
Alcaeus, 67ª 9.
Alcibiades, 90ᵇ 29.
Alcidamas, mentioned and quoted, 73ᵇ 18; [97ª 11]; 98ᵇ 10 ff.; 6ª 1 ff., 18 ff.; 6ᵇ 11 ff.
Alcinous, 17ª 14.
Alcmaeon, 97ᵇ 3.
Alexander (Paris), 63ª 19; 97ᵇ 21; 98ª 22; 99ª 3; 1ᵇ 21, 36; 15ª 1.
Alexander (the Great): his (or Philip's) supremacy implied in 99ᵇ 13.
Alphesiboea, 97ᵇ 6.
Amasis, 86ª 20.
ambiguous language, 7ª 32 ff.
ambition (love of honour), 63ᵇ 2; 71ᵇ 29; 79ª 35 (ambitious philosophers); 79ᵇ 24 (the ambitious man's rivals); 87ᵇ 9, 31–33; 88ª 1, 8, 15.
Amphiaraus, 89ª 16.
amplification and depreciation (maximizing and minimizing, heightening and lowering, extolling and belittling, augmentation and lessening), 68ª 10, 27; 76ª 34; 3ª 16; 8ª 4; 13ᵇ 34; 14ª 5; 17ᵇ 32; 19ᵇ 12, &c.
analogical (reciprocal, proportional) metaphor, 7ª 14; 11ª 1 ff., &c. See 'metaphor'.
Anaschetos, 12ᵇ 12.
Anaxagoras, 98ᵇ 16.
Anaxandrides quoted, 11ª 19; 12ᵇ 17; 13ᵇ 26.
Androcles, 0ª 10.
Androtion, 6ᵇ 27.
anger, 54ª 17; 78ª 31 ff.
antecedent and consequent, 92ª 19 ff.
Antigone of Sophocles, 73ᵇ 9; 75ª 34; 15ᵇ 20; 17ª 30; 18ᵇ 33.
Antimachus quoted, 8ª 2.
Antiphon (the poet), 79ᵇ 15; 85ª 9; 99ᵇ 25.
Antisthenes quoted, 7ª 9.
antithesis, 9ᵇ 33 – 10ᵇ 5; 10ᵇ 28–31; 12ᵇ 32.
Aphrodite, 0ᵇ 23.
Apollo, 98ᵇ 34 ('the god at Delphi').
apophthegms, 89ª 16; 94ᵇ 34; 12ª 21.
appropriateness (propriety, *decorum*) of style, 4ᵇ 4 ff.; 8ª 10 ff.
arbitration)(litigation, 74ᵇ 20.
Archelaus, 98ª 24.
Archibius, 76ª 11.
Archidamus, 6ᵇ 30.
Archilochus, 98ᵇ 12; 18ᵇ 27 ff.
Archytas, 12ª 12.
Areopagus, Court of, 54ª 23; 98ᵇ 27.
Ares, drinking-bowl of, 7ª 17; 13ª 1, 6.
Argos, penalty at, 75ª 5.
argument, the universal classes of, 91ᵇ 29 ff.
argument, lines of. The many

arguments, or inferences, suggested in bk. ii, c. 23 are drawn from the following special topics (or lines of argument, commonplaces): opposites, 97a 7; modification (πτῶσις, a wider term than 'case' or 'inflexion') of the key-word, 97a 20; correlative ideas, 97a 23; *a fortiori*, 97b 12; considerations of time, 97b 27; turning our opponent's words against himself, 98a 3; definition of terms, 98a 15; ambiguous terms, 98a 28; logical division, 98a 30; induction, 98a 33; previous decision or universal consent, 98b 20; taking separately the parts of a subject, 99a 7; the consequence, 99a 11; inconsistency, 99a 29; rational correspondence, 99a 33; results to antecedents (identity of effect to identity of cause), 99b 5; inconsistency (again), 99b 14; from possible motive to actual motive, 99b 19; inducements and deterrents, 99b 32; things which are supposed to happen and yet seem incredible, 0a 6; inconsistency (again), 0a 15; possible reasons for prejudice, 0a 23; cause to effect, 0a 30; neglect of a better course, 0a 37; inconsistency (again), 0b 4; mistakes, 0b 9; meanings which may be attached to proper names, 0b 17.—Universal lines of argument, 58a 10 ff.; 91b 29 ff.

Aristeides the Just, 98a 9; 14b 37.

Aristippus, his gentle rebuke to Plato when seeming to speak too dogmatically, 98b 30.

aristocracy, 65b 30 ff.

Aristogeiton: see 'Harmodius'.

Aristophanes in the 'Babylonians', 5b 30.

Aristophon, 98a 5.

Aristotle: his references to his own works, (1) *Analytics*, 56b 9; 57a 30; 57b 23; 3a 3; 3a 13; (2) *Methodics*, 56b 19; (3) *Poetics*, 72a 2; 4a 39; 4b 7, 28 (ἐν τοῖς περὶ ποιήσεως), 5a 6; (4) *Politics*, 66a 22; (5) *Topics*, 56b 12; 58a 28; 96b 4; 98a 28; 99a 7; 2a 35; 3a 32; 19a 24.—Matter for comparison (1) between the *Rhetoric* and the *Ethics* will be found chiefly in bks. i, cc. 5–10, and ii, cc. 1–7; (2) between the *Rhetoric* and the *Politics* in bk. i, cc. 4, 5, 8; (3) between the *Rhetoric* and the *Poetics* in bk. iii, cc. 1–11.

arrangement (τάξις) of a speech in certain divisions, 14a 30 ff.

art should not be measured by practical success, 55b 10 ff.; should be concealed, 4b 36; 17b 8.—The Greek word 'art' is specially used of a rhetorical handbook: e. g. 2a 17 ἡ Κόρακος τέχνη. So τοὺς νῦν τεχνολογοῦντας = 'present-day writers on rhetoric', 56a 17 (the term τεχνογράφος is found in the *Rhet. ad Al.*, but not in the *Rhet.*). Rhetorical terms can, therefore, with special appropriateness, be regarded as 'technical terms' or 'terms of art'; and the manifold 'arts' courses of our universities also have linguistic roots in academic Athens.

Artaxerxes the Third, 93b 2 ('the present king').

artificial speech to be deprecated, 4b 19; and artificial rhythm likewise, 8b 22.

assault and battery, 72a 22; 2a 18.

asyndeta (words not bound together by connective particles), 8a 1; 13b 19, 33; 20a 7.

Athenian speakers, 18a 30 (cp. 13b 1); praising Athenians before an Athenian audience, 67b 9; 15b 32.

Athens and Epidaurus, 11a 12.

Athens and Salamis, 75b 30.

'Attic neighbour', 95a 21.

Attic speakers, 13b 1 (cp. 18a 30).

audience, three kinds of, 58b 1 ff.

authority of well-known men, 2b 9.

Autocles quoted, 98b 26.

baker's question and its answer, 16b 31.

ball, games at, 71a 2.

benefits, 61a 28 ff.; 66a 38; 67a 5.

Bias, 89b 24.

birth, good, 60b 30 ff.; 90b 16 ff.

body: its excellence is health, 61b 3.

Boeotians, 7a 3, 5.

boorishness, 17a 23.

brutality, 75a 7.
Bryson, 5b 9.
buffoonery (scurrility), 19b 8.

Callias, 5a 19. In 56b 31 and 82a 5, Callias = 'anybody', *quilibet*: so Cleon 78a 35; 7a 27; 8b 26 (unless in this last passage the demagogue is meant); Dionysius 1b 13; Hippias 56b 34; Socrates 56b 31, 34; 82a 6.
Calliope, 5a 33.
Callippus, 99a 16; 0a 5. The author of an 'Art of Rhetoric'; not, it would seem, to be identified with the Callippus mentioned in 73a 19.
Callisthenes, 80b 12, 13.
Callistratus, 64a 19; 74b 26; 18b 10.
calmness (mildness, patience, placability), 66b 2; 80a 5 ff.
calumny: see 'prejudice'.
Calydon, 9b 12.
Carcinus, 0b 10; 17b 18.
'Carpathian and hare', 13a 17.
Carthaginians, 72b 28
case, grammatical [or inflexion, word-modification], 64b 33; 97a 20; 10a 28.
categories, 85b 5.
'Caunian love', 2b 3.
causes: seven causes of human action, 69a 6.
censure (blame): ὄνειδος)(ἐγκώμιον, 68a 36; ὄνειδος)(ἔπαινος, 74a 22; ψόγος)(ἔπαινος, 67a 34; 68a 33.
Cephisodotus, 7a 9; 11a 6, 23, 28.
ceremonial oratory: see 'epideictic'.
Chabrias, 64a 21; 11b 6.
Chaeremon, 0b 25 (quoted); 13b 13.
change, pleasure which attends it, 71a 26.
character (of speaker, speech, and hearer) in its bearing on rhetorical persuasion, bk. ii, cc. 1–18; 56a 1 ff.; 88b 30 ff.; 95b 14 ff.; 8a 11, 25; 17a 16; 18a 38; 18b 23.
Chares, 76a 10; 11a 7; 11b 2; 18a 32.
Charidemus, 99b 3.
Charon the contented carpenter (in Archilochus), 18b 31.
Chians, 98b 12.
children: possession of good children, 60b 20, 38 ff.
Chilon, 89b 4; 98b 14.
Choerilus quoted, 15a 4.
Cimon, 90b 31.
circle, periphrasis for, 7b 27.
classes: different classes have different ways of expressing themselves, 8a 26 ff.
clearness essential to good style, 4b 2.
Cleon: see 'Callias'.
Cleophon, 75b 31; 8a 15.
cleverness (natural ability), 62b 24; 63a 35; 90b 28; 10b 8.
climax (building up, accumulation), 65a 16.
colours: 'Of the Colours or common opinions concerning Good and Evil' (Hobbes), 62a 15 ff.; 63b 5 ff.; 'Of the Colours of Honourable and Dishonourable', 66a 23 ff.; 'Of the Colours concerning Pleasure', 69b 33 ff.
combative (debating) style, 13b 4 ff.
Comedy: diminutives used with comic effect, 5b 30 ff.; comic poets as evil-speakers and tell-tales, 84b 10.
commerce and commercial treaties, 60a 12 ff.
common-places: see 'argument, lines of'.—Universal and special common-places, 58a 10 ff.; 91b 29 ff.
comparison of cases and arguments, 19b 35 ff.
composition: a written composition should be easy to read and deliver, 7b 11.
compound words, 4b 29; 5b 35; 6a 6.
conciseness of style, 7b 28, 38; 16b 35; 19a 21.
conclusion: see 'peroration'.
confidence, 83a 14 ff.
conjunctions (connecting words), 7a 21; 7b 12, 39; 13b 33.
Conon, 99a 5; 0b 19.
constitutions: see 'government'.
contempt, 78b 14.
contracts, 76a 33 ff.
contrary: objection from a contrary statement, 2b 4; argument from contraries, 92a 9.
Corax, 2a 17.
Corinthians, 63a 15.
cottabus, 73a 23.
counsel: political counsel aims at utility, 62a 17 ff.

courage, 66a 1 ff.
cowardice, 66b 13; 68b 18.
Cratylus, 17b 1.
craving, 69a 1 ff. (ὄρεξις λογιστική, ἄλογος).
Creon, 75a 34.
Critias, 75b 34; 16b 29.
Croesus, 7a 39.
cupping-glass, 5b 3.
Cycnus, 96b 17.
Cydias, 84b 32.

Darius, 93b 1.
'death is an evil; the gods have so judged it, or they would die' (saying of Sappho), 98b 28.
decision: objections from previous decisions, 2b 9 ff.
defence, national, 59b 22; 60a 6 ff.
degeneracy of clever and steady stocks, 90b 27 ff.
degree, topic of, 63b 5 ff.; 74b 24 ff.; 97b 12 ff.
deliberative (political, parliamentary) oratory, 58a 36 ff. (i, cc. 3–8 incl.); introductory matter rare in, 15b 33 ff.; narration also rare in, 17b 12 ff.; more difficult than forensic, 18a 22; character of arguments in, 17b 34 ff.; its style should resemble scene-painting, 14a 8 ff.
delivery, 3b 20 ff.; 13b 9 ff.
Delphi, 98b 32.
Demades, 1b 33.
democracy, 60a 25–30; 65b 29–32.
Democrates quoted, 7a 7.
Democritus of Chios, quoted, 9b 26.
demonstration, 3a 15; 14a 37.
Demosthenes, 97b 7; Demades on the policy of Demosthenes (*post hoc propter hoc*), 1b 34; comparison of the Athenian people to sea-sick passengers, 7a 6.
depreciation: see 'amplification'.
description by negatives, Antimachus' means of making style impressive: 8a 3.
desire, 70a 17 ff.
dialectic, 54a 1; 55a 9; 55b 16, 20; 56a 36; 59b 11, 12; 2a 5.
dicast (juryman, judge), 54a 18, 24, 30; 54b 7.
dice, 71a 3.
dictator, 93b 22.
diction: see 'style' and 'language'.
diminutives, 5b 28 ff.
Diogenes the Cynic, 11a 24.
Diomedes, 96b 15; 99b 28.
Diomedon, 97a 25.
Dion, 73a 20.
Dionysius (the despot), 57b 31, 34; 85a 10; 90b 29.—Dionysius 'the Brazen', 5a 32.—Dionysius (= 'anybody'), 1b 13.
Dionysus, 5a 23; 7a 16; 16a 32 (Dionysia).
Diopeithes, 86a 14.
dispositions, style that corresponds to different, 8a 29.
distinction of style: see 'foreign'.
dithyrambic poets, 6b 1; 13b 14. Anonymous dithyrambic poet quoted, 15a 11.
divagation, 14b 18.
diviners, their calculated vagueness, 7b 1.
divisions of the speech, 14a 31 ff.
Dodonis, 98b 4.
dog praised in poetry and proverb, 1a 15 ff.: cp. 11a 24.
Dorieus, 57a 19.
Draco 'the lawgiver', 3b 21.
dramatic turns of fortune, 71b 10.
draughts, 71a 3.

ecclesiast, 54b 7.
education, 65b 34.—Respect paid to educated men, 84a 34.
Egypt and Egyptians, 93a 33; 17a 7.
Elea (men of), 0b 6.
element, 58a 35; 62a 20; 96b 21; 1a 29 (letter); 3a 17.
Elis (men of), 16a 2, 3.
emotion: see 'passion'.
Empedocles, 73b 14; 7a 35.
emulation, 88a 31 ff.
encomium, 67b 28.
end, 58b 20 ff.; 62a 18; 63a 5; 63b 16.
enigmatic sayings, 94b 35.
enmity, 82a 1 ff.
enthymeme a rhetorical demonstration, 55a 6; a sort of syllogism, 55a 6–13; 0b 38; a rhetorical syllogism, 56b 5; 94a 31 ff.; 95b 20 ff.; two kinds of enthymemes, 96b 23 ff.; apparent enthymemes, 0b 35 ff. Cp. also 54a 15, 54b 22, 57a 14–17, 94a 26.
envy, 54a 25; 87b 21 ff.
ephor, a Lacedaemonian's defence of his conduct as, 19a 31.

epic cycle, its treatment by Phayllus, 17a 15.
epic poems, opening lines of, 15a 15 ff.
epic poets find uncommon words very handy, 6b 3.
Epicharmus, 65a 16 (climax); 10b 4 (false antithesis quoted).
Epidaurus, 11a 12.
epideictic (ceremonial, occasional, declamatory) oratory: 58b 2, 8 ff.; 59a 15 ff.; materials for, 66a 23 ff.; amplification in, 68a 23; 14a 18 ff., 38; 14b 22; 15b 28 ff.; 16b 17; 17b 31 ff.; 18a 33.
epilogue: see 'peroration'.
Epimenides, 18a 24.
episodes, 18a 33.
epithet (any word or phrase qualifying a proper noun; not simply a single adjective), 5a 10; 5b 20; 6a 10 ff.; 7b 31; 8b 11.
equity, 72b 18; 73a 18; 74a 27 ff.; 74b 1 ff.; 75a 31. Cp. Vinogradoff's *History of Jurisprudence*, ii, pp. 63 ff., and *Eth. Nic.*, 1137a 31 ff.
Ergophilus, 80b 11.
'eristic' and the 'eristics', 71a 7; 2a 4, 14; 14b 28.
'ethical' means of persuasion: see 'character'.
Euboea, 11a 10.
Eubulus, 76a 9.
Euctemon, 74b 36.
eugenics, 90b 16 ff.
euphemisms, 67a 32 ff.
Euripides and the Syracusans, 84b 16; lawsuit with Hygiaenon, 16a 29; use of everyday language, 4b 26; prologues, 15a 20.—Quoted: 70b 3 (*Andromeda*); 71a 28 (*Orestes*, 234); 71b 32 (*Antiope*); 94a 29 ff. (*Medea*, 295 ff.); 94b 1 (*Sthenelus*); 94b 3 (*Hecuba*, 864); 94b 15 (*Troades*, 1051); 95b 29 (*Hippolytus*, 989); 97a 17 (*Thyestes*); 0b 23 (*Troades*, 990); 5a 28 (*Telephus*); 5b 23 (*Orestes*, 1587); 7b 34 (*Iph. Taur.*, 727); 9b 10 (*Meleager*: but Aristotle attributes the line to Sophocles); 11b 30 (*Iph. Aul.*, 80); 15b 21 (*Iph. Taur.*, 1162); 16a 31 (*Hippolytus*, 612); 17a 15 (*Oeneus*); 18b 21 (*Troades*, 969).
Euthydemus, 1a 27.
Euthynus, 92b 12.
Euxenus, 6b 30.
Evagoras, 99a 4, 6.
Evenus quoted, 70a 10.
'example', 56b 5, 12; 68a 29; 93a 24 ff.
exceptional men: the stocks of genius continue their yield for a while and then decline, 90b 26 ff.
exhortation, 58b 8 ff.
expediency: see 'interest'.
eye as the seat of shame, 84a 36; the two eyes of Greece, Athens and Sparta, 11a 6; setting things before the eyes of hearers and readers, 11b 23 ff.

fables, 93a 30; 93b 9 ff.
fact past and future, topic of, 92b 15 ff.
fallacious arguments, some causes of: (1) language, 1a 1, 10; (2) confusion of parts and whole, 1a 24; (3) passionate exaggeration, 1b 3; (4) a 'sign', or single instance, 1b 9; (5) an accident, 1b 15; (6) the consequence, 1b 20; (7) *post hoc ergo propter hoc*, 1b 30; (8) omission of time and circumstance, 1b 35; (9) confusion of the absolute with the particular, 2a 4.
farmers, small: 73a 8; 81a 24.
favour: see 'kindness'.
fear, 82a 21 ff.
feeling: see 'passion'.
fever, 57b 15; 70b 17.
fickleness of youth, 89a 6.
figure (form, fashion) of wording or sentence, 1a 7; 8b 21.
food-supply, 60a 12 (cp. 59b 22).
foreign (distinguished) air of style, 4b 36; 5a 8; 6a 15.
forensic (legal, judicial) oratory: bk. i, c. 3 and cc. 10–15. Also: 54b 29; 55a 20; 14a 11, 38; 14b 5; 15a 2, 8.
foretaste of a theme in poetry, 15a 12.
fortune, good, 61b 39 ff.; 69a 32; 89a 1; 91a 30 ff.
foul language, 5b 9 ff.
fox and the hedgehog, fable of the, 93b 23 ff.
free-running style, 9a 24 ff.

friendship, 61b 36 (friend defined); 80b 35 ff. (ii, c. 4); 81b 34 (forms of friendship).—Friendlessness, 86a 10; possession of few friends, many friends, good friends, 60b 20; 61b 35; 86a 10; 88b 5.
frigidities of style (viz. things in bad taste that fall flat and are 'a frost'), 5b 34 ff.
funeral speech, anonymous, 11a 31.

Gelon, 73a 23.
genders, 7b 7.
generalization, spurious, 95a 8.
geometry, 55b 29; 4a 12.
Glaucon of Teos, 3b 26.
good, its general principles and its varieties, 62a 21 ff.—relative goodness, 63b 5 ff.
Gorgias: 4a 26 (his poetical prose-style); 5b 37 (compound words); 6b 9 (extravagant metaphors); 6b 15 (irony); 8b 20 (irony); 14b 31 (Olympic Speech); 16a 1 (encomium on the men of Elis); 18a 35 (his unfailing fund of talk); 19b 4 (earnestness to meet jest, jest to meet earnestness).
government, forms of, 60a 21 ff.; 65b 29 ff.
gratitude: see 'kindness'.
greatness)(smallness, 59a 23; 93a 9 ff.
Greece, her mourning for those who fell at Salamis, 11a 31 ff. See also 'eye'.
greed, low, 83b 26.
Greek: to use clear and correct Greek, 7a 20 ff.

Haemon: 'the Haemon of Sophocles', 17b 20.
Halys, 7a 39.
happiness, 60b 8, 14 ff.; 62b 10.
Harmodius and Aristogeiton, 68a 18; 97b 28; 1a 11.
hatred, 82a 1 ff.
health, 60b 21; 61b 3 ff.; 62b 14.
hearer, 54b 32; 58a 37 ff.; 4a 8, 11; 8b 6; 15a 26, 34; 15b 6, 16–18, 29.
Hector, 80b 28; 96b 17; 97b 23.
Hecuba, 0b 22.
hedgehog and the fox, fable of the, 93b 23 ff.
Hegesippus (vv. ll. Hegesipolis, Agesipolis), 98b 32.
Helen, 99a 2; 1b 36.
Heracleidae, 96a 14.
Heracleitus, 7b 14.
Hercules, the pillars of, 88a 10.
heredity, 90b 25 ff.
Hermes, 1a 20, 21.
Herodicus, 61b 5; 0b 19.
Herodotus quoted, 7a 39; 9a 28; 17a 7.
heroic (viz. hexameter) rhythm, 8b 32.
Hesiod quoted, 88a 17.
Hesione, 16b 2.
hexameter poems, writers of, 4a 35.
Hiero, 91a 10.
Himera, 93b 11.
Hipparchus, 1b 12.
Hippias, 56b 34 (for 'anybody').
Hippolochus, 68a 17.
historical examples, 93a 29.
historical researches, 60a 36.
Homer, 63a 19; 75b 30; 98b 13; 11b 32; 16b 12–15. Quoted: 62b 35 (*Il.* i. 255); 63a 6 (*Il.* ii. 160); 63a 8 (*Il.* ii. 298); 65a 12 (*Il.* ix. 592); 65a 30 (*Od.* xxii. 347); 70b 5 (*Od.* xv. 400); 70b 11 (*Il.* xviii. 109); 70b 28 (*Il.* xxiii. 108; *Od.* iv. 183); 71b 16 (*Od.* xvii. 218); 78b 5 (*Il.* xviii. 109); 78b 32 (*Il.* i. 356); 78b 34 (*Il.* ix. 648); 79a 5 (*Il.* ii. 196); 79a 7 (*Il.* i. 82); 80a 24, 25 (cp. *Od.* xiv. 29–31); 80b 23 (*Od.* ix. 504); 80b 29 (*Il.* xxiv. 54); 87a 34 (*Il.* xi. 542); 95a 14 (*Il.* xii. 243); 95a 16 (*Il.* xviii. 309); 6b 24 (cp. *Il.* xx. 164, 442, 445); 10a 31 (*Il.* ix. 526); 11b 33 (*Od.* xi. 598); 11b 35 (*Il.* xiii. 587); 11b 37 (*Il.* iv. 126); 12a 1 (*Il.* xi. 574); 12a 3 (*Il.* xv. 542); 12a 9 (*Il.* xiii. 799); 13a 31 (*Il.* ix. 385); 14a 3 (*Il.* ii. 671); 15a 16 (*Il.* i. 1); 15a 17 (*Od.* i. 1); 15b 27 (*Od.* vi. 327); 17a 14 (cp. *Od.* xxiii. 264–84, 310–43); 17b 5 (*Od.* xix. 361); 18a 8 (*Od.* iv. 204).
homoeoteleuton, 10b 2.
homonyms, 1a 12; 4b 38; 12b 12.
honour, 58b 28 ff.; 60b 22; 61a 28, 34; 66a 35.
horse and the stag, fable of the, 93b 13 ff.
'housewiferie without sordidnesse', 61a 7 (note).
Hygiaenon, 16a 29.

hyperbole, 13ª 19 ff.—Cp. also 63ª 2; 67ᵇ 6.

iambic metre, 4ª 31; iambic rhythm, 8ᵇ 33 ff.
Ida, 1ᵇ 22.
Idrieus, 6ᵇ 27, 29.
Ilium, 96ᵇ 13.
imagination (impression, fancy), 70ª 28, 30; 70ᵇ 33; 71ª 9; 78ᵇ 9; 83ª 17; 4ª 11.
impressiveness of style, 7ᵇ 26 ff.
incommensurability of diagonal of a square with its side, 92ª 18.
incontinence, 66ª 15; 83ᵇ 23; 84ª 20.
independence of life, 60ᵇ 14.
indigenous (aboriginal), 60ᵇ 30.
indignation, feeling of righteous, 86ᵇ 9 ff.—Rhetorical indignation, 95ª 9; 1ᵇ 3; 17ª 13; 19ᵇ 26.
induction, 56ᵇ 1 ff.; 93ª 27; 94ª 13; 98ª 33.
inflexions: see 'case'.
injustice, bk. i, cc. 10–14.
insolence, 78ᵇ 15, 23.
inspired: poetry an inspired thing, 8ᵇ 19.
interest (expediency), 58ᵇ 22 ff.; 62ª 18 ff.; 63ᵇ 7; 75ᵇ 13; 76ᵇ 29; 89ª 35.
interest (on money), 11ª 18.
intermarriage, 75ª 10.
interrogation, 18ᵇ 39 ff.
introduction (proem), 54ᵇ 18; 14ᵇ 2, 12, 19; 15ᵇ 24, 35, 39; 16ᵇ 34.
Iphicrates, 65ª 28; 67ᵇ 17; 97ᵇ 27; 98ª 5, 17; 99ª 34; 5ª 19; 11ª 11; 11ᵇ 1; 16ª 10.
irony, 79ᵇ 31, 32; 82ᵇ 21; 8ᵇ 20; 19ᵇ 8; 20ª 2.
irrelevance, 54ª 15, 22; 54ᵇ 27; 15ᵇ 5, 6.
Ismenias, 98ᵇ 3.
Isocrates, 68ª 20; 92ᵇ 10; 99ª 2, 4; 99ᵇ 10; 14ᵇ 33; 18ª 31, 34. Speeches quoted or mentioned: 68ª 4 (*Evag.* and *Panath.*); 8ᵇ 15 (*Paneg.*); 9ᵇ 34 and 10ª 1–17 (*Paneg.*); 10ᵇ 29 (*Philipp.*); 11ª 30 (*Philipp.*); 11ᵇ 11 ff. (*Paneg.*); 11ᵇ 28 ff. (*Philipp.*); 12ᵇ 6 (*Philipp.*, *Paneg.*, *De Pace*); 14ᵇ 27 (*Hel.*); 14ᵇ 33 (*Paneg.*); 18ª 31 (*Paneg.*); 18ª 32 (*De Pace*); 18ᵇ 26 (*Philipp.* and *Antid.*); 18ᵇ 35 (*Archidamus*).
issues, legal, 54ª 30; 58ᵇ 32; 74ª 2 ff.; 16ª 8 ff.; 17ª 9 ff.; 17ᵇ 25 ff.
Isthmian games, 6ª 21.
Italiots (Italian Greeks), 98ᵇ 15.

Jason of Thessaly, 73ª 26.—Jason (the hero), 0ᵇ 14.
jests, 72ª 1 ff.; 19ᵇ 3 ff.
Jocasta, 17ᵇ 18.
judge: the judge decides some live issue, 58ᵇ 3 ff.; 91ᵇ 8 ff.
juryman: see 'dicast'.
juryman's oath, 75ᵇ 17; 76ª 19; 2ᵇ 34.
justice, 58ᵇ 25; 62ᵇ 12; 66ᵇ 1, 9; and cc. 10–14 (in book i). Genuine)(counterfeit justice, 75ᵇ 6.

key-note, 14ᵇ 24; 15ª 8.
kindness, 81ᵇ 35; 85ª 15 ff.
kingship, 66ª 2.
knuckle-bones, game of, 71ª 2.

Lacedaemon, Lacedaemonians, Laconian, 61ª 10; 67ª 29; 67ᵇ 10; 94ᵇ 34; 98ᵇ 14, 18; 11ª 5; 19ª 31.
Lampon, 19ª 2.
Lampsacenes (men of Lampsacus), 98ᵇ 16.
language, appropriate and expressive, 8ª 16 ff.; everyday language, 4ᵇ 24.
laughter and things ludicrous, 71ᵇ 35; 15ª 36; 19ᵇ 3 ff.
law: special or general, 68ᵇ 7; particular and universal, 73ᵇ 4. How laws are to be used in accusation and defence, 75ª 25 ff. Unwritten law, 68ᵇ 9; 73ᵇ 5; 74ª 19 ff.; 75ª 15 ff.; 75ᵇ 7.
leading men at Thebes take to philosophy, and the State prospers, 98ᵇ 19.
lecture: 'to pop in a bit of the fifty-drachma show-lecture (the extra-special fifty-shilling-lecture, as distinguished from the ordinary shilling-lecture)', 15ᵇ 16
legal oratory: see 'forensic'.

legislation and lawgiver, 54a 29; 54b 2, 5, 15; 59b 23; 60a 19.
Leodamas, 64a 19; 0a 32.
Leptines quoted, 11a 5.
Leucothea, 0b 6.
liberality, 66b 2, 7, 15.
Libyan, 93a 31.
Licymnius, 5b 6; 13b 14; 14b 17.
literary style (*written* prose), 13b 4 ff.—literary people, 98b 15.
litigious people, 73a 35. Cp. 0a 19.
Locri, 95a 1.
ludicrous: see 'laughter'.
Lyceum, 85a 27.
Lycoleon quoted, 11b 6.
Lycophron, 5b 35; 6a 7; 10a 18.
Lycurgus, 98b 18.
lyre, a chordless, 13a 1.
Lysias quoted, 99b 19; 20a 8.

madness: great wits to madness near allied, 90b 29.
magnanimity, 62b 12; 66b 2, 17;)(smallness of spirit, petty-mindedness, 66b 19.
magnificence, 62b 13; 66b 2, 18, 19;)(meanness, 66b 19. Applied (by some writers) to style, 14a 20.
maintenance, public, 61a 36.
Mantias 'the orator', 98b 2.
Marathon, 96a 14.
mat in the Lyceum, 85a 28.
mathematical discourses, destitute of moral character, 17a 19.
maxims, 93a 25; 94a 19 ff.; 95a 6; 95b 13; 3a 35; 18a 17; 18b 34.
Medea of Carcinus, 0b 10.
Melanippides, 9b 26.
Melanopus, 74b 25.
Meleager, 79b 15; 99b 25.
Meletus, 19a 8.
memory, 61a 34 (memorial records), 62b 24.
messenger, an inkling of the news he brings, 17b 9.
Messenian speech, 97a 11; Messenian assembly, 18b 11.
mess-rooms of Attica, 11a 24.
metaphor, 4b 32—5b 20; 6b 5 ff., 20; 7a 12; 7b 31; 10b 13; 12a 10 ff., 18 ff. Metaphor, in its modern sense, is Aristotle's 'analogical' or 'proportional' metaphor: cp 7a 14; 8a 8; 11a 1; 11b 22; 12b 5.
metre, 61a 35; 8b 21—19a 19.
mildness: see 'calmness'.
Miltiades, 11a 11.
mistakes, 72b 18; 74b 7 (errors of judgement); argument from mistakes, 0b 9.
Mixidemides, 98b 26.
Moerocles, 11a 16.
monarchy, 65b 38.
money, love of, 63b 2; 64b 1; 89a 14.
moral purpose, 55b 20, 21; 66a 15; 74a 13; 17a 25.
more and less, the topic of degree, 93a 9 ff.
motives for wrong-doing, 68b 28 ff.; good and bad motives may be suggested for one and the same act, 16b 9 ff.
mule-race, 5b 24.
'Mysian prey', 72b 33.
mysteries, their etymological connexion with 'mouse', 1a 14.
Mytilenaeans, 98b 13.

name used instead of description, 7b 28.
narration, 54b 17; 14a 37; 14b 14; 16b 16. See also 'statement'.
nature, 69a 35; 70a 4; natural)(acquired, 65a 29.
Nausicrates, 16a 10.
necessary)(contingent actions, 57a 23 ff.
negatives: see 'description'.
Nicanor, 97b 7.
Niceratus, 13a 7.
Nicon, 12a 34.
Nireus, 14a 3.
nobility: see 'birth, good'.
noisy (or, sonorous) poets—of the writers of dithyrambs, 6b 2.
nouns and verbs, 4b 26 ff.
number, grammatical inflexions denoting, 7b 9.

oaths, 77a 8 ff.
obeisance, 61a 36.
objections, 2a 35 ff.; 3a 31.
obscurity of style, one cause of, 7b 21 ff.
obvious (enthymemes), 10b 22.
Odysseus, 99b 29; 0a 28; 16b 2, 12.

Odyssey, 6b 12.
Oeneus, 97b 20; 17a 16.
offences: deliberate purpose the test of a criminal offence, 74a 11.
oligarchy, 65b 33.
Olympia, 65a 25; 67b 18; 98b 33.
Olynthiac War, 11a 7.
onlooker (spectator, detached observer, critic) at an epideictic speech, 56b 2, 6; 91b 17.
opinions, common: see 'colours'.
opposites, 97a 7.
oracles, 7a 37.
Orestes of Theodectes, 1a 35.

paean, 9a 2 ff.
pain, 85b 10 ff.
painting, 71b 6.
Palamedes, 13b 27.
Pamphilus, 0a 5.
Pan, 1a 16.
pancratiast, 61b 26.
paradox, viz. contradiction of common opinion, 99a 23.
parallel, illustrative, 93a 30 ff.
Paralus, 11a 14.
parenthesis, 7b 21 ff.
Parians, 98b 11.
Paris: see 'Alexander'.
parisosis, 10a 24; 12b 32.
parliamentary oratory: see 'deliberative'.
paromoeosis, 10a 25.
passion (emotion), 54a 17; 56a 14, 19, 24; 69b 15; 78a 20 ff.; 96b 33; 8a 10 (passionate, emotional, language), 16, 24; 17a 36.—passion (anger), 69b 11; 89a 9, 10, 27; 90a 11.
past, known even to diviners (a *bon mot* of Epimenides): 18a 23.
'pastime', 6a 36.
patience: see 'calmness'.
Patroclus, 59a 4; 97b 22.
'Peace', the 'Common', 99b 13.
Peiraeus, 1a 28; 11a 15.
Peisander, 19a 27.
Peisistratus, 57b 31.
Peitholaus, 10a 17; 11a 13.
Penelope, 17a 14.
pentathlos (all-round athlete), 61b 10, 26.
Pentheus, 0b 26 (quotation).
Peparethus, 98a 33.
Periander, 75b 31.
Pericles, 65a 1; 90b 31; 7a 1 ff.; 11a 2, 15; 19a 2.
period, 9a 35 ff.—With short members, 9b 31; with long members (of the speakers themselves), 9b 30; with a single member, 9b 17; period-mark (a sort of full stop), 9a 20; periodic (compact) style, 9a 26.
perjury: see 'witness, false'.
peroration (epilogue), 19b 10 ff.: cp. notes on 14b 1 and 20b 5.
persuasion: modes of persuasion (or belief, assurance), 54a 13 ff.; 54b 21; 55b 35 ff.; 58a 1; 66a 9 ff.; 75a 22 ff.; 3b 7 ff.; 14a 36 ff.; 17b 21 ff.; 18b 8 ff. Cp. note on 54a 13: 'suasions' or 'persuasives' might perhaps be ventured in English.
Phalaris, 93b 9 ff.
Phayllus, 17a 15.
Philammon, 13a 13, 14.
Philemon, 'the actor', 13b 25.
Philip (of Macedon), 97b 31.
Philocrates quoted, 80b 8.
Philoctetes, 13a 7.
Philomela, 6b 17.
philosophy: the Greek word 'philosophy' is in 94a 5 used in the vague sense (common in Isocrates) of 'culture', 'intellectual training', 'study'. The φιλόσοφος, or 'lover of wisdom', was regarded as a *lifelong student*.
Phocians, 98a 1.
Pindar, quoted 64a 28; 1a 16.
pirates call themselves 'purveyors' or 'providers': 5a 25.
pitch (of voice), 3b 29; 13b 31.
Pittacus, 89a 16; 2b 12.
pity, 54a 17, 25; 85b 12 ff.; 4a 14; 19b 25.
placability: see 'calmness'.
Plato, 67b 8 and 15b 31 (*Menex.*, 235 D); 76a 10 (disputed whether the philosopher or the comic poet); 98a 15 ff. and 19a 8–12 (*Apology*, 27 C–E); 98b 30 (Aristippus' rebuke); 6b 32–8 (*Republic*, v. 469 E, vi. 488 A, x. 601 B); 8b 20 (*Phaedrus*); 17a 21 ('Socratic dialogues'; they may be grouped here).
plays as pocket-companions, 13b 12.

pleasantries (smart, lively, pointed sayings), 10b 7 ff.; 12a 18 ff.
pleasure, 69b 33 ff.—The pleasure experienced in learning something new, 71b 4 ff.; 10b 10 ff.
Plexippus, 79b 15.
poetry, 71b 7; 3b 25; 4a 28; 4b 4; 5a 33; 6a 12, 30; 6b 1, 10.—The 'old poets', 9a 26.—Homer is '*the* poet', 65a 11, 30, &c.; in 71b 31 Euripides is so called.
political oratory: see 'deliberative'.
polities: see 'government'.
Polus, 0b 20.
Polycrates, 1a 34; 1b 16.
Polyeuctus, 11a 21.
Polyneices, 73b 10.
possible and impossible, topic of; 92a 8 ff.
post hoc ergo propter hoc, topic of, 1b 30 ff.
post-narration, 14b 14.
post-refutation, 14b 15.
Potidaea, 96a 20.
power, characteristics of, 91a 20 ff.
praise, 58b 12 ff.; 67b 21, 27; 74a 22.
Pratys, 13a 8.
prejudice (calumny, slander), 54a 16; 82a 2; 15a 27; 16a 4.
prelude, 14b 22, 24.
pre-narration, 14b 15.
Priam, 16b 2.
prizes, 66b 34; 3b 32; 14b 35.
probability, 57a 32; 76a 18; 2b 13 ff.
Prodicus, 15b 16.
prodigality, 67b 2; 90b 1.
proem: see 'introduction'.
professorial dogmatism, alleged against Plato, 98b 30.
prologue, 14b 20; 15a 9.
proof, 57b 4 ff.; 3a 10 ff.; 3a 15. See also 'persuasion'.
proper, applied to terms (whether nouns or verbs) that are current and ordinary, 4b 6.
proportional: see 'metaphor'.
propositions (premisses), 58a 18 ff.; 59a 8 ff.; 91b 25 ff.—A mere proposition (thesis, theory, imaginary case), 91b 14.
propriety: see 'appropriateness'.
prose, 61a 35; 4b 14, 33.
Protagoras, 2a 25; 7b 6.
proverbs, 76a 2 (proverbs as evidence); 95b 20 (as maxims); 13a 15 (as metaphors). Particular proverbs (in prose or verse): 62b 38, 'evils draw men together' ('misery acquaints a man with strange bed-fellows', *Tempest*, Act ii, Sc. 2); 63a 7, 'to break the pitcher at the door' ('labour lost', 'many a slip', &c.): the verse-quotations in the same passage may also be regarded as proverbial; 66a 38, 'benefits of all kinds on all occasions'; 71a 28, 'sweet is variety', '*gratae vices*'; 71b 15–17, 'mate delights mate', 'like to like', 'beast knows beast', 'jackdaw to jackdaw' ('crabbed age', 'birds of a feather', &c.); 72b 33, 'Mysian prey' (i.e. an easy prey, a helpless victim); 73a 3, 'wickedness needs but a pretext'; 76a 5, 'never show an old man kindness'; 76a 7 (and 95a 19), 'Fool who slayeth the father', &c.; 81b 17 (and 88a 17), 'potter against potter' ('two of a trade'); 83b 25, 'to pick a corpse's pocket', 'to rob the dead'; 84a 36, 'shame dwells in the eyes'; 88a 7, 'kin can even be jealous of their kin'; 95a 2 and 12a 23, 'cicalas chirping on the ground'; 95a 14, 'the one best omen is our country's cause': this line, and perhaps the half-line in 95a 16, may be reckoned a proverb as well as a maxim; 95a 16, 'the War-God showeth no favour'; 95a 21, 'an Attic neighbour'; 99a 26, 'to buy the marsh with the salt' ('to take the fat with the lean'); 0a 12–15, 'fish need salt', and 'olive-cakes need oil'; 1a 19–21, 'the dogless house', and 'open-handed Hermes' ('Shares!'); 2b 3, 'Caunian love'; 13a 17, 'the Carpathian and the hare'; 13b 29, 'the man who carries the beam' ('stiff as a poker', 'the man who swallowed a poker').
prudence, 66b 3, 20; 78a 9.
punctuation, 7b 13; 9a 20.

punishment, 69b 12.
puns, 0b 17 ff.; 12a 33 ff.: see 'significant'.
Pythagoras, 98b 16.

'queenly fig-tree', 8a 15.

ramification, 14b 18.
rare words: see 'strange'.
rations (metaphorical use), 11a 10.
read: easy to read (of a written composition), 7b 11.
recapitulation, 14b 2.
recitation, 3b 23; 4a 23; 13a 9.
recrimination, 16a 27.
refutation, 0b 27; 2a 30 ff.; 3a 25 ff.; 14b 15.
reply to an adversary's questions, 19a 20 ff.
retaliation, 73a 10 ff.; 82b 10 ff.
retort, 98a 3 ff.; 19a 2 ff.
revenge, 69b 12.
revenues, 59b 24; 96a 11.
Rhadamanthus, 13b 27.
Rhetoric is an art, 54a 11; its relation to dialectic, 54a 1, 55b 9; 56a 25, 31; 56b 35; to ethical and political studies, 56a 25, 26; to logic and sophistic, 59b 9 ff.; to eristic, 2a 4; enthymemes, the substance of rhetorical persuasion, are neglected by current text-books in favour of non-essentials, 54a 11-16; the enthymeme a rhetorical demonstration and a kind of syllogism, 55a 6-8; political oratory neglected in favour of forensic which lends itself to less worthy methods, 54b 22-9; use and abuse of rhetoric, 55a 21 ff.; no separate name for the unscrupulous rhetorician, 55b 18-21; definition of rhetoric, 55b 25; rhetoric deals with the regular subjects of debate, which admit of alternative possibilities, 56b 35 ff.; its three divisions, 58a 36 ff.; subjects of political rhetoric, 59a 30 ff.; the whole study of rhetoric is concerned with appearances, 4a 1 ff.
rhetoricians (public speakers), 18a 30 ('at Athens'); 13b 1 ('Attic'); 4a 17 ('who excel in delivery'). Ambiguity of the term, 55b 20.
rhythm, 3b 30; 8b 21 ff.
riddles, 94b 35; 5a 37 ff.
ridicule: see 'laughter'.

Salamis, 75b 30; 96a 13; 11a 32.
Samos and the Samians, 84b 32; 93b 23, 32; 7a 1.
Sappho, 67a 8; 98b 13, 28.
sayings, smart: see 'pleasantries'.
scene-painting or, more strictly, a drawing in light and shade, a large *chiaroscuro* sketch, 14a 9.
science (and sciences), 54a 3; 59b 10, 13, 15, 17, &c.
Sciron, 6a 8.
sculpture, 71b 7.
Scythians, 67b 10.
seats, chief, 61a 35.
secundation, 14b 17.
self-control, 61a 7; 62b 12; 66b 1, 13; 90a 14.
self-criticism (show of, useful device in speaking), 8b 3.
self-love, 71b 20, 21; 89b 36. (In Aristotle *φίλαυτος* is not necessarily a term of reproach: cp. *Eth. Nic.* ix. c. 8, and *Pol.* ii, c. 5, 1263b 2-5.—'Selfish' is not an ancient word in English).
senate (at Lacedaemon), 98b 15.
sepulchres, 61a 35.
Sestos, 11a 14.
shame, 83b 12 ff.
shoes, parts of, 92a 30-2.
Sigeans (men of Sigeum), 75b 31.
significant names, 0b 17 (puns to us to-day; to the Greeks, as to John of Gaunt, much more than that).
'signs', 57b 1 ff.; 1b 9.
similar causes likely to have similar results, 60a 5.
similes, 6b 20; 7a 13, 14; 10b 16-18; 12b 33.
Simonides quoted, 63a 15; 65a 25; 67b 19; 91a 8; 5b 23; 11b 26.
slander: see 'prejudice'.
slapdash, casual, random way of speaking, 8a 12; 15b 39.
slighting (contempt), 78b 10 ff.
Socrates, 67b 8; 90b 31; 93b 4; 98a 24; 98b 32; 99a 7; 15b 31; 17a 21 ('the Socratic dialogues' or 'discourses'); 19a 8. [In

56b 31 and 34 'Socrates' means 'anybody'.]
solecism, 7b 18. Cp. 91a 4, where the corresponding adjective is used of vulgar, rude, outlandish, barbarous persons,—Goths.
Solon, 75b 33; 98b 17.
soothsayers: see 'diviners'.
sophist, 55b 20; 4b 38; 19a 14, &c.
Sophocles, 98a 4 (his *Teucer*), 1b 19 (his Ἀχαιῶν σύλλογος); 16a 15 (his reply to an imputation). Quotations, or references to passages, 73b 9 (*Antig.*, 456); 75a 34 (*Antig.*, 456); 0b 17 (*Fragm.*); 15a 21 (*Oed. Tyr.*, 774); 15b 20 (*Antig.*, 223); 16b 1 (*Teucer*); 17a 30 (*Antig.*, 911); 17b 20 (cp. *Antig.*, 635-8, 701-4); 18b 33 (*Antig.*, 688 ff.); 9b 9 (? by Euripides).—The sayings in 74b 36 and 19a 26 are usually attributed to another Sophocles.
sordidness (meanness), 61a 7; 66b 16; 88b 26, 31.
sound)(sense, 5b 7.
speech, characteristic of man, 55b 1 (the human voice is the most imitative—apt at representation—of all our organs, 4a 22).—speech (oration), divisions of a, bk. iii, cc. 13-19.
speech-writers, 8a 34.
Speusippus, 11a 22.
spite, 78b 14; 82a 2.
spring, loss of the spring from the year, 65a 32; 11a 2.
stag and the horse, fable of the, 93b 13 ff.
Stasinus quoted, 76a 7; 95a 19.
statement (of a case), 14a 35 ff.
statues, 61a 36; 68a 18; 10a 33.
stature, an advantage in men and women, 60b 22; 61a 6; 61b 18.
Stesichorus quoted, 93b 9; 94b 35; 12a 22.
Stilbon, 98b 4.
stock-subjects of eulogists of Athens, 96a 12 ff.
stocks (breeds of men): how they flourish and then decay, 90b 25 ff.
Strabax, 99b 2.
strange (rare, unfamiliar, foreign) expressions, 4b 28; 6a 7 ff.; 10b 12. Cp. *Poetics* 1457b 3, 4.
strength, 60b 27; 61b 15 ff.; 83b 2.
style (diction): 4b 1 (good prose style defined); 4a 28 and 4b 4 (prose style and poetical style are distinct). Qualities of style: iii, c. 2 (general: metaphor particularly); iii, c. 5 (correctness); iii, c. 6 (impressiveness); iii, c. 7 (appropriateness: including the expression of emotion and character and a due correspondence to subject-matter); iii, c. 11 (liveliness); 9b 33 ff. (antithesis); 4b 19 (naturalness)(artifice); iii, c. 9 (free run of the sentence)(antithetic compactness). Bad taste ('frigidity') of style: iii, c. 3. Appropriate style for each kind of oratory, whether written (literary, epideictic) or the oratory of debate (political or forensic), iii, c. 12. The reason why oratorical prose at first took a poetical colour, 4a 25.
suggestion, 68a 2 ff.
surprise: the 'surprise-joke' which takes you in, 12a 28.
suspicion: old men are suspicious of evil, 89b 22.
syllogism, 55a 8; 55b 16; 56b 1 ff.; 57a 7 ff.; 71b 9; 96a 5 (argument, reasoning); 2a 5 ff.—Counter-syllogism, 2a 31: cp. 18b 6.
synonyms, 4b 39—5a 2.
Syracusans, 84b 16.

taste, bad: see 'frigidities'.
'technical' and 'non-technical' modes of persuasion, 55b 35 ff.: cp. 'art' above.
Telamon, 16b 3.
Telephus, 5a 28.
Tenedos, 75b 30; 1b 19.
tetrameters, trochaic, 4a 31; 9a 1.
Teucer, 98a 4; 16b 1.
Teumessus, 8a 3.
Theagenes of Megara, 57b 33.
Thebes, 97b 9; 98b 3, 19.
Themistocles, 76a 1.
Theodamas, 6b 30.

Theodectes, 97b 3 (*Alcmaeon*); 98b 6 (*Law*); 99a 8 (*Socrates*); 99b 1 (*Law*); 99b 28 (*Ajax*); 0a 28 (*Ajax*); 1a 35 (*Orestes*). —The *Theodectea* is mentioned in 10b 3.
Theodorus, (1) the rhetorician, 0b 16; 12a 25, 34; 14b 14; (2) the actor, 4b 22.
Theseus, 63a 18; 97b 21; 99a 3.
Thettaliscus, 98b 5.
Thirty (Tyrants), the, 0a 18, 34; 1a 34.
thought (as distinguished from wording and arrangement), 3a 36; 4a 19.
Thracian, 12b 2.
Thrasybulus, 0a 33; 0b 19; 1a 34.
Thrasymachus, 0b 20; 4a 14; 9a 2; 13a 8.
Timotheus, the dithyrambic poet, 7a 17; 13a 1.
topics: see 'argument, lines of'. —For Aristotle's *Topics* see 'Aristotle'.
torture (the 'question'), 76b 31 ff.
tragedies and tragic poets, 3b 22; 6b 16; 15a 19.
travel, books of travel (round the world), 60a 34.
travel-money (metaphorical use), 11a 10.
trespass (encroach) on state-owned land, 74a 5.
trochaic tetrameters, 4a 31; 8b 36; 9a 1.
trochee, 8b 36.
Tyndareus, sons of, 97b 23.
tyranny (autocracy, absolute and usurped power) and tyrants, 57b 31 ff.; 66a 6; 72b 2.

universal classes of argument, 91b 29.
unwritten laws and principles of justice, 68b 9; 73b 5; 74a 19; 75a 15, 17, 35; 75b 7.

variety, 71a 25 ff.; 13b 22 ff.
virtue and vice, described and analysed, 66a 23 ff.
vividness (vivacity) of style: see 'actuality'.—Lifeless things are vivified by metaphor, as in Homer, 11b 32 ff.
voice, 3b 27; 4b 22; 8b 7.
vulgarity of outlook (lack of intelligence and refinement), 95b 2 (cp. 4a 8).

war and peace, 59b 21, 33 ff.
ways and means, 59b 23.
weakness of will, 68b 14; 72b 13; 92b 24.
wealth and the wealthy, 60b 20; 62b 18; 90b 32 ff.; 87a 23 and 91a 16 (the newly rich); 87a 24 (men of ancient wealth); 91a 17 (to be newly-enriched means *no education in riches*); 61a 23 (wealth consists in *using* things rather than in owning them).
well-born, character of the, 90b 16 ff. Cp. also 60b 30 ff.
wines, mixed (doctored), 4b 21.—Cp. 2 Maccabees xv. 38, 39, for another literary application of the wine-and-water metaphor.
wisdom, 66b 3; 71b 28.—Practical wisdom (prudence, good sense, intelligence), 64b 12 ff.; 66b 3, 20; 78a 9, 13, 16.
wit is well-bred insolence, 89b 11.
witnesses, various kinds of, 75b 26 ff.—False witness, 75a 12; 76a 20.
women, their bodily and mental excellences, 61a 5 ff.; their poor condition at Sparta, 61a 9 ff.; their inferiority to men, 67a 17.
wonder, 71a 31—71b 10; 71b 28.—Wonder (the Greek word θαυμάζειν implies both the feeling that a thing is remarkable—as being at once fine and mysterious—and also the curiosity that makes men want to understand and explain it) is regarded by Plato (*Theaet.* 155 D) and Aristotle (*Metaph.* 982b 12 ff.) as the origin of learning and philosophy.—For the inference, and new knowledge, drawn from the surprise which a work of art excites, cp. *Poetics* 1448b 9 ff.
words, beauty of, iii, c. 2; compound words, 5b 35 ff., 6a 35; strange words, 6a 7.
world: the world's imputation of

self-interest as the master-motive, 17a 35.
worse: to put the worse, or the better, construction on anything, 16b 11.—Men are no better than they should be, 82b 4–9.
written speeches or discourses ('literature'), 4a 18; 13b 4.
wrong-doers and their victims, characters of, i, c. 12; wrong-doing, i, cc. 10–14.
Xenophanes, 77a 19, 23; 99b 6; 0b 5.
Xerxes, 93b 2; 6a 7.
youth, 89a 3 ff.
Zeno, 72b 5.
zeugma, 7b 19–21.
Zeus (at Olympia), 98b 34.

DE RHETORICA AD ALEXANDRUM

BY

E. S. FORSTER, M.A.

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF SHEFFIELD
FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF ORIEL COLLEGE

PREFACE

THE text used for this translation is that of L. Spengel as revised by C. Hammer and published under the title of *Ἀναξιμένους Τέχνη Ῥητορική* in *Rhetores Graeci*, vol. i (Leipzig, Teubner, 1894). Though the division of the chapters corresponds with that of Bekker, the numbering begins only after the Introductory Letter, which is Bekker's first chapter.

Since the date of the Teubner Text fragments of a papyrus found at Hibeh were published in 1906 by Messrs. Grenfell and Hunt (*Hibeh Papyrus*, Pt. I, No. 26, pp. 114–38). These fragments cover the following passages in Bekker's text: 1422ª 25–ᵇ 9; ᵇ 15–22; ᵇ 35–1423ª 37; 1424ª 21–ᵇ 17; ᵇ 39–1425ª 15; ª 17–25; 1426ª 31–ᵇ 30; ᵇ 36–1427ª 2. The papyrus is dated by Messrs. Grenfell and Hunt in the first half of the third century B. C. and is thus seventeen centuries older than any of our MSS., which belong to the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. As might be expected, therefore, it exhibits a large number of divergences, but very few of these are such as to make any important differences of meaning; the readings of the papyrus have, therefore, only been noted where they materially affect the translation.

The authorship of the *Rhetorica ad Alexandrum* has been the subject of considerable discussion. The suggestion that it is to be attributed to Anaximenes of Lampsacus, a slightly older contemporary of Aristotle, was first made by Petrus Victorius on the strength of a statement of Quintilian (*Inst. Orat.*, iii. 4. 9). This view was adopted by Spengel, who, in an extremely arbitrary manner, altered the text at 1421ᵇ 7 and 1432ᵇ 8 in defiance of all the MSS., in order to reduce the number of genera of oratory from three to two, so as to harmonize with Quintilian's account of Anaximenes. These emendations are not only unlikely in themselves, but are contradicted by the whole

arrangement of Chapters 1–5 and 34–7, where the author clearly deals with three genera, each with two species, and 'inquiry' as an extra species. In view of these facts the MS. reading has been retained in these passages.

Now Aristotle in the *Rhetorica* (1358ª 36 ff.) recognizes the three genera and is stated by Quintilian (*Inst. Orat.*, iii. 4. 1) to have been the first to do so; the question therefore arises whether the *Rhet. ad Alex.* can be the work of Aristotle himself. Mr. T. Case (article on 'Aristotle' in *Encycl. Brit.*, 11th ed.) argues that it is a genuine work of Aristotle of a somewhat earlier date than the *Rhetorica*. Against this it may be urged that the doctrine of the *Rhet. ad Alex.* shows a development as compared with the *Rhetorica* in the addition of a species which the latter does not recognize.[1] Further, it is difficult to conceive that any one who reads the two treatises side by side can come to the conclusion that the writer of the *Rhet. ad Alex.* is identical with the author of the vastly superior *Rhetorica*.

Amongst others who have discussed the question of the authorship of the *Rhet. ad Alex.*, Mr. E. M. Cope (*Introduction to the Rhetoric of Aristotle*, pp. 413 ff.) is on the whole inclined to think that the treatise may possibly be the work of Anaximenes, but he thinks that the name of Anaximenes on the title-page of Spengel's edition 'should be replaced by the more modest "Anonymus"'. Heitz (O. Müller-Heitz, *Gesch. der griech. Lit.*, ii, p. 287) and Susemihl (*Gesch. der griech. Lit. in der Alexandrinerzeit*, ii, p. 451) agree in the opinion that the *Rhet. ad Alex.* is the work of a writer of the early third century B. C. Hammer (*Rhet. Graec.*, vol. i, pp. iv–v) considers the question undecided, but, while he implies that there is much to be said for the view of Heitz and Susemihl, states that he has retained the name of Anaximenes out of deference to Spengel. The editors of the Hibeh Papyrus are of opinion that 'the new discovery goes far to overthrow Susemihl's position and weaken his objections to the previously accepted conclusions of Spengel'. They do not, however, offer any proofs in favour of the

[1] Unless indeed Aristotle in the *Rhetorica* deliberately ignored the species of 'inquiry'.

Anaximenean authorship or make any allusion to Spengel's changes in the text, and unfortunately neither of the passages in which these occur is included in the fragments of the papyrus. They are of opinion that a fourth-century date for the treatise may be regarded as established, though this, they say, does not prove that its author preceded Aristotle. It is to be noted that an exactly contemporary papyrus found at Hibeh (No. 16) is probably a fragment of Theophrastus *περὶ ὕδατος*.

We shall probably not be far wrong if, accepting a date slightly anterior to 300 B. C., we attribute the work to a Peripatetic writer contemporaneous with Theophrastus. The treatise has certainly many points of contact with the *Rhetorica* and assumes and supplements Aristotle's classification; it is written from a more practical and less philosophic standpoint and in the spirit of Socrates rather than of Aristotle.

My best thanks are due to the Editor of the series, Professor W. D. Ross, who has read through the translation both in MS. and in proof, to my colleague Professor W. C. Summers, who has read it in MS., and to Professor W. Rhys Roberts, who has read it in proof; all of whom have made valuable suggestions and corrections.

E. S. F.

THE UNIVERSITY, SHEFFIELD.

Nov. 14, 1923.

$20^{a}6-47^{b} = 1420^{a}-1447^{b}$

Bekker.		Hammer.	Bekker.		Hammer.
$20^{a}6$	=	8.1	$26^{b}1$	=	30.3
$20^{b}5$	=	9.12	$27^{a}1$	=	31.19
$21^{a}1$	=	10.15	$27^{b}1$	=	33.13
$21^{b}1$	=	12.7	$28^{a}1$	=	35.12
$22^{a}1$	=	14.3	$28^{b}1$	=	37.7
$22^{b}1$	=	15.22	$29^{a}1$	=	38.26
$23^{a}1$	=	17.18	$29^{b}1$	=	40.18
$23^{b}1$	=	19.12	$30^{a}1$	=	42.13
$24^{a}1$	=	21.5	$30^{b}1$	=	44.6
$24^{b}1$	=	22.25	$31^{a}1$	=	45.24
$25^{a}1$	=	24.16	$31^{b}1$	=	47.19
$25^{b}1$	=	26.11	$32^{a}1$	=	49.17
$26^{a}1$	=	28.6	$32^{b}1$	=	51.11

Bekker.		Hammer.	Bekker.		Hammer.
$33^{a}1$	=	53.3	$40^{b}1$	=	79.18
$33^{b}1$	=	54.22	$41^{a}1$	=	81.17
$34^{a}1$	=	56.19	$41^{b}1$	=	83.15
$34^{b}1$	=	58.14	$42^{a}1$	=	85.12
$35^{a}1$	=	60.8	$42^{b}1$	=	87.5
$35^{b}1$	=	62.8	$43^{a}1$	=	89.1
$36^{a}1$	=	64.2	$43^{b}1$	=	90.23
$36^{b}1$	=	65.21	$44^{a}1$	=	92.19
$37^{a}1$	=	67.16	$44^{b}1$	=	94.11
$37^{b}1$	=	69.10	$45^{a}1$	=	96.10
$38^{a}1$	=	71.4	$45^{b}1$	=	98.4
$38^{b}1$	=	72.22	$46^{a}1$	=	99.26
$39^{a}1$	=	74.17	$46^{b}1$	=	101.17
$39^{b}1$	=	76.10	$47^{a}1$	=	103.18
$40^{a}1$	=	77.26	$47^{b}1$	=	103.25

CONTENTS

[Introductory Letter to Alexander.]

CHAP.

1. The genera of oratory—deliberative, epideictic, forensic. The species of oratory—persuasive, dissuasive, eulogistic, vituperative, accusatory, defensive, inquisitive. (1) Deliberative oratory: persuasion and dissuasion.
2. The subjects of deliberative oratory.
3. (2) Epideictic oratory: eulogy and vituperation.
4. (3) Forensic oratory: accusation and defence.
5. Inquiry.
6. Elements common to every branch of oratory:

   (1) Appeals to the just, the lawful, the expedient, the noble, the pleasant, &c.

   (2) Amplification and minimization.

   (3) Proofs.

   (4) Anticipations, postulates, iterations, elegances of speech, length of speech, explanation.

7. Proofs: (1) Direct, (2) Supplementary.
   (1) Direct:
   (a) Probabilities.
8. (b) Examples.
9. (c) Infallible signs.
10. (d) Enthymemes.
11. (e) Maxims.
12. (f) Fallible signs.
13. (g) Refutations.
14. The differences between the various kinds of direct proof.
   (2) Supplementary:
   (a) Opinion of the speaker.
15. (b) Testimony.
16. (c) Evidence given under torture.
17. (d) Oaths.
18. Anticipation.
19. Postulates.
20. Iteration.
21. Irony.
22. Elegance of speech and length of speech

CONTENTS

CHAP.

23. The composition of words.
24. Statement.
25. Clearness in speaking.
26. Antithesis.
27. Parisosis.
28. Paromoeosis.
29. The Proem.
30. Narration.
31. The arrangement of material.
32. Confirmation.
33. Methods of Anticipation.
34. Methods of Persuasive and Dissuasive Oratory.
35. Methods of Eulogistic and Vituperative Oratory.
36. Methods of Accusation and Defence.
37. Methods of Inquiry.
38. Miscellaneous precepts: the epilogue.

DE RHETORICA AD ALEXANDRUM

[Aristotle to Alexander. Salutation.[1] 1420[a]5

YOU write that you have often sent persons to me to urge upon me the project of noting down for you the principles of public speaking. It is not through indifference that I have put off doing so all this time,[2] but because I was seeking how to write on this subject with more exactitude than any one else who has concerned himself therewith. It was only natural that I should have such an intention; for just as you are desirous to have more splendid raiment than other men, so you ought to strive to attain to a more glorious skill in speech than other men possess. For it is far more honourable and kingly to have the mind well ordered than to see the bodily form well arrayed. For verily it is absurd that one who in deeds excels all men should in words manifestly fall short of ordinary mortals, especially when he knows full well that, whereas among those whose political constitution is democracy the final appeal on all matters is to the law, among those who are under kingly rule the appeal is to reason.[3] Just as their

[1] It has been universally admitted by the editors that the Introductory Letter to Alexander is unsatisfactory, and from the time of Erasmus onwards it has been usually pronounced to be a forgery. E. M. Cope (*Introduction to the Rhetoric of Aristotle*, p. 401) says that never did a spurious document more manifestly betray itself by want of skill and inappropriateness in the composition. Paul Wendland, however, in *Hermes*, xxxix (1904), pp. 499 ff., argues that the Letter in the form in which it has come down to us is the original Letter of Introduction written by Anaximenes, adapted by a later forger who wished that the work should obtain currency under the name of Aristotle.

[2] Or perhaps 'all these years', a very late use of χρόνος; see Wendland, l. c., p. 500 and his note.

[3] It is impossible in a translation to bring out the double meaning of 'word' and 'reasoning' which is present in λόγος.

public law always directs self-governing communities along the best path, so might reason, as embodied in you, guide along the path of their advantage those who are subject to your rule. For law can be simply described as reason defined by the common consent of the community, regulating action of every kind. Furthermore, I think that you are well aware that we praise as good men and true those who employ reason and prefer always to act under its guidance, while we abhor as savage and brutish those who act in any matter without reason. It is for this cause [1] too that we punish wicked men when they show their wickedness and admire the good when they display their virtue. Thus we have discovered a means of preventing possible wickedness, while we enjoy the benefits of existing goodness. In this way we escape annoyances which threaten us and secure advantages which we did not previously possess. Just as a life free from pain is an object of desire, so is wise reason an object of contentment.

Again, you must realize that the model set before most men is either the law or else your life and the expression of your reason. In order therefore that you may excel all Greeks and barbarians, you must exert yourself to the utmost, so that those who spend their lives in these pursuits,[2] using the elements of virtue in them to produce a beauteous copy of the model thus set before them, may not direct themselves towards ignoble ends but make it their desire to partake in the same virtue.

Moreover, deliberation is the most divine of human activities. Therefore you must not waste your energies on subordinate and worthless pursuits, but desire to drink at the very fountain-head of good counsel. For what man of sense could ever doubt that, while it is a sign of foolishness to act without deliberation, it is the mark of true culture to accomplish under the guidance of reason anything that reason commands? It is plain to see that all the greatest politicians of Greece resort to reason first and then to deeds,

[1] διὰ τοῦτο (DOV).

[2] i.e. those who make your life and reason their guide. Buhle is probably wrong in interpreting περὶ ταῦτα as *in legibus ferendis*.

and further that those who have won the highest repute among the barbarians have employed reason before action, knowing full well that the consideration of expediency by the light 1421a of reason is a very citadel of salvation. Yea, it is reason which we must regard as an impregnable citadel, and not look on any fortress built by man as a sure safeguard.

But I hesitate to say another word, lest I should seem to be writing for effect, bringing forward proofs of facts which are fully known as though they were not generally admitted. I will therefore say no more, after mentioning only one topic, in enlarging on which one might spend one's whole life, namely, that reason is the one thing wherein we are superior to all other animals,[1] we who have received the highest honour which heaven can bestow. For all animals display the appetites and desire and the like, but none save man possess reason. Now it would be most strange if, when it is by virtue of reason alone that we live happier lives than all other animals, we should through indifference despise and renounce that which is the cause of our well-being. Though you have long been exhorted thereto, I urge you to embrace with the utmost zeal the study of reasoned speech. For just as health preserves the body, so is education the recognized preserver of the mind. Under its guidance you will never take a false step in anything that you do, but you will keep safe practically all the advantages which you already possess. Moreover, if physical sight is a pleasure, to see clearly with the eyes of the soul is a thing to be admired. Again, as the general is the saviour of his army, so is reason, allied with education, the guide of life. These, then, and like sentiments I think I may well dismiss at the present moment.

In your letter you urge me not to let this book fall into other hands than yours, and this knowing full well that, just as parents love their own offspring more than supposititious children, so those who have invented something have more affection for it than those to whom the discovery is merely imparted. For men have died in

[1] Omitting with most editors (and Wendland, l.c., p. 502) *τοῦτο οὖν . . . ἀνθρώπων*, and putting a comma after *ζῴων*.

defence of their words,[1] as they would die for their offspring. For the so-called Parian Sophists, because what they teach is not of their own production, in their gross indifference feel no affection and barter it away for money. Wherefore I exhort you to watch over these precepts, the children of my brain, that while they are yet young they may be corrupted[2] by no man, and, sharing in your well-ordered life, when they come to man's estate, may win unsullied[3] glory.

Following the lesson taught by Nicanor,[4] we have adopted from other authors anything on the same subjects which was particularly well expressed in their treatises. You will find two such[5] books, one of which is my own,[6] viz. the Oratorical Art which I wrote for Theodectes,[7] while the other is the treatise of Corax.[8] The other points[9] connected with public and forensic exhortations have all been dealt with specially[10] in these treatises. So in these commentaries written expressly for you you will find material for amplifying these two treatises.[11] Farewell.]

[1] Reading οὕτω for τούτων as suggested by Spengel.
[2] Omitting χρήμασι (read by most MSS. after μηδενός, l. 36).
[3] It seems unnecessary to change the MS. reading ἀκηράτου to ἀγηράτου.
[4] See Heberdey, *Festschrift für Th. Gomperz* (Vienna, 1902), pp. 412 ff.
[5] i.e. according to Wendland, l. c., p. 505, 'useful books', for which τοιούτοις would be expected and should perhaps be read; but τοῦτο is somewhat similarly used for τοιοῦτο in 1421b 37.
[6] ἐμόν is here, according to Wendland, substituted by the adapter of the Introduction for Ἀριστοτέλους of the original.
[7] On this early oratorical work of Aristotle see *Rhet.* 1410b 2; Cope, *Introd.* (1867), p. 57; Diels, *Ueber das dritte Buch der Aristot. Rhet.* (Proceedings of the Berlin Academy, 1886), p. 12; and Mayer, *Theophrastus* περὶ λέξεως, Prolegomena, pp. xxxvii–xlvii (where it is argued that part of this work is preserved in the *Anonymi* τέχνη τοῦ πολιτικοῦ λόγου).
[8] For this work see *Rhet.* 1402a 17; Cicero, *Brutus*, 12; Blass, *Att. Bereds.*, i, pp. 19, 20; and Wendland, l. c., pp. 509–13.
[9] i.e. according to Wendland, 'those which I have not adopted from them'.
[10] i.e. by different methods from those employed in the present treatise and in the prevalent mode of rhetoric (Wendland).
[11] Wendland paraphrases: 'Daher wirst du beide aus meiner Schrift berichtigen und ergänzen können.'

1 Public speeches fall into three classes, deliberative, epideictic, and forensic.[1] They are of seven kinds, being employed in persuasion, dissuasion, eulogy, vituperation, accusation, defence, and inquiry either by itself or in relation to something else.[2] Such are the different kinds of discourses and their number. We shall employ them in public harangues, in lawsuits about contracts, and in private conversation. We shall treat of them most conveniently if we take them each separately and enumerate their qualities,[3] their uses,[4] and their arrangement.[5] And first let us discuss persuasion and dissuasion, since they are used most of all in private conversations and in public harangues. To speak generally, persuasion is an exhortation to some purpose or speech or action, while dissuasion is the prevention of some purpose or speech or action. Such being the definition of these words, he who persuades must show that those things to which he exhorts are just, lawful, expedient, honourable, pleasant, and easy of accomplishment. Failing that, when he is exhorting to that which is difficult, he must show that it is practicable and that its execution is necessary. He who dissuades, by pursuing the opposite course, must exert a hindering influence, showing that the proposed action is neither just nor lawful nor expedient nor honourable nor pleasant nor practicable; if he cannot do that, he must urge that it is toilsome and unnecessary. All actions can have both these sets of attributes applied to them,[6] so that a man who can urge neither of these two sets of fundamental qualities[7] is at a loss for anything to say. It is for these qualities therefore that those who seek to persuade or dissuade must look. I will now attempt to define them one

[1] Reading with all MSS. *τρία γένη . . . τὸ μὲν δημηγορικόν, τὸ δ' ἐπιδεικτικόν, τὸ δὲ δικανικόν.* Spengel omitted *τὸ δ' ἐπιδεικτικόν* in order to reconcile the division here given with that ascribed to Anaximenes by Quintilian (*Inst. Orat.*, iii. 4. 9, *Anaximenes iudicialem et contionalem generales partes esse uoluit, septem autem species*, &c.) and thus support his theory of the Anaximenean authorship. A similar division into three *εἴδη* is given by all MSS. in 1432ᵇ 8, where see note.

[2] For the meaning of 'inquiry' (*ἐξέτασις*) see below 1427ᵇ 12.

[3] Chapters 1–5. [4] Chapters 6–28. [5] Chapters 29–38.

[6] i. e. every action is just or unjust, lawful or unlawful, &c.

[7] i. e. justice, lawfulness, &c., or injustice, unlawfulness, &c.

by one and show whence we shall supply them for our discourses.

That which is just is the unwritten custom of all or the majority of men which draws a distinction between what is honourable and what is base. We may take as examples[1] the honouring of parents, doing good to one's friends, and returning good to one's benefactors. These and similar duties are not enjoined upon mankind by written laws, but they are observed by unwritten custom and universal practice. So much for just actions.

Law is a common agreement made by the community which ordains in writing how the citizens ought to act under every kind of circumstance.

Expediency is the safeguarding of existing advantages, or the acquisition of those not already possessed, or the riddance of existing disadvantages, or the prevention of harm which threatens to occur. For individuals you can divide up expediency according as it applies to the body or the mind or external possessions. For the body, strength, beauty, and health are expedient; for the mind, courage, wisdom, and justice. External possessions are friends, wealth, and property. The contraries of these are inexpedient. For a community such things as concord, strength for war, wealth, a plentiful supply of revenue, and excellence and abundance of allies are expedient. In a word we look upon anything of this kind as expedient and the contrary as inexpedient. Honourable things are those from which good repute and creditable distinction will accrue to the doers. Pleasant things are those which cause joy. Easy things are those which are accomplished with the least expenditure of time, trouble, and money. Practicable things are all those which admit of performance. Necessary things are those the execution of which does not depend upon us but takes place as it were by some necessity divine or human. Such, then, is the nature of things just, lawful, expedient, honourable, easy, practicable, and necessary.

It will be easy to speak about such subjects by the use of the arguments mentioned above and by arguments analogous

[1] Sauppe reads τοιοῦτο for τοῦτο, but see note on 1421b 1.

to them and by arguments opposed to them and by employing judgements pronounced by the gods or by men or by judges of repute [1] or by our opponents.

We have already described the nature of that which is just. The following are cases where there is an analogy to that which is just: 'As we consider it just to obey parents, on the same principle it behoves sons to imitate the actions of their fathers'; or again, 'As it is just to do good in return to those who do good to us, so it is just to abstain from harming those who have done us no ill'. It is by this method that we must get analogies to justice. Then we ought to make the example itself [2] clear by taking the contrary case: 'As it is just to punish those who do us a wrong, so it behoves us to do good in return to our benefactors'. You will discover what is just in the judgement of men of repute by a consideration such as the following: 'Not only do we hate and do harm to our enemies, but the Athenians also and the Lacedaemonians judge that it is just to punish their enemies.' By following this system you will often discover what is just.

We have already defined the nature of that which is lawful. When it serves our purpose we must introduce the legislator himself and his law and any case of analogy to the written law. For example, 'As the lawgiver punishes thieves with very serious penalties, so we ought to inflict heavy chastisement on those who deceive, for they steal away the understanding'; or again, 'Just as the lawgiver has made the nearest relatives the heirs of those who die childless, so I ought in the present case to have authority over the possessions of a freedman; for since those who set him free are dead and I am the nearest relative of the deceased persons, I am justified in assuming control over their freedmen.' This is an example of the way in which an analogy to that which is ordained by law is obtained. The following is an illustration of what is contrary to that which is lawful: 'If the law prohibits the distribution of

1422b

[1] Reading *ὑπ' ἀνθρώπων ἢ ὑπ' ἐν ων κριτῶι* with the Hibeh Papyrus (quoted hereafter as Π).

[2] *αὐτὸ τὸ παράδειγμα* (MSS.).

public property, it was clearly the judgement of the lawgiver that all who divide up such property are doing wrong; for if the laws ordain that those who govern the state well and justly should be honoured, they clearly regard those who make away with public property as deserving of punishment.' The nature of the lawful is thus clearly shown by taking cases of the contrary. It can be demonstrated from previous judgements by a consideration such as this: 'Not only do I hold that the lawgiver made this law to cover such cases as these, but on a former occasion, when Lysithidas gave an explanation similar to that which I am now putting forward, the jury voted in favour of this interpretation of the law.' By this method we shall often be able to demonstrate what is lawful.

The nature of the expedient itself has already been defined. We must, in addition to the subjects already mentioned,[1] introduce the expedient, wherever it is available, into our arguments and often bring it to light, pursuing the same method which we employed for the lawful and the just. The following would be instances of analogies to the expedient: 'As in war it is expedient to station the bravest men in the front rank, so in the state it is advantageous that the wisest and justest men should be the leaders of the people'; or again, 'As it is expedient for the healthy to be on their guard against disease, so too in communities which live in harmony it is expedient to provide against possibilities of faction.' By following this method you will be able to make many analogies to the expedient. The expedient will also be clear if you take contrary cases such as the following: 'If it is advantageous to honour good citizens, it would be expedient also to punish the wicked'; or again, 'If you think it inexpedient that we should make war unaided on the Thebans, it would be expedient to make the Lacedaemonians our allies and then make war on the Thebans.' This is the method by which you will demonstrate the expedient by arguing from the contrary. You can discover what has been judged to be expedient by

[1] Reading *μετὰ τῶν προειρημένων* (i.e. *δίκαιον* and *νόμιμον*), suggested by W. Kroll in *Rh. Mus.*, lxxi (1911), p. 161.

judges[1] of repute by considerations such as the following: 'The Lacedaemonians, when they had conquered the Athenians, thought it expedient not to enslave their city, and on another occasion the Athenians and Thebans,[2] when it was within their power to depopulate Sparta, thought it expedient to allow the Lacedaemonians to survive.'

By pursuing this method you will have plenty to say about the just, the lawful, and the expedient. You must employ the same methods in the case of the honourable, the easy, the pleasant, the practicable, and the necessary. We shall thus have abundant material on these topics also.

2 Next let us determine the number, the character, and the names of the subjects which we discuss in the council-chamber and in the popular assembly. If we have a clear knowledge of these, the actual circumstances will provide us with something appropriate to say on each occasion when we are giving advice. If we have long been familiar with the characteristics common to each class of subject, we shall always be able to apply them readily in practice. We must therefore distinguish the various subjects about which all men hold public deliberation.

To sum the matter up, there are seven subjects on which we shall speak in public.[3] For whether we are addressing the council or the people, we must necessarily deliberate and speak about either sacred rites or laws or the political constitution or alliances and contracts with other states or war or peace or the provision of resources. These, then, are the subjects about which we shall deliberate and address the people. Let us take each of them separately and see how they can be treated in a speech.

There are three ways in which we must deal with the subject of sacred rites; for we shall urge either that they ought to be retained in their existing form, or that they ought to be changed[4] so as to be more magnificent or else less sumptuous. When we are maintaining that the existing

[1] Reading with Π ὑπ' ἐνδόξων κριτῶν.
[2] Adding μετὰ Θηβαίων after Ἀθηναῖοι with Π.
[3] Cp. *Rhet.* 1359b 20 ff., where a somewhat different list is given.
[4] Reading with Π ἐπὶ τὸ μεγαλοπρεπέστερον μεταστατέον ἢ.

form should be retained, we should derive material from the argument of justice, urging that it is regarded by all men as unjust to transgress the customs of our forefathers, and that all the oracles command men to make their sacrifices according to the usages of their forefathers, and that it is of the utmost importance that the religious observances should be continued which were prescribed by those who originally founded cities and set up temples to the gods. On the ground of expediency we shall urge that, if the sacrifices are offered according to ancestral usage, it will be expedient either for individuals or the community at large in view of the payments of money which will be involved, and that it will benefit the citizens by creating a feeling of self-confidence; for if heavy-armed troops, horsemen, and light-armed soldiers join in a religious procession, the citizens, priding themselves on such things, would feel greater confidence in themselves. It can be urged on the ground of what is honourable, if it results in the spectacle of splendid festivals; on the ground of pleasure, because a variety in the sacrifices to the gods is introduced into the spectacle; and on the ground of practicability, if neither defect nor excess has characterized the celebration. Thus when we are speaking in support of the existing state of affairs, we must pursue our inquiry by the above or similar methods and treat the question under discussion as the nature of the subject permits.

When we are advising a change to greater magnificence in the celebration of sacred rites, we shall have a plausible pretext for altering ancestral usages, if we urge that an addition to existing rites involves not their destruction but their extension; again, that it is reasonable to suppose that the gods are more favourably disposed to those who honour them more; again, that even our fathers used not to perform their sacrifices always in the same way, but regulated their service to the gods, both as a community and as private individuals, according to the occasion and their own prosperity; again, that this is a principle which we follow in all other matters in the government of our cities and our private establishments. You must also mention any

advantage in brilliance or enjoyment which is likely to result to the city from the alteration, following the methods which we have described above.

When we are urging a reduction of the scale of our sacred rites, we must in the first place direct our remarks to the circumstances of the moment and show in what respect the citizens are less prosperous now than formerly. Next we must show that it is reasonable to suppose that the gods rejoice, not in the costliness of the sacrifices, but in the piety of those who offer them; again, that both gods and men deem those who do anything beyond their means to be guilty of great folly; next, that public expenditure is not merely a personal question but depends on prosperity and adversity. These and others of the same kind are the arguments which we shall offer on the subject of sacrifices.

But in order that we may know how to give some indications and offer rules as to the conditions of the ideal sacrifice, let us define it thus: the best sacrifice of all is one which is pious towards the gods, moderate in costliness, likely to bring advantage in war, and splendid from a spectacular point of view. It will be pious towards the gods, if ancestral usage is not violated; it will be moderate in costliness, if the accompaniments of the ceremony are not all wasted; it will be splendid from a spectacular point of view, if gold and such things as are not actually consumed are used lavishly; and it will be advantageous for war, if horsemen and infantry in full panoply accompany the procession. By following these rules we shall best provide for the service of the gods. From what has been said above we shall know how to speak in public about the performance of sacred rites of every kind.

Let us next deal similarly with laws and the political constitution. Laws may be briefly described as common agreements made by the community which define and ordain in writing how the citizens should act under various circumstances.

In democratic states legislation ought to provide for appointment by lot to the less important and the majority of the offices (for thus faction will be avoided), while the

most important magistrates should be elected by the votes of the multitude. In this way the people, having the power to bestow honours on whomsoever they like, will not be jealous of those who obtain them, while the more prominent men will be encouraged to practice virtue, knowing that it will be to their advantage to have a good repute among their fellow-citizens. Such are the laws which ought to be laid down regarding elections in a democratic state. It would be a lengthy task to go into detail about the rest of the administration. But, to put the matter briefly, care must be taken that the laws may prevent the multitude from entertaining designs against the possessors of property and may instil into the wealthy citizens an eagerness to spend money[1] in undertaking public burdens. The laws will ensure this if certain distinctions are set aside by law for the owners of property in return for their expenditure in the service of the state, and if the laws show more consideration for the tillers of the soil and the sailors[2] among the poorer classes than for the rabble of the city; so that the rich may willingly serve the state, and the people may prefer work to dishonest means of gain. In addition stringent laws must be laid down forbidding the distribution of public lands and the confiscation of the property of deceased persons, and heavy penalties must be imposed on those who commit these transgressions. Also public land in a good position in front of the city must be set apart for the burial of those who are killed in war, and their children must be supported at the public expense until they grow up. Such must be the character of legislation in a democratic state.

In oligarchical states the laws ought to distribute the magistracies impartially to all who possess the rights of citizenship; most of them should be bestowed by lot, but the most important should be assigned by secret vote under oath and with the strictest precautions. Under an oligarchy the penalties inflicted on those who offer affronts to any of the citizens ought to be very heavy, for the people are not so much annoyed at being debarred from holding office as

[1] Reading with Π *λειτουργίας δαπανᾶν φιλοτιμίαν.*
[2] Reading *ναυτικούς*, Blass's suggested restoration of Π.

they are angered at being affronted. Differences between citizens ought to be settled as quickly as possible and not be allowed to continue. Nor ought the lower classes to be allowed to collect from the country into the city; for the result of such assemblages is that the populace unites and overthrows the oligarchy. Speaking generally, in democratic states the laws ought to hinder the populace from entertaining designs on the property of the rich; in oligarchical states they ought to check the possessors of political rights from insulting those who are weaker than themselves and from imposing upon the citizens. From what I have said you will not fail to perceive what aims the laws and political constitution ought to keep in view.

Any one who wishes to speak in favour of a law must show that it affects all equally, that it harmonizes with the rest of the laws, and that it is beneficial to the city, particularly in promoting concord; failing this, he must show that it will conduce to virtue among the citizens, or that it will benefit the public revenue or the good repute of the city as a whole, or that it will strengthen the power of the state, or that it will confer some similar advantage. If you are speaking against a law, you must consider whether it does not apply equally to all the citizens; and next, whether, so far from agreeing with the other laws, it is actually opposed to them; and further, whether it will conduce to none of the benefits which we have mentioned, being on the contrary harmful. These considerations will provide us with abundant arguments for making proposals and speaking about laws and the political constitution.

We will now proceed to deal with alliances and contracts with other states. Contracts must necessarily be regulated by public arrangements and agreements. Alliances must be formed on occasions when one party is too weak by itself, or when a war is expected to break out; or else men must enter into an alliance with another state because they think they will thus prevent certain people from making war. These and a number of similar circumstances are the reasons which induce states to make allies.

When you wish to support the formation of an alliance,

you must make it clear that the occasion for doing so exists, and show if possible, that the proposed allies are just men, and that they have previously conferred some benefit upon the state, and that they are possessed of considerable power, and that they are situated near at hand. If all these advantages are not present, you must collect in your speech any of them which do exist. When you are trying to prevent an alliance, it is open to you to show in the first place that it is unnecessary at the moment; or again, that the proposed allies are not just men, or that they have wronged us on a previous occasion. Failing that, you can object to them on the ground that they live too far away and are not in a position to help us at the proper moment. With these and similar arguments we shall have abundant material for speaking against and in support of the formation of alliances.

Again, on the subject of peace and war let us use a similar method to obtain our chief kinds of argument. The pretexts for making war on another state are as follows: when we have been the victims of aggression, we must take vengeance on those who have wronged us, now that a suitable opportunity has presented itself; or else, when we are actually being wronged, we must go to war on our own behalf or on behalf of our kindred or benefactors; or else we must help our allies when they are wronged; or else we must go to war to gain some advantage for the city, in respect either of glory, or of resources, or of strength, or of something similar.

When we are exhorting any one to go to war we must collect as many of these pretexts as possible, and afterwards show that those whom we are exhorting possess most of the advantages which bring success in warfare. Now men are always successful either by the favour of the gods, which we call good fortune, or through the number and strength of their troops, or through the abundance of their resources or the wisdom of their general or the excellence of their allies, or through their superiority of position. From these, then, and similar advantages we shall select and demonstrate those which are most applicable to the circumstances, when our advice is in favour of war, belittling the points of superiority possessed by the enemy and exaggerating those

which we ourselves enjoy. If we are trying to prevent a war which is likely to take place, we must first of all find pretexts to show that the alleged grievances either do not exist at all or else are small and insignificant; next we must show that it is not expedient to go to war, dwelling on the disasters that befall men in warfare; and further, that the advantages which conduce to victory (which have just been enumerated) are possessed by the enemy rather than by us. These are the means which we must employ to avert a war which is likely to occur. When we are trying to stop a war which has actually started, if those to whom our advice is offered are stronger than their foes, the first point on which we must insist is that sensible men ought not to wait until they have a fall, but should make peace while they are strong; also, that it is characteristic of war to ruin many even of those who are successful in it, but of peace to save the vanquished and to allow the victorious to enjoy 1425[b] the possessions which they have gained in warfare. We must also dwell upon the numerous and incalculable vicissitudes of warfare. Such are the methods by which we must exhort to peace those who are victorious in war. Those who have already met with failure we must urge to make peace on the ground of actual events, and because they ought to learn from their misfortunes and not be exasperated by those who have already injured them, and because of the dangers which have already resulted from not making peace, and because it is better to sacrifice a part of their possessions to an enemy stronger than themselves than to be conquered and lose their lives as well as their property. And, to put the matter briefly, we must realize that it is the universal custom of mankind to abandon mutual warfare, either when they think that the demands of the enemy are just, or when they are at variance with their allies, or weary of war, or afraid of their enemy, or suffering from internal strife. If, therefore, you collect from amongst all these and similar arguments those which are most applicable to the circumstances, you will have no lack of material for speaking about peace and war.

Lastly, it remains for us to treat of the provision of

resources. First, then, we must inquire whether any property belonging to the city is neglected, neither bringing in any revenue nor being dedicated to the gods: I mean, for example, any public lands which are neglected and might bring in revenue to the city if they were sold or leased to private persons; for this is a very common source of income. If this expedient is lacking, we must impose taxes on rateable property, or order the poor to give their personal service in time of danger, the rich to pay money, and the craftsmen to provide arms. In a word, when we are treating of ways and means, we must say that they affect all the citizens equally and are permanent and ample, while the exact opposite is true of our adversaries' proposals.

From what has now been said we are acquainted with the subjects on which we shall speak in public, when we are seeking to persuade or dissuade, and their component parts, which will supply us with the material of our orations. Next in order let us set forth and treat of the eulogistic and vituperative kinds of oratory.

3 To speak generally, the eulogistic kind is the amplification of creditable purposes, deeds, and words, and the attribution of qualities which do not exist;[1] while the vituperative kind is the opposite of this and consists in the minimizing of creditable qualities and the amplification of those which are discreditable. Deeds worthy of praise are those which are just, lawful, expedient, honourable, pleasant, 1426a and easy of execution. The nature of these qualities and the sources from which we can obtain abundant material about them have already been stated.[2] He who is eulogizing must show in his speech that one of these praiseworthy deeds is connected with a certain person or his acts, because it has either been brought about by his personal exertions, or has been produced through his agency, or has resulted from a certain action of his, or has been done for some object, or could not have come to pass except under certain circumstances which are due to him. Similarly he who is censuring must show that the contrary of this is true

[1] Cp. *Rhet.* 1408a 1–5. [2] 1421b 35 ff.

of the person whom he is censuring. The following are examples of the results of action; bodily health is the result of a fondness for gymnastics; a man falls into ill-health as the result of not caring for exercise, or becomes wiser as the result of studying philosophy, or lacks the necessities of life as the result of his own carelessness. The following are actions done with an object: men endure many toils and dangers with the object of being crowned by their fellow-citizens, or neglect everything else with the object of pleasing those whom they love. Instances of things which can only take place under certain circumstances are the following: victories at sea can only take place when there are sailors to win them, and drunkenness can only occur as the result of drinking. By pursuing this method on the lines already laid down you will have abundant material for eulogy and vituperation.

Generally speaking you will be able to amplify and minimize under all such circumstances by the following method: first, by showing, as I explained just now, that many good or bad results have been caused by a certain person's actions. This is one kind of amplification. A second method is to introduce[1] a judgement already passed—a favourable one, if you are eulogizing, and an unfavourable one, if you are censuring—and then set side by side with it what you have to say and compare the two together, making as much as possible of your own opinion and as little as possible of the other judgement; the result will be that your own opinion is magnified. A third plan is to compare that about which you are speaking with the least thing which falls under the same category; for the former will then appear magnified, just as persons of moderate height appear taller than they really are when they stand side by side with persons of unusually small stature. The following is another safe method of amplification: if a certain thing has been considered a great good, then its contrary, if you mention it, will appear to be a great evil, and similarly, if a thing is considered to be a great evil, its contrary, if you

[1] Finckh's emendation, adopted by Sp.-H., of *μέγα φέρειν* for *μεταφέρειν* seems unnecessary.

mention it, will appear to be a great good. You can also magnify good and bad actions by showing that the doer of them acted intentionally, proving that he had long premeditated doing them, that he purposed to do them often, that he did them over a long period, that no one else ever tried to do them, that he acted in company with others with whom no one else ever acted, or following those whom no one else ever followed, or that he acted wittingly or designedly, and that we should be fortunate, or unfortunate, if we all did as he did. You must also prove your point by drawing parallels and amplifying as follows, building them as it were, one on the top of another[1]: 'If a man cares for his friends, it is natural to suppose that he honours his parents, and he who honours his parents will also desire to benefit his fatherland.' Generally speaking, if you can prove that a man is the cause of *many* good or bad things, these things will appear to be important. You must also examine the topic on which you are speaking and see whether it appears to have more weight when divided into parts or when treated as a whole,[2] and you must treat it in the manner in which it appears to have more weight. By pursuing these methods you will be able to make the most frequent and effective amplifications.

You will minimize good and bad actions in your speeches by following the opposite method to that which we have prescribed for amplification. The best thing is to show that a man's action has produced no result at all, or, if that is impossible, only the smallest and most insignificant results. From these instructions we know how to amplify or minimize any point which we are bringing forward,[3] when we are eulogizing or censuring. These materials for amplification are useful in other kinds[4] of oratory, but they are most effective in eulogy[5] and vituperation. We shall thus be provided with ample material on these topics.

[1] The 'method of Epicharmus', cp. *Rhet.* 1365ª 16; *G.A.* 724ª 30.

[2] Reading with Π *πότερον μεῖζον φαίνεται τὸ πρᾶγμα διαιρούμενον ἢ καθόλου λεγόμενον.*

[3] Reading with Π *ἐκφέρωμεν* for *ἐθέλωμεν.*

[4] Sp.-H.'s *εἴθεσιν* is a misprint for *εἴδεσιν.*

[5] Cp. *Rhet.* 1368ª 26, 27.

4 Let us next similarly define the kinds of oratory employed in accusation and defence, [which are concerned with forensic business,[1]] and the elements of which they are composed and the uses to which they are to be put. The oratory of accusation is, to put the matter briefly, the exposition of errors and crimes; defensive oratory is the disproving of errors and crimes of which a man is accused or suspected. Both styles, then, having these[2] qualities, he who is accusing, when he charges his opponents with deliberate wickedness, must declare that their acts are unjust and illegal and detrimental to the interests of the mass of citizens; when he is accusing an adversary of folly, he must declare his acts to be both inexpedient for the actual doer of them and disgraceful and odious and impracticable. These and similar arguments are those which should be directed against the wicked and foolish. Accusers should also observe against what kinds of offences the punishments ordained by the laws are directed and for what offences juries impose penalties. Where the law has laid down a definite punishment, the accuser must make it his sole object to prove that the offence has been committed. When the jury has to assess the penalty,[3] first the charges must be proved; then the errors committed by one's opponents must be amplified, and, if possible, it must be shown that the offence was committed wittingly, and not with ordinary intent but after every possible preparation. If you cannot do this, and think that your opponent intends to show that he has somehow made a mistake or that he intended to act honourably in the matter but met with misfortune, you must deprive him of any claim to pardon by telling your hearers that evil-doers, instead of declaring that they have made a mistake after they have acted, ought to be careful before they act; and further that, even if he has made mistakes or met with misfortune, he is more deserving of punishment for his misfortunes and

[1] These words are omitted by Π and are probably an interpolation.

[2] Reading with Π and the best MSS. *ταύτας* for *τὰς αὐτάς*.

[3] Reading with Π *ὅταν δ' οἱ δικασταὶ τιμῶσι, πρῶτον μὲν ἀνάγκη ἐπιδεῖξαι τὰ κατηγορούμενα.* At this point Π breaks off: it probably continued *ἔπειτα αὐξητέον κτλ.*

mistakes than one who has done neither of these things. Moreover the legislator has not let those who make mistakes go free, but has made them liable to punishment, in order to prevent any one[1] else from making mistakes. You must also point out that if they listen to one who makes this kind of defence, they will have many persons doing wrong deliberately; for if they are successful, they will simply do what they like, while, if they are unsuccessful, they will declare that they have met with ill-fortune, and they then will be excused from punishment. By such arguments must accusers deprive their adversaries of any claim to pardon, and by means of the amplifications already described their acts must be shown to have caused many evils. These are the component parts of which the oratory of accusation is made up.

Defensive oratory consists of three methods. A man who is defending himself must either prove that he committed none of the acts of which he is accused; or if he is forced to admit them, he must try to show that what he has done is lawful and just and honourable and expedient for the state; if he cannot prove this, he must attribute his acts to an error or to misfortune and show that the harm which has resulted from them is small, and so try to gain pardon. You can define a crime, an error, and a misfortune thus: you must regard as a crime a wicked deed done deliberately, and you must urge that the heaviest penalty be exacted for such deeds; a harmful act done in ignorance must be called an error; while the failure to accomplish some good intention, not through one's own fault but owing to some one else or to luck, is to be accounted a misfortune. The commission of crime you must declare to be confined to wicked men, while error and misfortune in action are not peculiar to oneself but are common to all men, including those who are sitting in judgement upon you. You must ask for pardon if you are forced to admit that you have committed faults of this kind, pointing out that your hearers are as
1427b liable to error and misfortune as you are. A man who is making his defence must observe all the offences for which

[1] Reading *πάντες*, with most MSS. and Bekker, for *πᾶσιν*.

the laws have laid down punishment and juries assess penalties. When the law fixes a definite punishment, he must show that he has not committed the offence at all, or that he has acted legally and justly. But when the jury is empowered to assess the penalty, he must not follow the same course and deny that he has committed the offence, but rather he must try to prove that his action has caused little harm to his adversary and that it was done involuntarily. If we follow these and similar methods, we shall have abundant material in cases of accusation and defence. It remains for us still to deal with the style of oratory employed in an inquiry.

5 Inquiry[1] may be summarily described as the elucidation of intentions, acts, and words which are contradictory to one another or to the rest of a man's mode of life. He who is making an inquiry must try to discover whether either the statement which he is examining or the acts or intentions of the subject of his inquiry are in any respect contradictory to one another. The method to be pursued is as follows: he must consider whether in the past the person in question, after having been originally the friend of another man, next became his enemy and then again the friend of the same person, or whether he has done anything contradictory or of a discreditable tendency, or is likely in the future, if opportunities should occur, to act in a manner which contradicts his former acts. Similarly, you must observe whether, in making some statement now, he is speaking in contradiction of his former words,[2] and likewise whether he has formed any intention which contradicts his former words,[3] or would do so if opportunities should arise. By a similar process you must deal with the contradictions which occur in the mode of life of the person whom you are examining in respect of his other and highly esteemed habits

[1] There is no one word which exactly translates the term *ἐξέτασις*: Quintilian (*Inst. Orat.* iii. 4. 9) has to use the Greek word, 'species exquirendi quod *ἐξεταστικὸν* dicit'.

[2] Omitting with Buhle *ἢ εἴ τι . . . εἰρημένοις* (l. 23 f.), which merely repeats the previous clause.

[3] *εἰρημένοις* (MSS.).

of life. If you thus pursue this branch of oratory, there is no method of examination which you will leave untried.

All the various branches of oratory having now been distinguished, we must employ them, when it is fitting, either each separately or in common with one another by mingling their different qualities. For there are very great differences between them, but in actual practice they have much in common. In this respect they resemble the various classes of human beings, who are partly similar and partly dissimilar in their appearance and in their perceptions. Having thus distinguished the various kinds of oratory, let us next enumerate the requisites which are common to all kinds and explain how they must be used.

First, then, the just, the lawful, the expedient, the honourable, the pleasant, and similar topics are, as I stated at the beginning,[1] common to all the various kinds of oratory, 1428a but are chiefly used in persuasive oratory. Secondly, amplification and minimization are necessarily useful in all kinds of oratory, but most use is made of them in eulogy and vituperation. Thirdly, there are the proofs, which must necessarily be employed in every department of oratory, but are particularly useful in accusation and defence, since these need most refutation. Further we must deal with anticipations of arguments, postulates, reiterations,[2] prolixity of speech, and moderate length of speech, brevity, and method of statement. For these and similar expedients are useful in all the various branches of oratory.

7 The just, the lawful, and the like I have already defined[3] and explained their application; I have also dealt with amplification and minimization.[4] I will now explain the other terms, beginning with the proofs.

Proofs are of two kinds; some are derived directly from actual words, acts, and persons, others are supplementary to words and actions. Probabilities, examples, infallible signs, enthymemes, maxims, fallible signs, and refutations are proofs derived from actual words, persons, and actions.

[1] 1421b 24 ff.
[2] Omitting *καὶ ἀστειολογίαι*, inserted by Spengel without MS. authority.
[3] 1421b 34 ff.
[4] 1425b 36 ff.

Testimonies,[1] oaths, and evidence given under torture are supplementary proofs. We must understand the nature of each of these kinds of proof, and whence we are to derive material for them, and how they differ from one another.

It is a Probability when one's hearers have examples in their own minds of what is being said. For instance, if any one were to say that he desires the glorification of his country, the prosperity of his friends, and the misfortunes of his foes, and the like, his statements taken together would appear probable; for each one of his hearers is himself conscious that he entertains such wishes on these and similar subjects. We must, therefore, always carefully notice, when we are speaking, whether we are likely to find our audience in sympathy with us on the subject on which we are speaking; for in that case they are most likely to believe what we say. Such, then, is the nature of a probability.

We can divide probabilities into three kinds. One kind consists in the inclusion in one's speech, when accusing or defending, of the feelings which are naturally found in mankind—if, for example, certain persons happen to despise or fear a certain other person, or have often done this very action, or, further, if they feel pleasure or pain or desire, or have ceased from desire, or if they act under the influence of wine, or have experienced in mind or body or one of the senses any of the feelings whereby we are all affected. These and similar feelings, being common to all human nature, are well known to our hearers. Such, then, are the natural feelings which are wont to affect mankind, and for these we say that a place ought to be found in our speeches. Another division of probabilities falls under the heading of habit (which is what we do from custom), a third under that of love of gain. For we often for the sake of gain choose to act in a way which does violence to our nature and character.

With these definitions before us, when we are seeking to persuade or dissuade, we must show in regard to the subject in question that the action to which we are exhorting our hearers, or which we are opposing, has the effect which we

[1] Omitting δόξα τοῦ λέγοντος, inserted without MS. authority by Spengel.

declare that it has. Failing that, we must show that actions similar to that of which we are speaking either generally or invariably turn out as we say they do. Such must be our application of probabilities in relation to actions. As regards persons you must show, if you can, when you are accusing any one, that he has often committed the act in question on previous occasions; or, if that is impossible, that he has done similar acts. You must also try to prove that it was to his advantage to commit these acts; for most men, themselves preferring what is to their advantage, think that others too always act from this motive. If, therefore, you can derive an argument of probability directly from your adversaries, this is the method by which you must infer it. Failing that, you must take similar persons and adduce their customary procedure; for example, when the man whom you are accusing is young, argue that he has committed acts such as persons of that age are in the habit of committing; for your accusations against him will be believed on the ground of this resemblance. Similarly you will gain credence if you can show that his companions have the character which you declare him to have; for owing to his association with them it will appear likely that he has the same pursuits as his friends. Such must be the employment of the argument from probabilities by those who are accusing.

Those who are speaking in their own defence must make it their chief object to show that none of the acts of which they are accused has ever been committed either by themselves or by any of their friends or by any person who resembles them, and that it was of no advantage to them to commit such acts. But if you have manifestly done the same deed on a previous occasion, the fault must be attributed to your youth, or some other excuse must be introduced to provide a reasonable pretext for your having done wrong on that occasion. You must declare also that it was of no benefit to you to have acted thus at the time and that it would not have been of any advantage to you now. If no act of the
1429a kind alleged has ever been committed by you, but some of your friends happen to have done such deeds, you must

plead that it is not just that you should be slandered because of them, and you must show that others of your associates are honest men; you will thus throw doubt on the crime of which you are accused. If they point out that other persons, who resemble you, have committed the same crimes as they allege against you, you must declare that it is absurd if the fact that other people can be shown to have done wrong is to be regarded as a proof that you have committed any of the deeds of which you are accused. If, then, you deny that you have done the deed with which you are charged, you must thus make your defence by arguing from probabilities; for you will then make the charge appear improbable. If, however, you are obliged to admit the charge, you must point out the resemblance of your acts to the usual practice of mankind, by stating as emphatically as possible that the majority of men, nay all men, act under these and similar circumstances exactly as you have done. If you cannot do this, you must take refuge in pleas of misfortune or error, and try to obtain pardon by citing the passions which are common to all mankind and make us lose our reason—love, anger, drunkenness, ambition, and the like. Such is the method by which we shall make the most skilful use of the argument from probability.

8 Examples are actions which have taken place in the past and are similar to, or the contrary of, those about which we are speaking. They must be used when your statement is not credible and you wish to establish its truth when it does not gain credence from the argument of probability; the object being that your hearers, learning that another action similar to that of which you are speaking has been carried out in the way in which you declare it to have been done, may be more ready to believe what you say.

Examples are of two kinds; for some things turn out according to our expectations, others contrary to them. The former cause credit, the latter discredit. For instance, if some one declares that the rich are juster than the poor and instances certain just actions on the part of rich men, such examples are in accordance with our expectation,

for one can see that most men think that rich people are juster than poor people. If, on the other hand, some one shows that certain rich individuals have acted unjustly in order to get money, thus employing an example which is contrary to expectation, he would cause the rich to be distrusted. Similarly, if any one brings forward an example of what seems to be in accordance with our expectation—
1429b for instance, that on some occasion the Lacedaemonians or Athenians employing a large number of allies utterly defeated their enemies—he then disposes[1] his hearers to take to themselves many allies. Such examples are in accordance with our expectation,[2] for every one is of opinion that large numbers are of no small importance for winning a victory. If, on the other hand, a speaker wishes to prove that numbers do not bring victory, he must give as examples occasions when the unexpected has happened, pointing out, for instance, that the Athenian exiles first seized Phyle with fifty men and then fought a battle against the far more numerous party in the city, who had the Lacedaemonians as their allies, and were thus restored to their own city; or again, that the Thebans, when the Lacedaemonians and practically all the Peloponnesians invaded Boeotia, confronted them alone at Leuctra and conquered the might of the Lacedaemonians; or again, that Dio the Syracusan sailed to Syracuse with three thousand hoplites and defeated Dionysius, whose forces were many times as great; and likewise the Corinthians, when they went to the assistance of the Syracusans with nine triremes, defeated the Carthaginians,[3] although they were blockading the harbours of Syracuse with a hundred and fifty ships and held all the city except the acropolis. To sum the matter up, these and similar instances of unexpected successes often serve to discredit counsels which are based on ordinary probability. Such, then, is the nature of examples. Examples of both kinds must be employed, when we are

[1] Reading προτρέπει with A and B.

[2] Sp.-H. bracket this clause; if it is retained, τὸ πλῆθος, read by F²Ob, must be kept after πολέμοις in l. 5.

[3] This expedition under Timoleon in 341 B.C. is the latest in date of the various historical instances given in this treatise and is therefore of importance for fixing the date of the treatise.

urging what may be reasonably expected to happen, in order to show that the suggested course of action usually turns out in a particular way; and, when we are predicting some unexpected result, in order to give instances in which satisfactory results have accrued where they seemed to be least expected. If your adversaries use this device,[1] you must show that their instances were the results of good luck, and declare that such things happen rarely, whereas your examples are of common occurrence. This, then, is the method of employing examples. If, on the other hand, we wish to cite instances where the unexpected has happened, we must collect as many of them as possible and show by enumeration that the unexpected happens quite as often as the expected. We must use not only examples derived in this way but also those based on contraries. For instance, you can show that a certain state has acted selfishly towards its allies and that their friendship has thus been dissolved, and then say, 'We on the other hand, if we behave fairly and impartially towards our allies, shall keep their alliance for a long time'; or again, you can show that certain others have gone to war without due preparation and have consequently been defeated, and then say, 'If we were to go to war properly prepared, we should have better hopes of success.' You will be able to derive a number of examples from past and from present events; for actions are generally partly like and partly unlike one another. For this reason therefore we shall have no lack of examples and no difficulty in contradicting those brought forward by the other side. We now know the different kinds of examples and how we are to employ them and whence we are to derive them in abundance.

9 Infallible Signs exist where the direct contrary of that with which the speech is concerned has occurred, and where the speech is self-contradictory. For most listeners conclude from the contraries which occur in connexion with a speech or action that there is nothing sound in what is being said or done. You will often discover infallible signs

[1] The punctuation λέγωσι τοῦτο, χρὴ seems to be demanded by the sense here.

by considering whether your adversary's speech is self-contradictory or whether his action itself contradicts his words. Such is the nature of infallible signs and the method by which you will obtain the greatest number of them.

Enthymemes arise where contraries occur not only of **10** the speech and action in question but of anything else as well. You will often discover them by pursuing the method prescribed for the oratory of inquiry [1] and by considering whether the speech is self-contradictory in any respect, or whether what has been done is contrary to justice or law or expediency, or to what is honourable, practicable, easy, or probable, or to the character of the speaker or the nature of the circumstances. Such are the enthymemes which must be chosen for use against our adversaries. The contraries of these must be employed on our own behalf, and we must prove that our actions and words are the contrary of those which are unjust, unlawful, inexpedient, and of the habits of wicked men—in a word, of those things which are considered evil. We must speak in support of each of these pleas as briefly as possible and express ourselves in the fewest possible words. This then is the way in which we shall obtain a large number of enthymemes and the best method of employing them.

A Maxim is, briefly, the expression of an individual **11** 1430ᵇ opinion on general matters.[2] There are two kinds of maxims, those which agree with current opinion and those which are paradoxical. When you are using the former, there is no need to bring forward any reasons for your statement, for what you say is well known and does not excite incredulity. But when you are uttering a paradox, you must state your reasons [3] briefly, so as to avoid prolixity and not arouse incredulity. The maxims which you quote must be applicable to the circumstances, in order that your words may not seem inept and far-fetched. We shall form a large number of maxims either from the peculiar nature of the circumstances or by means of hyperbole or by drawing

[1] Cp. 1427ᵇ 17 ff. [2] Cp. *Rhet.* 1394ª 21–3.
[3] Cp. *Rhet.* 1394ᵇ 8–10, 27 ff.

parallels. The following are examples of maxims derived from the peculiar circumstances of a case: 'I do not regard it as possible for a man to become a clever general if he is without experience in affairs'; or again, 'It is characteristic of sensible men to profit by the examples of their predecessors and so try to avoid the errors of evil counsel.' Such then are the maxims which we shall form from the peculiar circumstances of a case. Maxims such as the following are formed by hyperbole: 'Thieves are in my opinion worse than plunderers; for the former carry off property secretly, the latter openly.' By this method we shall form a number of maxims by hyperbole. The following are maxims based on parallels: 'Those who appropriate money seem to me to act very like those who betray cities; for both are trusted and wrong those who have trusted them'; or again, 'My opponents seem to me to act very like tyrants; for tyrants claim not to be punished for the wrongs which they have themselves inflicted, while they demand the fullest punishment for the wrongs of which they accuse others; and my adversaries, if they have themselves something which belongs to me, do not restore it, while, if I have received something which belongs to them, they think that they ought to have it restored to them and the interest on it as well.' By following this method then we shall form a number of maxims.

12 One thing is a Sign[1] of another thing, but one thing taken at random is not a sign of something else taken at random, nor is everything a sign of everything else; but the sign of a thing is that which usually occurs before, or simultaneously with, or after it. That which has happened is a sign not only of what has happened but also of what has not happened; and similarly what has not happened is a sign not only of what does not exist but also of what does exist. One sign causes belief, another knowledge; the latter is the best kind of sign, while that which produces the most plausible opinion is second best. To put the matter briefly,

[1] i.e. a *fallible* sign as opposed to τεκμήριον, an infallible sign, cp. *Rhet.* 1357b 1–5, 10 ff.

we shall obtain an abundance of signs from anything which has been done or is said or seen, taking each separately, and also from the greatness or smallness of the resultant disad-
1431a vantages or advantages. We shall also derive them from testimonies and evidence [1] and from our own supporters or those of our enemies, or from our enemies themselves; also from the challenges issued by the parties and from times and seasons and from many other things. From these sources then we shall have an abundance of signs.

13 A Refutation is that which cannot be otherwise than as we say it is. It is based on what is by nature necessary, or necessary as urged by us, and on what is impossible by nature or impossible as urged by our adversaries. An example of something which is naturally necessary is the statement that 'living creatures require food', and the like. What is necessary as urged by us is such a statement as that 'those who are scourged confess what their tormentors tell them to confess'. Again, an instance of what is naturally impossible is the statement that 'a small child stole a sum of money, which he could not possibly carry, and went off with it'. It will be an impossibility as urged by an adversary, if, for example, he declares that on a certain date we made a contract at Athens, whereas we can prove to our hearers that at that time we were absent in some other city. It is from these and similar materials that we shall form our refutations.

We have now briefly described all the proofs which are derived from actual words and from acts and from persons. Let us now consider how they differ from one another.

14 A probability differs from an example in this, that the hearers have themselves some notion of the probability, while examples ⟨are supplied from our own experience. Examples differ from infallible signs because they [2]⟩ can be derived from contraries and from similars, while infallible

[1] Either καὶ ἐκ τῶν μαρτυριῶν or καὶ ἐκ τῶν μαρτυρουμένων should probably be deleted; Spengel suggests μαρτύρων for μαρτυριῶν.

[2] Sauppe first indicated a lacuna here: Spengel supplies παρ' ἡμῶν εἰσφέρομεν. τὰ δὲ παραδείγματα διαφέρει τῶν τεκμηρίων ὅτι τὰ μὲν παραδείγματα.

signs can only be constructed from contrarieties of word and deed. Again, an enthymeme always has this distinction from an infallible sign, that an infallible sign is a contrariety which is concerned with a word or an action, while an enthymeme selects also contrarieties connected with other kinds of things; in other words, it is impossible for us to obtain an infallible sign unless there is some contrariety in respect of actions or words, whereas speakers can provide themselves with enthymemes from a variety of sources. Maxims differ from enthymemes in that enthymemes can be constructed only from contrarieties, whereas maxims can be enunciated both in connexion with contrarieties and also by themselves. Signs differ from maxims and all the other proofs already mentioned, because, while all the others engender an opinion in the minds of those who hear them, certain of the signs cause those who judge to have a clear knowledge; also because it is impossible for us ourselves to provide most of the other proofs, while it is easy to obtain a large number of signs. Further, a refutation differs from a sign, because some signs cause those who hear them merely to entertain an opinion, whereas every refutation teaches the truth to the judges. Thus from what has been said we know the nature of the proofs which concern words and actions, and the sources from which we are to derive them, and how they differ from one another.

Let us next deal with each of the supplementary proofs. The opinion of a speaker is the declaration of his own belief about things. He ought to show himself to be experienced in the matters about which he is speaking, and point out that it is to his advantage to tell the truth concerning them. One who is contradicting ought first and foremost to show that his adversary has no experience of the matters on which he is nevertheless giving his opinion;[1] if however that is impossible, he ought to show that even persons of experience often make mistakes; and if this is inadmissible, he must say that it is contrary to the advantage of his opponents to tell the truth about these matters. Such is the use which we shall make of opinions expressed by

[1] Reading *περὶ ὧν ἀποφαίνεται τὴν δόξαν ὅμως.*

speakers, both when we are ourselves expressing them and when we are contradicting others.

Testimony is a confession made voluntarily by one who knows. That which is testified must be either likely or unlikely or of doubtful credit: similarly the witness must be trustworthy or untrustworthy or of doubtful good faith. When therefore the evidence is likely and the witness truthful, the testimony needs no further support, unless you wish briefly to introduce a maxim or enthymeme for adornment's sake. But when the witness is under suspicion, you must prove that such a person would not give false evidence to show gratitude or from motives of revenge or gain. You must also make it clear that it is not to his advantage to bear false witness; for the benefits which he gains, you will urge, are small, while detection is a serious matter, and, if he is found out, the laws punish him not only by fining him but also by damaging his reputation and destroying his credit. By these methods then we shall cause witnesses to be believed.

When we are contradicting evidence, we must cast prejudice on the character of the witness, if he is a bad man, or inquire into the evidence, if it is improbable, or else contradict both the witness and the evidence by bringing together all that is most discreditable to our adversaries. We must also consider whether the witness is a friend to him for whom he is giving evidence, or whether he can in any way be associated with his deed, or whether he is an enemy of the man against whom he is bearing witness,[1] or whether he is poor. For such men are under suspicion of bearing false witness either to show favour or from motives of revenge or for gain. We shall also say that the legislator laid down the law about false testimony to apply to persons of this kind and that it is absurd that, whereas the legislator did not trust witnesses, those should believe them who are sitting in judgement after having sworn to judge according to the laws. By these methods then we shall cause witnesses to be discredited.

It is possible also to disguise evidence by a proceeding

[1] Cp. *Rhet.* 1376a 30.

such as the following: 'Bear witness', you say, 'in my favour, Callicles'—'By the gods, I will not,' he replies, 'for the accused committed these crimes, though I tried to prevent him.' In this way, though he has given false evidence in his refusal, he will not be liable to punishment as a false witness. This then is the way in which we shall treat evidence, when it is to our advantage to disguise it. If our opponents try to do anything of this kind, we shall expose their wickedness and order them to give their evidence in writing. With these instructions then before us we know how to deal with witnesses and evidence.

16 Evidence given under torture is a confession on the part of one who knows but is unwilling to state what he knows. When therefore it is to our interest to strengthen such evidence, we must say that individuals take their proofs from evidence under torture in their most serious affairs, and cities in their most important business, and that evidence under torture is more trustworthy than ordinary testimony.[1] For it is often to the interest of witnesses to lie; but those who are under torture gain by telling the truth, for doing so will bring them the speediest relief from their sufferings.

When you wish to discredit evidence given under torture, you must say in the first place that slaves who are being tortured become hostile to those who have delivered them up to be tortured and for this reason tell many lies against their masters. Secondly, you must say that they often make confessions to their torturers which are not the truth, in order to end their torments as quickly as possible.[2] You must also point out that even free men have often before now lied against themselves under torture to escape the suffering of the moment; it is therefore much more likely that slaves should wish to avoid punishment by lying against their masters, rather than, when they are enduring great bodily and mental pain, deliberately refuse to utter a falsehood in order to save other people from suffering. By these and similar arguments we shall cause evidence given under torture to be believed or disbelieved.

[1] Cp. *Rhet.* 1376ᵇ 34 ff. [2] Cp. *Rhet.* 1377ª 3–6.

An Oath is an affirmation without proof accompanied by an invocation of the gods. When we wish to amplify the power of an oath[1] we must say that no one would desire to commit perjury, because he would fear punishment from heaven and disgrace in the eyes of men; we must also point out that, while it is possible to escape the notice of men, it is impossible to elude the gods. When our opponents take refuge in an oath and we wish to belittle it, we must point out that those who do evil deeds are the very men who do not scruple to commit perjury; for a man who thinks that the gods take no notice of him when he does wrong, also thinks that he will not be punished even if he forswears himself. By pursuing a method such as the above in the matter of oaths we shall have no lack of material about them. **17**

We have now briefly carried out our purpose of dealing with all the various kinds of proof and have shown not only the force of each of them, but also how they differ from one another and how they ought to be employed. We will now proceed to explain the other expedients[2] which belong to all three[3] kinds of oratory and are useful in speeches of every kind.

Anticipation is the method by which we shall counteract the ill-feeling which is felt against us by anticipating the adverse criticisms of our audience and the arguments of those who are going to speak against us. We shall anticipate the criticisms of our audience by such a statement as, 'Perhaps some of you are astonished that, young as I am, I attempt thus to speak in public on important matters'; or again, 'Let no one oppose me through resentment, because I am going to offer you advice on subjects about which certain other people hesitate to speak openly before you.' In matters then which are likely to annoy your hearers you must by anticipations of this kind bring forward reasons, which will show that you are justified in offering advice, **18**

[1] Reading with Spengel *ὅταν μὲν αὐτόν.*

[2] i. e. the four *σχήματα*: *προκατάληψις, αἰτήματα, παλιλλογία, εἰρωνεία.* Cp. 1428a 8, 1439a 34 and note.

[3] Reading with all MSS. *τριῶν*, which was emended by Spengel to *ἑπτὰ* in order to support his ascription of the treatise to Anaximenes; see note on 1421b 7–9.

pointing out the dearth of public speakers or the greatness of the dangers or the public expediency, or giving some other such reason whereby you will remove the ill-feeling which threatens you. If your audience still cries out just as much against you, you must address them briefly in the form of a maxim or enthymeme, saying, for example, that[1] it is absolutely absurd that they should have come together to take the best counsel about the political situation and then think that they can take good counsel without deigning to hear what the speakers have to say; or again, you may say that it is only fair that they should either themselves get up and offer some advice, or else listen to those who have advice to offer, and then vote in favour of any course that recommends itself to them. Such must be the method of employing anticipation in public speaking, and this is how outcries must be faced.

In forensic speeches we shall use similar methods of anticipation to the above. If an outcry is raised against us at an early stage of the proceedings, we shall meet it in this manner: 'Is it not absurd that, while the legislator ordained that each party should be allowed to speak twice, you who are sitting in judgement upon us should have sworn to pass sentence according to the law, and then refuse even to listen to a single speech? And that, while he took such measures to secure that you should give your vote in accordance with your oath after hearing all that was to be said, you should be so indifferent to his injunctions that, without even listening to the beginnings of the speeches, you already think that you know all the facts perfectly?' Or you can put the matter differently and say, 'How absurd it is that the lawgiver should have ordained that, if the votes were equal, the defendant should win the case, whereas you hold so strongly to the contrary opinion that you do not even listen to the defence offered by those who have been slandered; and that, whereas he granted this advantage in the voting to defendants because they run greater risks, you, while you show no hostility towards the accusers who run no risks, alarm by these outcries those who in terror and danger are defending

[1] Reading διότι, suggested by Bekker, for διό.

themselves from the charges brought against them.' Such must be your method of meeting those who raise an outcry against you at the beginning of your speech. If they interrupt you when your speech is well advanced, then, if those who do so are few in number, you must rebuke them and tell them that it is only just that they should listen to you at the moment, in order that they may not prevent the rest from forming a correct judgement, and that, when they have heard you, then they can do what they please. If the majority raises an outcry against you, you should blame yourself and not your judges; for, if you find fault with them, you only make them angry, whereas, if you blame yourself and say [1] that you are in the wrong, you will gain their pardon. You must also beg your judges to give a favourable ear to your speech and not at this early stage to show what view they take about the facts on which they are to give their secret vote. In general, we shall meet interruptions in a summary manner with maxims and enthymemes, pointing out that our interrupters are setting themselves in opposition to justice or the laws or the interests of the city or what is honourable; for such methods as these are best calculated to make one's hearers stop interrupting. We now know from what has been said above how to employ anticipations in dealing with an audience and how to meet interruptions.

I will next show you how to anticipate what is likely to be said by one's opponents. You can say: 'Perhaps he will bewail his poverty, which is not my fault but has been caused by his own way of life'; or again, 'I hear that he intends to say such and such a thing.' If we are speaking first, we must thus anticipate what our opponents are likely to say and so destroy and invalidate their pleas. For even though the arguments which you forestall and discredit are quite forcible, they will appear much less weighty to those who have already heard them.

If we are speaking after our opponents and they have 1433[b] anticipated what we intend to say, it is necessary to counteract their anticipations and destroy them by speaking as

[1] Omitting ἐν τῷ λέγειν with Spengel.

follows, 'My opponent has not only told you many lies to my discredit, but further, well knowing that I shall refute his charges, he has anticipated my plea and discredited it beforehand, in order that you may not give it the attention which you otherwise would, or else that I may not employ it at all, because it has already been torn to pieces by him. I hold, however, that you ought to hear my arguments from my own lips, not from his, even if he has tried to tear my arguments to pieces by saying things which I declare to be a strong sign that he has no sound plea to offer.' Euripides has made a clever use of this device in the following lines of his Philoctetes:

> E'en though he thinks to have destroyed my pleas
> Escaping charge of wrong, yet will I speak;
> From mine own lips mine arguments shall come,
> Let his words show what kind of man he is.[1]

We know then from the above how to make use of anticipations in relation both to our judges and to our opponents.

19 Postulates in oratory are the demands which speakers make from their hearers. Some of them are just, others unjust. It is just to ask that they should listen to what you are saying and lend a favourable ear. It is also a just demand that they should give one the assistance which the laws allow and never vote against the laws and that they should make allowances for misfortunes. Any demand which is contrary to the law is unjust, otherwise it is just.[2] Such are the postulates. We have distinguished their different kinds in order that, knowing the just from the unjust, we may use them on the right occasion, and that it may not escape our notice if our adversaries make any unjust demand from the judges. From what has been said we shall have an adequate knowledge on this subject.

20 Iteration is a means of briefly reminding one's hearers. It must be employed both at the conclusion of a division of a speech and at the final conclusion. In recapitulating we use iteration in the form either of a division or of the

[1] Fr. 794 (Nauck). [2] Spengel deletes the words *ἐὰν δὲ μή, δίκαιον.*

themselves from the charges l [illegible] questions
must be your method of meeti[illegible] nature each
against you at the beginnin[illegible] its use in the
interrupt you when your sp[illegible] men would
those who do so are few in n[illegible] us long ago
and tell them that it is only [illegible] our city and
you at the moment, in order [illegible] promises.' Such is
rest from forming a correct [illegible] can be used as
have heard you, then they c[illegible] have shown that
majority raises an outcry [illegible] alliance and the
yourself and not your juc[illegible] with the Lacedae-
them, you only make th[illegible] most eagerness to
yourself and say [1] that y[illegible] of iteration in an
their pardon. You mu[illegible] ample of its use in
favourable ear to your s[illegible] m of recommending
show what view they ta[illegible] remember that ever
to give their secret vot[illegible] with these men we have
ruptions in a summar[illegible] nds of our enemies.
memes, pointing out th[illegible] prevented the Lacedae-
selves in opposition to [illegible] territory, and they have
the city or what is hon[illegible] large sums of money.'
best calculated to m[illegible] by recommending a
We now know from wi[illegible] llowing is an instance of
anticipations in deal[illegible]: 'I should like to hear
interruptions. [illegible] do not pay us the tribute
I will next show [illegible] have the face to say that
be said by one's o[illegible] they can be shown to be
bewail his povert[illegible] annually from their land,
caused by his ov[illegible] they spend much on the
intends to say su[illegible] for they clearly spend less than
first, we must th[illegible] Such will be our use of iteration
to say and so d[illegible]
though the arg[illegible]
quite forcible, [illegible]
who have alre[illegible] and pretend that you are not 2
If we are [illegible] things by the names of their
anticipated w[illegible] the following form in a brief
act their ant[illegible] been said: 'I think that I
men, who pretend that they have
are shown to have done it

harm, whereas we, whom they declare to be ungrateful, known to have often helped them and never to have done me any injury.' Such is the way briefly to remind your of something under the pretence of omitting it. Thirdly, the following is an instance of calling things by contrary names: 'These noble citizens have clearly done great harm to their allies, while we worthless mortals have obviously been the cause of many benefits to them.' In this way we shall briefly remind our hearers and employ recapitulation at the end of the divisions of our speeches and at their final conclusion.

We will next explain how one can speak pleasingly and prolong a speech to the length which one desires.

We can speak pleasingly in the following manner, by introducing, for example, whole enthymemes or half of one in such a way that our audience can guess the other half; we must also include maxims. To some of these we must give a place in every division of the speech, but the actual words must be varied and a similar phrase must never be applied repeatedly in the same connexion. In this way your speech will have a pleasing effect.

When you wish to lengthen your speech, you must divide 1434b up your subject and in each division explain the nature of its contents and their particular and general application and state the grounds of your pleas. If we wish to make our discourse still longer, we must employ a number of words in dealing with each topic. In each division of the speech you must iterate and make your iteration brief; while at the conclusion of your speech you ought to recapitulate as a whole all that you have dealt with in detail, and treat the subject generally. In this way your speech will be of a sufficient length.

If you wish to speak briefly, you should include your whole subject in a single word and that word the shortest which is applicable to the subject. You must also employ few conjunctive particles and connect as many things as possible together.[1] Such must be your choice of words; you must

[1] Cp. *Rhet.* 1407b 38 f., where the example given is πορευθεὶς διελέχθην.

make your language serve a double purpose,[1] and you must do away with the brief iterations in the separate divisions of the speech and only employ iteration in your final conclusion. This is the way in which we shall make our speeches brief.

If you wish to speak at moderate length, you must pick out the most important divisions of your speech and make them your subject. You must also use words of medium length and not the longest or the shortest, and not employ a large number on a single topic but observe moderation. You must neither on the one hand do away entirely with conclusions in the intermediate parts of your speech, nor on the other hand introduce them in every division; but you must make special iterations at the end of those parts to which you wish your audience to pay particular attention. On these principles, then, we shall regulate the length of our speeches, whenever we wish to do so.

If you wish to compose a speech which will be pleasing, you must take care as far as possible to adapt the character of your speech to that of your audience. You will achieve this, if you observe their character, whether noble or petty or ordinary.

On these points, then, you will have adequate knowledge from what has been said above. We will now treat of the putting together of words; for this too is essential.

23 In the first place, then, words are of three kinds, simple, composite, and metaphorical.

Similarly there are three ways in which words can be put together: firstly, you can end one syllable with a vowel and begin the next with a vowel; secondly, you can begin a word with a consonant and end the previous word with a consonant; thirdly, you can put consonants and vowels in juxtaposition.

There are four orders in which words can be arranged.[2]

[1] ib. 36, where the example is *τῆς ἡμετέρας γυναικός* in preference to *τῆς γυναικὸς τῆς ἡμετέρας*.

[2] *τάξεις* is strange here, since 'describing a thing in one or many words' cannot be called any kind of 'order' or 'arrangement', which is certainly the sense of *τάττειν* in 1438[b] 14 ff.

First, you can either put similar words side by side or else disperse them; or again, you can use the same words or else change them into others; thirdly, you can describe a thing in one or many words; fourthly, you can name in their proper order the subjects of which you have undertaken to treat, or else transpose them.

I will next show what is the best method of statement which you can employ.

24 First of all, you must make your statement by means of a twofold division, and, secondly, you must discourse lucidly. The following are the various forms of this twofold division. First, one can say that one can oneself do one thing and another; secondly, that this man cannot do a certain thing, but that man can; thirdly, that this man can do a certain thing and something else; fourthly, that neither can one do a certain thing oneself nor can any one else do it; fifthly, that one cannot do a certain thing oneself, but that some one else can;[1] sixthly, that one can do one thing oneself, but the other person cannot do something else. You can see each of these cases in the following examples. An illustration of the case where one can oneself do one thing and another is: 'I have not only achieved this for you, but also, when Timotheus intended to make an expedition against you, I prevented him.' The following is an example of the case where one man cannot do a thing but another man can: 'This man then is unable to go himself on an embassy for you, but here is a man who is a friend of the Spartan state and would be better able than any one else to carry out the negotiations which you wish carried out.' The case where a man can do a certain thing and something else as well can be thus illustrated: 'Not only has he proved himself a strong man in war, but he can also give as good advice as any other citizen.' The following is a case where one cannot oneself do a thing and nobody else can: 'Having but a small force I cannot[2] myself conquer our adversaries,

[1] Reading *ὅτι αὐτὸς μὲν οὐ δύναται, ἕτερος δὲ δύναται* (W. D. R.), cp. below, ll. 24-6.

[2] *δυνηθείην* (Spengel).

nor could any other citizen do so.' The following is an instance in which another man can do a thing, but one cannot do it oneself: 'Yes, he is physically strong, but I am weak.' The following is an illustration of the case where one can oneself do one thing, but some other person cannot do something else: 'I can steer, but this man cannot even pull an oar.' This then is how you will employ forms of twofold statement, following the same course in every subject. We must next consider how you are to treat your subject lucidly.

First, then, call anything of which you speak by its proper name, avoiding ambiguity. Take care not to put vowels next to one another.[1] Be careful to put the so-called 'articles' in the proper place. Consider how you put words together, so that there may be neither confusion nor transposition; for if your discourse has these qualities it is obscure. When you use an introductory particle, employ the corresponding particle afterwards. The following is an example of the use of a corresponding particle: 'I *indeed* (μέν) came to the place to which I said I would come, *but* (δέ) you, though you promised to come, did not do so'[2]; or again, when the same particle follows: 'You were *both* (καί) the cause of that *and* (καί) the cause of this.' So much for particles; from these examples you must infer the use of others.

Words must be put together so as to avoid confusion or transposition. The following is an example of such confusion: 'It is a terrible thing that this man should strike this man (τοῦτον τοῦτον τύπτειν).'[3] Here it is not clear which man struck the other; but you will make it clear if you say: 'It is a terrible thing that this man should be struck by this man (τοῦτον ὑπὸ τούτου τύπτεσθαι).' This is an example

[1] Professor Rhys Roberts suggests that the writer has in view cases of elision which give rise to ambiguity, such as Theognis 112, where μνῆμα δὲ χοῦσι or μνῆμα δ' ἔχουσι are possible.

[2] Cp. *Rhet.* 1407a 20–3.

[3] The confusion, which cannot be brought out in translation, is due to the fact that τοῦτον, τοῦτον are both accusative and it is not clear which is the subject and which the object of the infinitive. This passage is discussed by Professor Rhys Roberts in *C. R.* xxvi (1912), p. 177.

where there is a confusion in the arrangement of words. The following is an instance of care taken to put the article in the right place: 'This man (*οὗτος ὁ ἄνθρωπος*) is wronging this man (*τοῦτον τὸν ἄνθρωπον*).' In this case the insertion of the articles makes the diction clear, while their omission will make it obscure; the reverse is sometimes true. So much then for the articles.

Never put vowels in juxtaposition, unless it is impossible to make your meaning clear otherwise, or unless a breathing-space[1] or some other division occurs.

The following is a case where ambiguity must be avoided: the same words are sometimes used in several senses, for example we speak of a threshold (*ὀδός*) of a door and of a way (*ὁδός*) along which people walk; in such cases we must always add that which gives the word its distinctive meaning.

If we follow these rules we shall be clear in our use of words, and we shall make statements by means of the twofold method of division already described.

26 Let us now deal with 'antitheses', 'parisoses', and 'similarities';[2] for we shall need these also.

An 'antithesis'[3] occurs when both the wording and the sense, or one or other of them, are opposed in a contrast. The following would be an antithesis both of wording and sense: 'It is not fair that my opponent should become rich by possessing what belongs to me, while I sacrifice my property and become a mere beggar.' In the following sentence we have a merely verbal antithesis: 'Let the rich and prosperous give to the poor and needy;' and an antithesis of sense only in the following: 'I tended him when he was sick, but he has been the cause of very great misfortunes to me.' Here there is no verbal antithesis, but the two actions are contrasted. The double antithesis (that is, both of sense and of wording) would be the best to use: but the other two kinds are also true antitheses.

27 'Parisosis'[4] (parallelism of structure) occurs when a sentence has two equal 'members'. The equality can be

[1] Reading *ἀνάπνευσις* (*ἀνάπτυξις* MSS.).
[2] *ὁμοιότης* is here used for the more technical *παρομοίωσις*, cp. 1436ᵃ 5.
[3] Cp. *Rhet.* 1409ᵇ 32–1410ᵃ 23. [4] Cp. *Rhet.* 1410ᵃ 24.

that of many small to few great things, and an equality of
1436[a] magnitude can be united with an equality of number. 'Parisosis' takes a form such as the following, 'either through lack of resources or through the magnitude of the war'. These things are neither like nor opposed to one another, but merely equal to one another.

'Paromoeosis'[1] (parallelism of sound) goes further than 28
'parisosis'; for it makes the 'members' not only equal but also similar, being composed of similar words, in the following, for example: 'If you must imitate the wording, you should simulate the feeling.'[2] Above all you should make the last words similar; for this gives the closest similarity. Words are similar which have similar syllables, in which most of the letters are the same; for example, 'in numbers deficient, in might sufficient'. For whatever lies outside the scope of art, the inspiration of the moment will be your guide.

Enough then of these topics. For we are acquainted with the nature of the just, the lawful, the honourable, the expedient and the other qualities, and the sources from which we can derive them in abundance. Similarly we know the nature of amplifications and minimizations, and how we can provide them for our discourses. In like manner we are acquainted with the methods of anticipation, the postulates which we demand from our hearers, iterations, methods of pleasing, the means of regulating the length of our speeches, and all the ways of putting words together for purposes of statement. And so knowing from what has been said the qualities which are common to every kind of oratory and their uses, if we accustom and practise ourselves according to the prescribed preparatory exercises, we shall attain to great facility both in writing and speaking.

It is by taking the component parts separately that you can most accurately distinguish the methods of speaking. I will next treat of the manner in which the words must be organically arranged in the various kinds of oratory, and

[1] Cp. *Rhet.* 1410[a] 24.
[2] The text is corrupt, but something like this may be the meaning.

which parts must be put first and how they must be treated.

I deal therefore first with proems; for the proem is common to all seven kinds of oratory and it can be fittingly applied to all subjects.

29 The Proem[1] can be described in a general way as a preparation of one's audience and a declaration of the subject in a summary manner for the benefit of the ignorant, in order that they may know with what the speech is concerned and may follow the argument. It also exhorts them to pay attention and tries, as far as is possible in a speech, to influence their minds in our favour. Such is the preparation at which the proem must aim.

I will first show how the proem must be employed in public speaking and persuasive oratory. The following are examples of the way in which to lay your subject before your hearers and make it clear to them: 'I stand before you to advise that we should go to war on behalf of the Syracusans,' or, 'I stand before you to demonstrate the inadvisability of our helping the Syracusans.' This, then, is the way to summarize your subject. 1436b

We shall know how to exhort our hearers to pay attention, if we ourselves call to mind to what arguments and facts we pay most attention when deliberating. Do we not pay the closest attention when the subjects of deliberation are important or alarming or else nearly concern us; or when those who address us claim that they will show us that the measures which they are urging us to adopt are just and honourable and expedient and easy and honest; or when they beg us to listen with attention? Just as, therefore, we ourselves attend to others, so if we take those of the points above mentioned[2] which are most applicable to the subjects of which we are treating and lay them before our hearers, we shall make them attend to what we are saying. These, then, are the ways in which we exhort our hearers to pay attention.

[1] Cp. *Rhet.* 1414b 19–1415a 3.

[2] i. e. the importance, &c. (cp. l. 8), or the justness, &c. (cp. l. 9 f.), of the measure which we propose.

We shall secure their goodwill if we first consider what is in fact their attitude towards us, whether they are well or ill disposed or whether they are indifferent. If they are actually well disposed towards us, it is superfluous to talk about goodwill; if, however, we wish to talk about it at all, we must do so briefly, using 'irony'[1] in the following way: 'That I am well disposed towards the state, and that you have often acted expediently by following my advice, and that I observe a just attitude towards public affairs, preferring a personal sacrifice to reaping any advantage at the expense of the state,—these are, I think, statements which it is unnecessary for me to make to you who know well the truth of them. My efforts shall be directed rather to showing you that you will be well advised, if on this occasion too you follow my counsels.' This then is the method by which in a public speech you must remind those who are well disposed towards you of their goodwill.

When your hearers are neither prejudiced against you nor well disposed, you must say that it is right and expedient that they should give a favourable ear to those citizens who have not yet given a proof of their quality as speakers. You must then flatter your audience by praising them, saying that it is their custom to judge the speeches which they hear with fairness and discrimination. Further, you must employ minimization and say, 'I stand before you not through any confidence in my own cleverness, but because I think that the advice which I am about to offer is beneficial to the state.' By such methods you must secure the goodwill of those who are neither well nor ill disposed towards you.

If you are the object of misrepresentation, the misrepresentation must be connected with yourself or the subject on which you are speaking or your actual words. Misrepresentations of this kind can date either from the present or from the past. If then one is under suspicion of wrongdoing in the past, one must employ anticipation[2] in addressing one's audience and say: 'I am well aware that a prejudice exists against me, but I will prove that it is groundless.'

[1] Cp. 1434a 17 ff.

[2] Cp. 1432b 11 ff. Hammer's μή is a misprint for μέν.

You must then make a brief defence in your proem, if you have anything to say on your own behalf, or raise objections to the judgements which have been passed upon you. For whether you have been publicly or privately misrepresented, judgement must either have been passed upon you or be impending in the immediate future, or else those who have laid the charge against you are unwilling to submit the matter to judgement; and you must say that the judgement passed upon you was unfair and that you have been the victim of party plots. If this is impossible, you must say that your previous misfortunes were sufficient, and that it is only fair, now that the matter has been judged and done with, that no further prejudice should be raised against you on the same grounds. If you are expecting to have judgement passed upon you, you must say that you are ready to submit the misrepresentations now to the judgement of your present audience; adding that, if you are proved to have wronged the state, you consider yourself worthy of death. If your accusers do not press their charges against you, you must use this very fact as an indication that their misrepresentations of you are groundless; for it will seem hardly likely that those who are bringing true accusations against you can be unwilling to submit the matter to judgement. You must always denounce misrepresentation and declare it to be outrageous and universal and the cause of endless evil. You must also point out that many have before now been ruined through unjust misrepresentation. You must show moreover that it is foolish that men, when they are consulting about matters of public interest, should allow themselves to be disturbed by the misrepresentations of individuals instead of listening to the advice of all and then considering what true policy requires. You must also promise to prove that the advice which you have undertaken to give is just and expedient. Such then is the method which those who have been misrepresented in the past must adopt in public speaking in order to refute misrepresentation.

In reference to the present time the first thing which creates a prejudice against speakers is their age. If a man

who is quite young or quite old is speaking in public, his hearers feel annoyance; for they think that the former ought not yet to have begun to speak, while the latter ought before now to have ceased speaking. Secondly, a prejudice is created against a man, if he is a frequent speaker, for it looks as if he were a busybody; or again, against a man who has never spoken before, for it looks as if he had some private motive in thus speaking in public contrary to his usual custom. Such, then, are the ways in which prejudices in reference to the present are likely to be created against a public speaker.

Excuses must be made by a young man by urging the dearth of advisers and the special suitability of the
1437b speaker; for instance, if the question concerns the superintendence of the torch-races or the gymnasium or arms or horses or war—in such matters a young man has no small interest. He must also urge that, if he has not yet the wisdom of years, he has at any rate that wisdom which comes from natural endowments and diligent application. He should also point out that, whereas unsuccessful advice reflects only upon its unhappy proposer, the benefit conferred when the policy succeeds is shared by the whole community. Such then are the excuses which must be urged by a young man. Excuses must be made when an old man is speaking by pointing out the dearth of advisers and his extensive knowledge of the subject. Furthermore he may urge the magnitude and unusual character of the crisis and the like. When a man is in the habit of speaking too frequently, he may point to his wide experience and urge that it would be wrong that one who was formerly in the habit of speaking should not express his opinion on this occasion. One who is not in the habit of speaking must urge the magnitude of the crisis and that it is essential that every one who has a stake in the community should express his opinion on the present situation. Such then are the means by which we shall attempt to break down the prejudices raised against the persons of public speakers.

Prejudice is created against the subject matter of a speech when the speaker advises the rupture of peaceful

relations with[1] those from whom we have received no injury or who are stronger than we, or when he advises a discreditable peace or urges a reduction of the expenditure on sacrifices or makes some other such proposal. On such subjects, first, one should employ anticipation in addressing one's hearers; secondly, one ought to lay the blame upon necessity and fortune and the times and expediency, and say that it is not those who are giving advice but the circumstances which are to be blamed for such proposals. Such are the methods by which we shall free political speakers from prejudices which are due to their subject matter.

The actual speech in a public harangue creates a prejudice when it is too lengthy or old-fashioned, or lacks probability. If it be long, this must be attributed to the abundance of material; if it be old-fashioned, it must be pointed out that such a style is opportune at the moment; if it is improbable, you must promise that you will prove it to be true in the course of your oration. These then are the considerations which will have a place in our public speeches.

Next, what arrangement shall we employ? If there be no prejudice against either ourselves personally or our speech or our subject, we shall lay down our proposition at the very beginning, and we shall afterwards exhort our hearers to pay attention and give our words a favourable hearing. If any prejudice has been created against us in previous speeches, we shall anticipate the judgement of our audience and, after briefly defending and excusing ourselves from the prejudices thus caused, shall then state our proposition and exhort our hearers to give us their attention. This, then, is 1438a the way in which public speeches should be constituted.

30 Next we must either narrate events which have happened in the past or recall them to the minds of our hearers, or arrange under divisions and explain events which are occurring at the moment, or else predict what is likely to occur in the future. When therefore we are reporting the details

[1] Reading, as Prof. Rhys Roberts suggests, *συμβουλεί(η λύ)ειν.* (CMOP all read *συμβουλεύειν.*)

of an embassy, we must make a lucid statement of everything that was said, in order that our speech may carry weight (for it will be a report and nothing else, and no other style will find its way in); next, if we have been unsuccessful, our object will be to make our hearers think that the failure of the negotiations was due to some other cause and not to our negligence; whereas, if we have met with success, they must be made to suppose that the result has been due not to chance but to our zealous efforts. This they are ready to believe, if, not having been present at the negotiations, they observe the zeal displayed in our speech in omitting nothing but accurately reporting every detail. So, when we are describing the results of an embassy, we must for the reasons which I have stated report everything just as it happened.

When we are ourselves describing in a public speech some past event or explaining the events of the moment or predicting what will happen in the future, we must do each of these things briefly, clearly, and convincingly. We must be clear, in order that our hearers may grasp the events which we are describing, and concise, in order that they may remember what we have said; and we must speak convincingly, in order that they may not reject our statements before we have supported them with proofs and justifications.

The clearness of our explanations will be due to the words which we use or to our facts; to the latter, if we do not present them in an inverted order, but mention first those which have occurred or are occurring or are going to occur first, and arrange the subsequent events in their proper order, and do not desert the subject about which we have undertaken to speak, and deal with some other subject. Thus, then, we shall speak clearly as far as our facts are concerned. Our actual words will be clear, if we describe actions as far as possible in words which are appropriate to them, and if we employ usual words and do not put them in an inverted order but always arrange together those which naturally follow one another. If we observe these rules, our narrative will be clear.

We shall be concise if we omit all facts and words the mention of which is not essential, keeping only those the omission of which will render our speech obscure. Our narrative will then be concise.

We shall speak convincingly if, in support of facts which are improbable, we bring forward reasons which will make the events which we describe seem likely to have taken place. We must omit anything the occurrence of which seems too improbable. If you are obliged to mention such things, you must make it clear that you have definite knowledge of them, and you must pass lightly over them, weaving them into your speech by the figure of 'pretended omission',[1] and promise to show their truth as your speech progresses, making the excuse that you wish first to demonstrate the truth or justice (or the like) of your previous statements. This is the way in which we shall remedy incredulity in our hearers.

In a word, by employing all the above-mentioned devices we shall make our reports, expositions, and predictions clear, brief, and convincing.

31 There are three different methods in which we shall arrange them. If the actions about which we are speaking are few in number and well known to our audience, we shall include the narration of them in our proem, in order that this part of our speech may not in itself be too short. If the actions which we are recounting are too numerous and not familiar to our audience, we shall present them in every case in a connected form and show that they are just, expedient, and honourable, in order that we may not only make our tale plain and unembellished by simply relating facts but may also win the attention of our hearers. If the facts which we are recounting are unimportant and unfamiliar, we ought to insert the report or exposition or prediction of them bodily in the proem. This we shall do by recounting them from beginning to end and including nothing extraneous but merely relating the bare facts. We shall thus know how to arrange narratives of facts in our proem.

[1] Cp. 1434a 19–25.

Next comes confirmation, whereby we confirm that the 32
facts which we have already mentioned are of the nature of which we have undertaken to prove them to be, by adducing proofs and by considerations of justice and expediency. When therefore you include them in your speech, the proofs which are best suited to public orations are those based on the customary course of events and examples and supplementary enthymemes and the opinion of the orator; but any other proofs which present themselves may also be employed. They must be arranged in the following way: first, the opinion of the orator must be mentioned, or, if that is not done, the customary course of events must be indicated, showing that what we are asserting, or something similar, is what usually occurs. Following on this we must cite examples, and any point of similarity must be introduced to support what we are saying. The examples which we take must be closely akin to our subject and the nearest in time or place to our hearers. In the absence of such examples we must employ the most striking and best known that we can find. Next we must cite maxims. Also, in the parts where we introduce probabilities and examples we must end with enthymemes and maxims. This is the manner then in which we must introduce proofs where facts are concerned.

If our statements of facts are believed as soon as they are made, we must omit all proofs and confirm the facts which we have already stated by appeals to justice and lawfulness and expediency and considerations of what is honourable, pleasant, easy, possible, or necessary. Where an appeal to justice is possible, it must be given the first place, and we must explain our statements in relation to justice or a resemblance to justice [1] or its contrary [2] or what has been judged to be just.[3] You must also cite examples similar to the cases of justice which you are instancing. You will also be able to produce numerous examples of what is regarded as just under special circumstances [4] and in the actual city in which your speech is made, and in other

[1] Cp. 1422a 28 ff. [2] Cp. *ib.* 34 ft. [3] Cp. *ib.* 38 ff.
[4] For this meaning of *ἰδίᾳ* cp. 1421b 3.

states. When, following this method, we have said what we have to say, adding at the end maxims and brief enthymemes of different kinds, if this division of our speech is long and we wish it to be remembered by our hearers, we shall give a concise iteration; if, however, it is short and still fresh in their memory, we shall bring the division itself to a close and begin another one. The following is an example of what I mean: 'In what I have already said I think that the justice of our helping the Syracusans has been sufficiently demonstrated; I will now attempt to show the expediency of our doing so.' You will next treat the question of expediency by a similar method to that which we employed above in the case of justice, and at the end of that division add an iteration or definite conclusion, and then bring forward some other considerations with which you have to deal. This is the way in which you must connect one division with another and keep up the thread of your speech. When you have employed every possible means to enforce your advice, you must in addition to all this show in a summary manner with the help of enthymemes and maxims or figures[1] that it is unjust and inexpedient and dishonourable and unpleasant not to adopt your suggestion, and in a summary way you must contrast with this the justice, expediency, honourableness, and pleasure of doing what you are recommending. When you have made a sufficient use of maxims, you must end your exhortations with a definite conclusion. This then is the way in which we shall confirm the proposals which we make. The next 1439b division of our treatise will be concerned with the anticipation of contrary arguments.

33 Anticipation is the method by which you anticipate and demolish the objections which can be brought against your speech. You must minimize the arguments of your opponents and amplify your own, as you have already learnt to do from the instructions about amplification.[2] You must set a single argument against another when yours is the

[1] i. e. the four rhetorical 'figures' *προκατάληψις, αἰτήματα, παλιλλογία, εἰρωνεία.*

[2] Cp. 1432b 11 ff.

stronger, and several against several and one against many and many against one, using every possible kind of contrast, and magnify your own arguments and weaken and minimize those of your adversaries. This is the manner in which we shall employ anticipations. Having done this we shall conclude with an iteration using the forms of argument or enumeration or recommendation of a certain course or questioning or irony which we have already mentioned.[1]

If we are urging that help should be given to some 34 one, whether to private individuals or to states, it will be fitting briefly to mention any friendship or cause for gratitude or pity which already exists between them and the assembly which you are addressing. For they are most willing to help those who stand in such relations to them. All men feel an affection for those from whom, or from whose friends, they think they themselves, or those for whom they care, have received or are receiving or are going to receive some deserved kindness. They feel gratitude towards those from whom, or from whose friends, they think they themselves or those for whom they care have received, are receiving, or will receive some undeserved benefit. If any feelings of this kind are present in their minds, we must briefly dwell upon them and so move our hearers to pity. We shall have no difficulty in arousing as much pity as we wish, if we realize that all men pity those whom they suppose to be closely connected with themselves or think to be unworthy to suffer misfortune. You must prove that this is the condition of those for whom you wish to excite pity, and show that they either have been or are in an evil plight, or will be so unless your hearers assist them. If this is not possible, you must show that those on whose behalf you are speaking have been deprived of advantages which all or most other people enjoy, or else have been or are without some advantage, or never will obtain it unless those whom you are addressing take pity on them now. These are the ways in which we shall incline our audience to pity.

In dissuasion we shall employ the contrary method, using

[1] Cp. 1433[b] 31 ff.

the same kind of proem and narrating the facts and giving the proofs and showing our hearers that what they are attempting to do is unlawful, unjust, inexpedient, disgraceful, unpleasant, impracticable, burdensome, and unnecessary. The arrangement of our speech will be similar to that used in persuasion. Such, then, is the way in which those who are employing dissuasion on their own account must arrange their speech. 1440a

Those who are opposing the advice given by others must in the first place state in their proem the views which they intend to oppose and then add one by one the other parts of the proem. After the proem the speaker must first bring forward separately each of the points in the previous speech and show that the recommendations of his adversary are not just or lawful or expedient or the like. This you will do by proving that what he says is unjust or inexpedient or bears a resemblance to injustice or inexpediency, or is the opposite of the just or expedient or what has been judged to be so. You must treat the other points in a similar manner. This, then, is the most effective method of dissuasion. If this course is impossible, you must try to dissuade your audience by taking some point which your adversary has omitted: for example, if he has shown that a certain course is just, you must attempt to prove that it is discreditable or inexpedient or toilsome or impracticable or whatever else you can; or if he has expediency on his side, you must show that his suggestion is unjust and whatever else you can as well. You must amplify your own contentions and minimize those of your adversary, employing the method already prescribed for persuasive oratory. You must also introduce maxims and enthymemes, as in persuasion, and refute anticipations, and in conclusion employ iteration.

In addition to this we must show, when we are seeking to persuade our hearers, that friendship exists between them and those whom we are urging them to help, and that they owe a debt of gratitude to those who are asking for their assistance; but when we are trying to prevent help from being given, we must show that they are worthy

objects of indignation or envy or hostility. We shall implant a sentiment of hostility in those whom we are seeking to dissuade by showing that either they themselves, or those for whom they care, have received undeserved ill-treatment at the hands of the other party or their friends. We shall arouse indignation, if we show that they, or those for whom they themselves care, have been wrongfully treated with contempt or injustice by the other party or their friends.[1] We shall create a feeling of envy, to put the matter briefly, against those whom we show to have enjoyed unmerited prosperity, or to be now doing so, or to be likely to do so in the future; or never to have been without some advantage, or not to be so now, or to be never likely to be so; or never to have suffered some misfortune in the past, or not to be doing so now, or to be never likely to do so in future. This, then, is the method by which we shall implant envy or hostility or indignation; while we shall create feelings of friendship, gratitude, and pity by the methods which we indicated in 1440b treating of persuasion.[2] We shall give these sentiments their place and arrangement according to the various methods already mentioned. We now know the nature of persuasive oratory and its component parts and how it must be employed.

Let us next set before ourselves the consideration of 35
eulogistic and vituperative oratory. Here too we must first of all state our propositions in the proem, and refute misrepresentation by the same method as in persuasive oratory. We must also exhort our hearers to give us their attention by the methods already described under public speeches and in particular by saying things which will cause astonishment and attract remark, and showing that the subjects of our speech and those who usually incur praise or blame have acted in the same manner. Speeches of this kind are usually made not in order to fight a case but for display.

First, we shall arrange the proem on the same principle

[1] Reading ὑπ' ἐκείνων ἢ τῶν φίλων (coni. Hammer) for ἢ τῶν φίλων ἐκείνοις (or ἐκείνων).

[2] Cp. 1439b 15 ff.

as in persuasive and dissuasive speeches. After the proem, we must distinguish those good qualities of our subject which are outside the sphere of virtue and those which fall within it, as follows: those which fall outside the sphere of virtue we shall divide into good birth, physical strength, personal beauty, and wealth, while we shall divide virtue into wisdom, justice, courage, and noteworthy habits of life.[1] The qualities which pertain to virtue are proper subjects of eulogy; those which fall outside virtue must be disguised, for we ought to congratulate rather than praise those who are strong and handsome and well-born and wealthy. Having made these distinctions we shall give the genealogy of the subject of our speech the first place after the proem: for this is the first thing which brings credit or discredit upon men and also upon animals. We shall therefore be justified in giving the genealogy of a man or any other animal; and when we are praising any one's feeling or action or speech or possession, we shall be justified in beginning our eulogy by mentioning the distinguished qualities which he possesses.

The following is the way to treat a man's genealogy: if his ancestors were good men and true, you ought to mention them all from the earliest times down to the subject of your eulogy and give a brief account of some glorious achievement performed by each of his forefathers. If it is only his earliest ancestors that were good men while the rest failed to do anything remarkable, you must mention the former in the manner already described and omit the undistinguished members of the family, excusing yourself by saying that, his ancestors being so numerous, you do not wish to weary your audience by speaking of them, and that every one knows that men who are born of a good stock usually resemble their forefathers. If his early ancestors were undistinguished but those who come nearer his own time were men of repute, you must dwell upon his descent from the latter and say that it would be tedious to speak at length about his early forefathers, and you must show that the immediate ancestors of those whom you are 1441a

[1] Cp. *Rhet.* 1387a 14 ff.

eulogizing were good men; adding that it is quite clear that *their* ancestors must have been good men and true, for it is hardly likely that such excellent and worthy persons can have been born of bad parents. If there is nothing distinguished in the ancestry of the subject of your eulogy, you must insist on his personal nobility and suggest that all those who have a natural predisposition for virtue are 'well born', and you must censure those other orators who dwell upon ancestral glories, pointing out that many men of distinguished ancestry have proved themselves unworthy of their forefathers. You must also insist that your task on the present occasion is to praise the man himself, not his ancestors. A similar use must be made of genealogies to discredit one whose ancestors were men of evil repute. Such then is the place which genealogy must occupy in eulogy and vituperation.

If the subject of your eulogy owes some distinction to good luck,[1] ⟨you must attribute his success rather to his own efforts than to fortune.

You must next describe his habits and way of life beginning from his earliest years⟩, observing this one principle that you say what befits his various ages; and do not speak at too great length. For example, in children it is generally considered that orderliness and self-control are due not to themselves but to those who have charge of them, and so they must be dealt with briefly. When you have thus described his early years, after concluding[2] with an enthymeme or maxim at the end of this division of your speech, you will, when you come to the early manhood of the subject of your eulogy, state your subject, viz. his achievements or character or habits, and

[1] The MS. reading *τύχην ὑπῆρξε, τοῦτο μόνον διαφυλάττοντα* has been kept. Some words have probably fallen out after *ὑπῆρξε*. As the words stand no sense can be made unless *διαφυλάττοντα* is emended, and even so it is obvious that in the rest of the sentence the author has passed to a new subject, namely, a description of the achievements of the person eulogized arranged according to the stages of his life. The words in brackets represent a conjectural restoration of the sense. (Since writing the above I find that Sauppe also marks a lacuna at this point.)

[2] Reading *ὁρίσας* with the best MSS.

you must amplify them on the principle which we laid down at the beginning in treating of eulogistic oratory,[1] explaining that it was at this age that such and such a glorious deed was done by him whom you are eulogizing, or through his agency or owing to some habit of his, or that he inspired it or supplied the motive. You must also compare the notable achievements of other young men and show that his actions far surpass theirs, relating the least important of their deeds and the most important of the achievements of the subject of your eulogy. You must set deeds of others which are notable but less important side by side with those which you are relating, and so exaggerate the importance of the latter. You must also always amplify his achievements by conjectures of the following kind: 'Yet one who at this early age became so great a philosopher, if he had been older would have advanced yet further'; or again, 'A man who so stoutly endures the toils of the gymnasium, will gladly welcome the love of toil which philosophy demands.' By conjectures of this kind we shall amplify his good qualities.

When we have dealt with the events of his early manhood and put[2] maxims and enthymemes at the end of this section, after either briefly iterating what we have said, or bringing it to a final conclusion,[3] we shall next treat[4] of the achievements of the subject of our eulogy after reaching full manhood, and after setting forth his justice first and amplifying this topic by the method already described we shall proceed to deal with his wisdom, if he possesses this quality; having similarly dealt with this we shall set forth his courage, if he possesses any, and after going through the process of amplifying this also, when we have reached the end of this section and described all his various qualities, we shall repeat and summarize what we have said and bring the whole speech to a conclusion with a maxim or an enthymeme. It will be suitable in eulogies to treat the

1441b

[1] Cp. 1426a 3 ff.
[2] Reading *τάξωμεν* with some MSS.
[3] Finckh's *πέρατι* for *περί* or *παρά* of the MSS. is not satisfactory, and the whole phrase is probably corrupt, though the sense is clear.
[4] Adding *διέξιμεν* after *πάλιν* as suggested by Sauppe.

various points at considerable length and to employ a dignified diction.

We shall use the same method to compose our accusations when we are dealing with wicked men. But we must not scoff at the man with whom we are finding fault, but we must describe his life; for statements have more effect than scoffs, bringing conviction to our hearers and causing annoyance to those with whom we are finding fault; for scoffing is directed against outward appearance and circumstance, while statements about a man are the picture, as it were, of his habits and character. Be on your guard against calling disgraceful actions by disgraceful names, so as not to violate conventional feeling, but express such things by indirect hints and explain the facts in words which are really applicable to different actions. In finding fault you must employ irony and laugh at the points on which your adversary prides himself; in private, and in the presence of a few listeners, you should seek to discredit him, but before the multitude you should abuse him by levelling only ordinary accusations against him. You must employ the same methods of amplification and minimization in finding fault as in eulogy. From what has been said we shall know how to practise these kinds of oratory.

It remains for us to deal with the oratory of accusation[1] and inquiry. Let us next discuss how we shall compose and arrange these in the forensic type of oratory. We shall therefore first set forth in the proem, as in the other kinds, the action which is to be the subject of our accusation or defence. We shall exhort our hearers to attention by the same means in the defensive style as we employed in the persuasive style. 36

Again, as regards the goodwill of the audience, when they are well-disposed towards the subject of our speech and he is not the object of prejudice because they are irritated against him or his action or his speech, we must secure their goodwill by the method described in dealing with the other kinds of oratory. When they are neither well nor ill-disposed towards him in connexion with either

1442a

[1] Omitting καὶ τὸ ἀπολογητικόν, inserted by Spengel.

the past or the present, or when his personality or his action or his words are the object of prejudice, we must bring forward reasons for goodwill towards him,[1] sometimes blending them together and sometimes taking them separately. Such, then, is the method by which we must conciliate goodwill.

Those who are the objects neither of goodwill nor ill-will[2] we must briefly eulogize, while we must dispraise their adversaries. We must praise them[3] in connexion with the qualities which most nearly concern our hearers, calling them, for example, patriotic, true to their friends, grateful, compassionate; while we shall dispraise an adversary by applying to him epithets which will arouse the indignation of our audience, such as unpatriotic, untrue to his friends, thankless, pitiless, and the like. We must also conciliate the jury by praising their justice and the intelligence which they bring to their task. We must also mention any point in which our client is at a disadvantage compared with his opponents, whether in word or deed or anything else which concerns his suit; and we must further introduce the considerations of justice, legality, expediency, and the like. It is by these means that we must win goodwill in the minds of the jury for one who is the object of neither kindly nor unkindly feeling.

When our client is an object of prejudice, if the prejudice dates from the past and is concerned with what he has said, we know from what has already been remarked how to remove it. If it dates from the present time, it must necessarily be concerned with the man's personality[4] if he is represented as unfit to bring the case in question, or his character as contradicting the charges he brings or consistent with the accusation brought against him. It would be a case of unsuitability if too young or too old a man pleaded on behalf of another; of contradiction, if a strong man accused a weak man of assault, or if a violent man brought a charge of violence against a self-controlled man,

[1] Adding with some MSS. *εὐμένειαν ποριστέον* after *ἰδίως*.
[2] Reading *αὐτούς*. [3] Reading *αὐτούς*.
[4] Deleting the comma after *ἄνθρωπον*.

or if a very poor man went to law against a very rich man, accusing him of defrauding him of money. These are cases where there is a contradiction between the accusations and those who bring them. There will be consistency with the charge where a strong man is prosecuted for assault by a weak man or one who has the reputation of being a thief is put on his trial for theft. In a word, there will seem to be consistency with the charge in the case of persons who cause an opinion to be formed about them which corresponds with their character. Such, then, will be the misrepresentations which arise at the moment against a man's personality. Prejudice will be raised against a man's action if he goes to law with his own friends or guests or relatives, or on petty or discreditable pleas; for these things bring disrepute upon the parties in a suit.

I will now show how we are to get rid of the above mentioned prejudices. I maintain that there are two principles which hold good in all cases. First, when you think your opponents are likely to impress the jury, anticipate them and make the impression yourself. Secondly, when it is a question of acts, you should, if possible, turn the blame upon your adversaries, or, failing that, upon some one else, urging as an excuse that you have been dragged into the suit against your will and under compulsion from your opponents. Against each particular prejudice you must urge such excuses as these: a young man, for example, should allege a lack of older friends to fight the case on his behalf, or the enormity or number of his opponent's misdeeds, or the short limit of time allowed,[1] or some other such excuse. If you are speaking on some one else's behalf, you must say that you are pleading his cause from motives of friendship for him or hatred of his opponent, or because you were present at the events in question, or for the public good, or because your client stands in need of friends and is a victim of injustice. If his character agrees with the charge brought against him or is in contradiction to the accusation which he brings, you must make use of anticipation and say that it is not just or lawful or expedient to judge from an opinion or

[1] Reading ἢ μέγεθος ἀδικημάτων ἢ πλῆθος ἢ προθεσμίαν χρόνου (Spengel).

suspicion before listening to the facts. Such, then, is the way in which we shall get rid of prejudices against a man's personality; those which concern his action we shall repudiate by transferring the blame to his adversary, or by accusing the latter of libel or injustice or greed or contentiousness, or by alleging as an excuse the indignation of our client[1] and showing that he could not possibly obtain justice in any other way. This is how we shall get rid of personal prejudices in the law courts; those which concern a man's public life we shall refute by the various methods prescribed for the kinds of oratory already dealt with.[2]

We shall arrange the proems of forensic speeches in the same manner as those of public orations, and on the same principle we shall include the narration of facts in the proem and either show them to be trustworthy and just in detail or else insert them bodily by themselves.[3]

Next will follow confirmation, by means of proofs if the facts are disputed by our opponents, or, if they are admitted, by considerations of justice, expediency, and the like. Of proofs we must put testimony first and admissions made under torture, if there are any. Next we must confirm our statements, if they are credible, by maxims and enthymemes, but, if they are not entirely credible, by considerations of probability, and afterwards by examples, signs, infallible and fallible, and refutations, and lastly by enthymemes and maxims. If the facts are admitted, we must leave proofs alone and make use of justification as already described.[4] Such, then, is the method of confirmation which we shall employ.

After such confirmation we shall next state the arguments which we can urge against our opponents, and anticipate what they are likely to say. If they deny the facts,[5] we must amplify the proofs which we have already stated and criticize and minimize those which they are likely to bring forward. If they admit the actions but intend to show

[1] Putting a comma after *φιλονεικίας*, not after *ὀργήν* (so Bekker).
[2] Cp. 1436b 37 ff. [3] Cp. 1438b 24. [4] Cp. 1439a 7 ff.
[5] Reading *τὰ πράγματα* for *τὸ πρᾶγμα*, cp. above l. 3 and *ἔννομα καὶ δίκαια*, ll. 10, 11 below.

that they are legal and just according to written laws, we must attempt to show that the laws which we bring forward, and laws similar to them, are just and right and to the common advantage of the state, and that this is the opinion generally held about them, while the contrary is true of the laws which our opponents are bringing forward. If it is impossible to say this, you must remind the jury that they have to give their verdict not on a point of law but on a point of fact, and that they have sworn to vote according to the established law, and you must tell them that they must not pass laws now but upon the proper days fixed for that purpose. If it so happens that what has been done contravenes laws which appear to be bad,[1] we must say that here we have not law but the negation of law; for law is laid down for the public benefit, but this law is harmful to the state. We must say that they will not be acting illegally if they vote in contravention of this law, but will be legislating to prevent the use of bad and illegal ordinances. You can also point out that no law forbids the conferring of a public benefit and that it is a benefaction to the state to annul bad laws. Regarding laws, then, of which the meaning is clear, we shall easily be able, by such methods of anticipation, to speak against any of them with which we are concerned. When there is ambiguity, if the jury understand a law in a sense which favours you, you must give it that interpretation; but if they give it the construction which your opponent puts upon it, you must tell them that this is not what the lawgiver meant but that he interpreted it as you do,[2] and that it is to the advantage of the jury to put the construction which you do upon it. If you cannot twist the law round, point out that it cannot mean anything but what you say it means.[3] If you follow this method you will have no difficulty as to the way in which to deal with laws.

Generally speaking, if they admit the facts and intend to

[1] Reading with E and G and Bekker and Spengel *μοχθηρούς δοκοῦντας εἶναι νόμους.*

[2] Reading with Kayser *λέγειν δύναται ὁ νόμος. ὁ ἐναντίος* probably came in from the previous line.

[3] Reading *ἀλλ' ὃ σύ* for *ὃ σύ* (Spengel).

base their defence on pleas of justice and legality, you must employ these methods to anticipate what they are likely to say. But if they admit the facts but claim to be pardoned, you must deprive your opponents of such arguments in the following manner. First, you must say that their conduct is all the more reprehensible and that it is only when they have been found out that they admit their mistake in so acting, adding, 'If, therefore, you pardon the defendant, you will absolve every one else from punishment.' You can say, 'If you acquit those who admit their mistakes, how will you be able to condemn those who do not do so?' You must urge that 'even if he has made a mistake, there is no reason why I should suffer through his mistake'. Furthermore, you must say that the lawgiver shows no pity for those who make mistakes, and so the jury in giving their verdict according to the laws should not do so either. Such then, as we have stated at the beginning, are the means by which we shall refute their appeals for pardon, and, speaking generally, we shall anticipate by the method already mentioned anything which our opponents intend to say with a view either to proof or justification or pardon. 1443b

Next we must recount[1] the charge, the whole story of the case being summarized, and, if possible, in a few words instil into the minds of the jury a feeling of hostility or indignation or envy towards our opponents and of goodwill or gratitude or pity for ourselves. How this is done we have already stated in dealing with public speaking and persuasion and dissuasion, and we shall again allude to it finally in treating of the defensive style of oratory. This, then, is the way in which we shall compose and arrange our speech when we are the first to speak and are the accusers in a forensic case.

When we are defending a case, we shall frame our proem in the same way as when accusing, and we shall make no mention of the accusations, of which our opponent has informed our hearers, but after the proem we shall set forth and refute the opinions which he has put into their minds and throw discredit on his witnesses and the testimony given

[1] *ἀναλογιστέον* (CFOP).

under torture and the oaths, in the manner already described to you. If the facts are credible, we must put our defence against them into the form of a pretended omission, and, if the witnesses who have been examined under torture are trustworthy, we must have recourse to argument or statement of fact or any other strong point which we can bring against them. If your adversary accuses you by bringing a charge which accords with your advantage or habitual practice, you must defend yourself, if you can, by showing that the crime with which you are charged does not accord with your advantage; or, failing that, you must urge that it has not been the custom either of yourself or of persons like you to do such things, or to do them in such a manner. This is how you will refute the argument of probability. When he employs an example,[1] you must first show, if you can, that it does not resemble the crime with which you are charged, or, failing that, yourself bring forward another example to the contrary which has occurred against probability. If he employs a sign,[2] you must refute it by giving reasons why it implies the exact opposite, while you must show that his maxims and enthymemes are either paradoxical or ambiguous. His fallible signs[3] you must prove to be signs of a number of other things and not only of the charge which he is bringing against you. This, then, is the way in which we shall cause our adversary's contentions to be discredited by either interpreting them in a contrary sense or reducing them to ambiguity.

If, on the other hand, we admit that we have done the acts with which we are charged, we shall base our plea on justice and legality and try to prove that our acts are juster and more legal. If this is impossible, we must resort to pleas of error or misfortune, and try to win pardon by showing that the harm which has resulted is small, pointing out that error is common to all men, while wrongdoing is peculiar to the wicked. You must urge that it is right and just and expedient to pardon errors; for no man knows whether it may not fall to his lot to commit such an error. You must

[1] Cp. 1429[a] 21 ff. [2] Cp. 1430[a] 14. [3] Cp. 1430[b] 30.

also point out that your opponent claimed pardon when he committed an error.

Next will come the anticipations which your adversaries have made in their speeches. Anticipations of other kinds we shall easily be able to refute by an appeal to the facts; but if they misrepresent us by saying that we read our speeches or practise them beforehand, or that we are pleading for the sake of some reward, we must meet such accusations with irony and say with regard to the writing of speeches that the law does not forbid a man to read out a written speech any more than it forbids his opponent to speak without notes; for, while it prohibits the doing of certain actions, it allows a man to make a speech in any way he likes. You must also say: 'My opponent considers that the wrongs which he has committed are so serious that he does not think I am doing justice to the accusation which I am bringing against him, unless I write out and take a long time to think over my speech.' Such then is the way in which we must meet[1] the misrepresentation of having written out our speech. If our opponents declare that we learn and rehearse our speeches, we shall admit it and say: 'We who, according to you, learn what we are going to say, are not litigious, whereas you, who declare that you do not know how to speak, have been convicted of bringing vexatious suits in the past and are doing so now against us'; and we shall draw the conclusion that it would apparently therefore be better for the citizens, if our opponent also learned to be an orator, for then he would not be such a scoundrel and pettifogger. We shall meet the accusation that we are paid to plead in court by a similar argument—admitting it and speaking ironically and pointing out that our accuser and every one else does so. You must distinguish between the different kinds of pay and say that some men plead in court for money, others as a favour, others for vengeance, others for honours. You must show that you are yourself pleading as a favour, and say that your 1444b opponent pleads for no small payment; for he is going to law that he may make money by unrighteous means,

[1] Hammer's ἀναντητέον is a misprint for ἀπαντητέον.

not in order to avoid having to pay it. We must follow the same method if any one accuses us of teaching others how to plead and of composing speeches to be delivered in court. You must point out that every one else, as far as lies within his power, helps his friends by instruction and advice. Thus you will have an answer in such cases in accordance with the rules of rhetoric.

You must not be slow in any questions and answers which occur in cases of this kind; but you must make a clear distinction in your answers between admissions and denials. The following are examples of admissions: 'Did you kill my son?'—'Yes, I did kill him, when he, unprovoked, raised a sword against me'; or again, 'Did you thrash my son?'—'Yes, but he first assaulted me'; or again, 'Did you break my head?'—'Yes, when you were forcing your way into my house at night.' Such admissions are made in reliance on the legality of your action. Denials, on the other hand, aim at diverting the course of law, for example: 'Did you kill my son?'—'No, it was not I, but the law that killed him.' This is the kind of answer which you must always make when one law enjoins, while another forbids, a certain course of action. Out of all these various methods you will gather the means to meet your adversaries.

Next will follow an iteration by way of brief reminder of what you have said. It is useful on all occasions and should therefore be employed in every part and in every kind of speech. It is very suitable in accusation and defence and also in persuasion and dissuasion. In my opinion we ought here not only to remind our audience, as in eulogistic and vituperative speeches, of what has been said, but we ought also to dispose our judges to be favourable towards ourselves and unfavourable to our opponents; we shall make this the last part of our speech. It is possible to refresh your hearer's memory in a summary manner either by enumerating the points which you have mentioned, or by making a division,[1] or by asking additional questions which will bring the most credit on yourself and the most discredit on your opponents, or, if you like, you

[1] Cp. 1433ᵇ 33 ff.

can use the form of a simple question.[1] The nature of these methods we know from what has already been said.

We shall win a favourable hearing for ourselves and an unfavourable one for our opponents if, as in persuasion and dissuasion, we show briefly how we ourselves (or our friends) have benefited or are benefiting or intend to benefit those who are now seeking to wrong us (or those for whom they care), or else our judges (or those for whom they care); and point out to them that now is the opportunity to show us 1445a gratitude for our good services; and also, when it is possible, induce them to pity us. This we shall do by showing that a close tie binds us to our hearers and that we are suffering undeserved misfortune, having been unfairly treated in the past, or being so now, or being likely to be so in the future, unless they help us now. If such arguments are inapplicable, we must describe the advantages of which we have been, or are being, or are likely to be deprived, if our prayers are rejected by our judges; or show that we never have been, or are not now, or are never likely to be in enjoyment of some benefit, unless they help us. For it is by these means that we shall win pity and gain the goodwill of our audience.

We shall cause a prejudice and feelings of envy against our opponents by employing the opposite method and pointing out that our hearers, or those for whom they care, have received undeserved ill-treatment, or are receiving it, or are likely to receive it at the hands of our opponents or their friends; for by such arguments they will be induced to entertain feelings of hatred and indignation against them. Where this is impossible, we shall collect together all the arguments by which we can create in our hearers a feeling of envy against our opponents; for envy is very near to hatred. They will be objects of envy, to put the matter briefly, if we can show that they have met with undeserved prosperity and that no close ties bind them to our hearers, and point out that they have unjustly received, or are receiving, or are about to receive many benefits; or that

[1] On the difference between *ἐρωτᾶν* and *προσερωτᾶν* see *Rhet.* 1418b 39 ff.

they have never in the past been without some advantage, or are not without it now, or likely to be so in the future; or that they have never met with some misfortune, or are not now meeting with it, or likely to do so, unless the judges punish them now. By these means then we shall in the peroration of our speech win favour for ourselves and disfavour for our opponents, and by following all the instructions given above we shall be able to arrange speeches for accusation and defence according to the rules of rhetoric.

37 The inquisitive kind of oratory generally occurs, not separately, but in connexion with the other styles; it is especially useful in dealing with contradictions. However, in order that we may know the arrangement of this kind of speech also, when we have to inquire into the words or manner of life or deeds of men or the administration of a city, I will describe it also in a summary manner. When conducting an inquiry of this kind we must begin in the same way as when refuting a prejudice; and so, after first adducing plausible pretexts so as to make our action appear reasonable, we shall then proceed to conduct our inquiry. The following are suitable pretexts: in political assemblies, that we are adopting such a course not from
1445b party-spirit but in order that it may not escape the attention of our hearers, or again, that our adversaries molested us first. In private suits our excuse will be a feeling of hatred or the bad character of the subjects of our inquiry or our friendship towards them or the object of making them realize what they are doing and not do it again. In public trials our pretexts will be legality, justice, and the general interest. After first treating of these and similar subjects we shall next in order set forth and inquire into each utterance or deed or intention of our opponents, showing that these are opposed to justice and legality and private and public expediency, and examining them all to see whether in any respect they contradict one another or the practice of good citizens or probability. But, not to be tedious by going into details, the more we can prove to our hearers that the conduct of the subjects of our inquiry is

opposed to honourable pursuits, acts, words, or habits, the greater will be the discredit which attaches to them. We ought to conduct our inquiry not in a bitter but in a gentle spirit; for words if thus spoken will appear more persuasive to our hearers, and those who utter them will be less likely to bring prejudice upon themselves.[1] When you have carefully inquired into everything and amplified the results, you must conclude with a brief iteration and remind your hearers of what you have said. By arranging them thus we shall be able to employ all the various kinds of oratory according to the rules of rhetoric.

38 Both in speaking and writing we must try as far as possible to make our words accord with the principles laid down above, and accustom ourselves to practice each principle readily, and we shall have many clever expedients to enable us to make speeches according to the rules of art in private and public suits and in conversation with others; but an orator ought to be careful not only about his words but also about his personal behaviour, regulating it according to the principles already laid down; for the manner of a man's life contributes to the persuasive influence which he exercises and to the establishment of a good reputation.

In the first place you must divide up your subject-matter according to the general system of division in which you have been instructed, and decide what you must treat of first, secondly, thirdly, and fourthly. Next you must prepare your hearers to receive you, as I have described in dealing with the attitude to be taken towards your audience in proems. You will dispose them well towards you, if you are true to your promises and if you keep the same friends all your life and show yourself unchanging in your other habits and always following the same course. They will listen attentively to you, if you treat of great and noble deeds and such as promote the public good.

Their goodwill having been won, when you come to practical suggestions they will accept as expedient in themselves those which procure the avoidance of evils and the

[1] Reading with E G and Bühle [illegible] for [illegible].

provision of benefits, and reject those which involve the contrary results.

In order that your exposition may be quick and lucid and may command credit, you ought to make your practical suggestions as follows. You will perform your task quickly, if you do not try to do everything at once, but take the first point first and then the next. You will speak lucidly, if you do not suddenly leave your subject and go on to other points before you have finished it. You will command credit, if you do not act contrary to your usual character, and further if you do not pretend that the same persons are your enemies and your friends.

As regards proof, where we have sure knowledge, we shall prefer to follow its guidance in prescribing plans of action, but, where we lack knowledge, we shall take the ordinary course of events as our guide; for it is safest in such cases to act with a view to what usually happens.

When we have adversaries to contend with, if it is a question of words, we shall obtain confirmation in support of our case from the actual words uttered; in suits about contracts we shall do so by dealing with them in accordance with unwritten and written laws with the support of the best possible testimony and within definite limits of time.

As regards our peroration we shall remind our hearers of what has been said by a summary repetition of the facts; while we shall remind them of our past deeds by reference to our present deeds, when we are undertaking actions identical with, or similar to, former actions.

Our hearers will be well disposed to us, if we follow a course of action which will result in their thinking themselves well treated in the past, present, or future. We shall add weight to our actions, if we deal with transactions which are likely to produce great credit for the state.

Such then is the manner in which an orator must regulate his personal behaviour; while he must practice the art of oratory according to the principles already laid down.

[1] [Sacrifices must be conducted on the principles already

[1] The concluding paragraph of this treatise occurs only in certain

indicated; they must be reverent towards the gods, moderate in costliness, splendid from a spectacular point of view, and likely to bring advantage to the citizens. They will be reverent towards the gods, if we sacrifice according to 1446[b] ancestral custom; they will be moderate in costliness, if the accompaniments of the ceremony are not used up as well as the money actually expended; they will be splendid from a spectacular point of view, if they are magnificently appointed; they will be beneficial to the citizens, if horsemen and infantry in full panoply accompany the procession. Our dealings with the gods will be devoutly performed if carried out thus.

We shall establish friendly relations with those who are of like character to our own and have the same interests, and with whom we are obliged to co-operate in matters of great importance; for such friendship is most likely to be permanent. We must make those men our allies, who are most righteous and are possessed of considerable power and live near at hand; those who are the contrary must be our enemies. We must undertake war against those who are trying to injure the state or her friends or her allies. The protection of the state must be secured either by personal service or by the help of allies or by mercenaries; the first method is preferable to the second, and the second to the third.

As regards the supply of resources, we must provide them first and foremost from our own revenues and possessions, secondly by taxes on rateable property, and thirdly by personal service on the part of the poor, and the provision of arms by the craftsmen, and of money by the wealthy.

As for political constitution, the best form of democracy is that under which the laws bestow the posts of dignity on the best citizens, and the people are not deprived of the rights of electing and voting; the worst form is that under which the laws deliver up the wealthy to the insolence of

MSS. and appears to be an alternative version of 1423[b] 36 ff. It is obviously out of place in its present position and has been justly suspected by the editors of being spurious both for this reason and also because of the nature and ill arrangement of its contents.

the mob. Oligarchies are of two kinds, being based either on political partisanship or on a property qualification.

Alliances must be formed when the citizens are unable by themselves to protect their own territory and strongholds or hold the enemy in check. An alliance must be dispensed with when it is unnecessary or when the proposed allies are too far distant and unable to arrive at the opportune moment.

A good citizen is one who provides the state with useful friends and few and feeble foes, and who procures for her the greatest revenue without confiscating the property of a single private citizen, and who, while conducting himself righteously, exposes those who attempt any injury to the state.

Men always bestow presents either in the hope of benefiting themselves or in grateful return for previous services. Service is always given either for gain or honour or pleasure or fear. All dealings are carried out either by choice or
1447a unwillingly: for all acts are done either under compulsion or through persuasion or fraud or on some pretext.

In war one side gains the upper hand either through luck, or superiority of numbers or strength or resources, or advantage of position, or excellence of allies, or skill on the part of a general. It is generally held that men should abandon their allies either because it is expedient to do so or because they have brought the war to a close.

1447b To act justly is to follow the common customs of the state, to obey the laws, and to abide by one's personal promises.

Physical advantages are good condition, beauty, strength, and health; mental advantages are wisdom, prudence, courage, self-control, and justice. Wealth and friends are advantages alike to mind and body. The opposites of these qualities and the lack of wealth and friends are disadvantageous. To a state a multitude of good citizens is an advantage.]

INDEX

20^a–47^b = 1420^a–1447^b

Accusation, one of the genera of oratory, 21^b 10; 28^a 4; 41^b 30, 33; 44^b 24; defined, 26^b 25; its methods, 26^b 30 ff.
Admissions, 44^b 10 ff.
Alexander, 20^a 5.
Alliances, a subject of deliberative oratory, 23^a 24; motives of, 24^b 30, 46^b 9 ff., 26 ff.; how to speak in favour of, 24^b 35 ff., against, 25^b 1 ff.
Ambiguity, avoidance of, 35^a 33, ^{b} 18.
Amplification, rhetorical, 26^a 19 ff.; 27^a 2, 20; 28^a 2, 14; 32^a 34; 36^a 17; 39^b 6, 7, 9; 40^a 21; 41^a 33, 37, ^{b} 5, 7, 27; 43^a 9; 45^b 20.
Anticipation of arguments (προκατάληψις), 28^a 8; 40^a 25; 42^b 5; 43^a 7, 30, 40, ^{b} 14; 44^a 16 ff.; defined, 32^b 11; use of, 32^b 14, ff.; 39^b 3 ff.
Antithesis, 35^b 27 ff.
Appetite, common to man and the animals, 21^a 10.
Aristotle, 20^a 5.
Article, the definite, use of, 35^a 35, ^{b} 13 ff.
Athenians, Athens, 22^a 40; 23^a 6; 29^b 1, 8; 31^a 17.
Attention, how to secure, 36^b 5 ff.; 38^b 21; 40^b 18; 46^a 2.

Barbarians, 20^b 15, 28.
Blame, see *Vituperation*.
Boeotia, 29^b 14.
Brevity of speech, 28^a 9; how to be obtained, 34^b 10 ff.

Callicles, 32^a 4.
Carthaginians, 28^b 19.
Censure, see *Vituperation*.
Children, qualities of, 41^a 16.
Citizenship, good, 46^b 31 ff.
Clearness, see *Lucidity*.
Conciseness, how obtained, 38^a 38 ff.
Confirmation, of facts, 38^b 29 ff.; 42^b 32 ff.; of statements, 46^a 22.
Conjunctions, use of, 34^b 13.
Consonants, 34^b 36, 37.
Constitution, political, a subject of deliberative oratory, 23^a 23; 24^a 8 ff.; 46^b 20.
Contracts, lawsuits about, 21^b 13; 46^a 22; between states, 23^a 25; 24^b 28.
Contraries, 'examples' based on, 29^b 37; 31^a 26; in 'enthymemes', 30^a 23; 31^a 31.
Convention, respect for, 41^b 21.
Corax, 21^b 2.
Corinthians, 28^b 18.
Courage, 40^b 19; 41^b 7; 47^b 4.
Crime, defined, 27^a 31.

Defence, one of the genera of oratory, 21^b 10; 28^a 4; 43^b 23; 44^b 24; oratory of, defined, 26^b 27; its methods, 27^a 22 ff.; 41^b 36.
Deliberation, deliberative (or political) oratory, 20^b 20, 24; 21^a 1, ^{b} 7; the subjects of, 23^a 13 ff.; see also *Public Speaking*.
Democracy, 20^a 19; the best form of, 46^b 20; the worst form of, 46^b 23; elections in a d., 24^a 12 ff.; ideals of legislation in a d., 24^a 20 ff.
Denials, 44^b 16.
Desire, common to man and the animals, 21^a 10.
Dion of Syracuse, 29^b 15.
Dionysius, 28^b 17.
Display, oratory of, see *Epideictic Oratory*.
Dissuasion, one of the genera of oratory, 21^b 9; 39^b 36; 40^a 4, 15; 44^b 25; defined, 21^b 21; topics of, 21^b 28 ff.

Education, value of, 21^a 17, 24.
Election by vote, 24^a 14, ^{b} 1; 46^b 22.
'Enthymemes', 28^a 20; 32^b 26; 33^a 25; 34^a 35; 38^b 34; 39^a 5, 19, 34; 40^a 19, 39, ^{b} 11; 42^b 38; 43^a 2, ^{b} 41; defined, 30^a 23;

their material, 30a 24 ff.;)(infallible signs, 31a 28;)(maxims, 31a 35.
Envy, how to arouse, 40a 34 ff.; 43b 17; 45a 12 ff.
Epideictic oratory, 21b 8.
Error, defined, 27a 33; the plea of, 29a 15; 44a 8 ff.
Eulogy, one of the genera of oratory, 21b 9; 26b 20; 28a 4; 40b 5 ff.; 42a 9; 44b 27; defined, 25b 36; materials of, 25b 39 ff.; methods of, 26a 19 ff.
Euripides, the *Philoctetes* of, quoted, 33b 11 ff.
Evidence, of slaves under torture, 28a 23; 42b 37; 43b 28, 31; defined, 32a 12; methods of supporting, 32a 13 ff., of refuting, 32a 19 ff.; see also *Testimony*.
'Examples', 28a 19; 38b 33, 39; 39a 1, 14; 43a 1, b 37, 39; defined, 29a 21; their use, 29a 22 ff.; two kinds of, 22a 27 ff.; based on contraries, 29b 37;)(infallible signs, 31a 27;)(probabilities, 31a 24.
Expediency, the Expedient, 21a 1; 23a 9, 39; 26a 1; 27a 26, b 40; 30a 27; 36a 15; 38b 19, 31; 39a 9, 26, 27, 36; 40a 10; 42a 19, b 35; 45b 10; a topic of persuasion and dissuasion, 21b 24, 29; defined, 22a 4 ff.; for individuals 22a 7; for states, 22a 11; analogies to, 22b 30 ff.

Forensic oratory, 21b 8; 26b 23; 41b 32; 42b 28; see also *Defence* and *Accusation*.
Friendship, appeals to, 39b 17 ff.; 40a 26, 40.

Genealogies, use of, 40b 24 ff.
Goodwill of an audience, how to secure, 36b 16 ff.; 41b 36 ff.; 43b 17; 44b 35 ff.; 45b 38 ff.
Gratitude, appeals to, 39b 17, 21 ff.; 40a 27, 40; 43b 17; 45a 1.
Greece, Greeks, 20b 15, 27.
Gymnasium, 37b 2.
Gymnastics, 26a 9; 41a 35.

Habit, 28b 8.
Happiness of man, due to reason, 21a 13.
Honourable, the, 21b 37; 23a 10, b 5; 26a 1; 27a 26, b 40; 30a 27; 33a 2; 36a 14; 38b 19; 39a 10, 37; a topic of persuasion and dissuasion, 21b 25, 29; defined, 22a 15.
Hostility, how to arouse, 40a 28 ff.; 43b 17 ff.
Hyperbole, 30b 9, 15, 18.

Indignation, how to arouse, 40a 32 ff.; 43b 17.
Inexpedient, the, 22a 15.
'Inquiry', one of the genera of oratory, 21b 10; 30a 25; 41b 31; defined, 27b 12; its use, 27b 17; 45a 30 ff.
Interruptions, how to deal with, 33a 24 ff.
'Irony', 36b 21; 39b 14; 41b 24; 44a 21, 36; defined, 34a 17; examples of, 34a 19 ff.
'Iteration', 28a 8; 34b 7, 16, 25; 36a 20; 39a 22, 29, b 12; 40a 24; 41b 1; 44b 21; 45b 20; examples of, 33b 33 ff.; its use, 33b 29.

Just, the, Justice, 23a 34; 25b 40; 27a 26, b 39; 28a 11; 30a 27; 33a 27; 36a 14; 38b 9, 19, 30; 39a 9, 12 ff., 24, 36; 40a 10 ff., b 19; 41b 4; 42a 18, b 34; 43a 39; 44a 6; 45b 5, 9; 47b 1, 6; a topic of persuasion and dissuasion, 21b 24, 28; defined, 21b 35; analogies to, 22a 28 ff.

Lacedaemonians, 22a 40; 23a 1, 4, 8; 29b 1, 11, 12, 15; 34a 1, 7.
Lands, public, distribution of, 24a 32; exploitation of, 25b 20.
Law, 20a 20; 30a 27; 33a 27; 43a 11 ff.; 47b 2; defined, 20a 25; 22a 2; 24a 9; a subject of deliberative oratory, 23a 23; 24a 8; written)(unwritten, 21b 36 ff.; 46a 24; analogies to the written l., 22b 4 ff.; how to speak in favour of a l., 24b 15; against, 24b 21; see also *Legislation*.
Lawful, the, 22b 1; 25b 40; 27a 26, b 39; 28a 12; 36a 14; 39a 9; 40a 10 ff.; 42a 18; 43a 39; 44a 6; 45b 5, 9; a topic of persuasion and dissuasion, 21b 24, 28; its nature demonstrated from the contrary, 22b 19 ff.

INDEX

Lawsuits about contracts, 21b 13.
Legal, see *Lawful.*
Legislation, ideals of, in a democratic state, 24a 12 ff., b 10; in an oligarchy, 24a 39 ff., b 12.
Leuctra, the battle of, 29b 14.
Lot, appointment to office by, 24a 13, b 1.
Lucidity, how obtained, 38a 26; 46a 11.
Lysithidas, 22b 22.

Magistracies, methods of election to, 24a 12 ff., b 1.
Man, alone possessed of reason, 21a 12.
'Maxims', 28a 20; 32b 26; 33a 25; 24a 37; 39a 4, 5, 19, 34, 38; 40a 23; 41a 20, 39, b 10; 42b 38; 43a 2, b 41; defined, 30a 40; two kinds of m.s, 30b 1; their employment, 30b 2 ff.; examples of m.s, 30b 10 ff.;)('enthymemes', 31a 35;)('fallible signs', 31a 39.
Mercenaries, 46b 16.
Metaphorical words, 34b 34.
Minimization, rhetorical, 26a 19 ff., b 13 ff.; 28a 2, 14; 32a 39; 36a 17; 39b 5, 10; 40a 22; 41b 27; 43a 10.
Misrepresentation, see *Prejudice.*

Narration, of events, 38a 3 ff.; 42b 30; arrangements of facts in, 38b 14 ff.
Necessary, the, a topic of persuasion, 21b 27; 23a 11; 39a 10; defined, 21a 19.
Nicanor, 21a 38.

Oath, 28a 22; 43a 28; defined, 32a 33; treatment of o.s by orators, 32a 34 ff.; of jurors, 32a 2.
Oligarchy, two kinds of, 46b 24; legislation in an o., 24a 39 ff.
'Omission, pretended', the figure of, 38b 6; 43b 30.
Opinion, defined, 31b 9.
Oracles, 23a 35.
Oratory, the subjects of, 23a 13 ff.; three kinds: Deliberative, Epideictic, Forensic (*q. v.*), 21b 7, 8; 32b 8; and seven genera: Persuasion, Dissuasion, Eulogy, Vituperation, Accusation, Defence, Inquiry (*q. v.*), 21b 8 ff.

Parian Sophists, 21a 32.
'Parisosis', 35b 39 ff.
'Paromoeosis', 36a 5 ff.
Particles, use of, 35a 38.
Pay, pleading for, 44a 35; different kinds of pay, 44a 37.
Peace and war, a subject of deliberative oratory, 23a 25; arguments about, 25a 8 ff.
Peloponnesians, 29b 13.
Peroration, 45a 26; 46a 25.
Persuasion, one of the genera of oratory, 21b 9; 28a 1; 36a 39; 40a 3, 22; 44b 25; defined, 21b 20; topics of, 21b 24 ff.
Philoctetes of Euripides, quoted, 33b 11 ff.
Phyle, 29b 9.
Pity, appeals to, 39b 17, 26 ff.; 40a 40; 43b 17; 45a 2.
Pleasant, the, Pleasure, a topic of persuasion and dissuasion, 21b 25, 29; 23a 10, b 7; 26a 1; 27b 40; 39a 10, 37; defined, 22a 17.
Pleasingly, how to speak, 34b 34, b 27; 36a 20.
Political Oratory, see *Deliberation.*
'Postulates', 28a 8; 36a 20; defined, 33b 17; just and unjust p.s, 33b 18 ff.
Praise, see *Eulogy.*
Prejudice, how to deal with, 36b 29 ff.; 42a 21 ff.; how to arouse, 45b 12 ff.
'Probabilities', 28a 19; 39a 4; 42b 39; 43b 37, 40; their nature, 38a 25 ff.; their use, 38b 11;)('examples', 31a 24.
Proem, the, 38b 16, 24, 28; 39b 37; 40a 6, b 6, 14, 23; 42b 28, 30; 43b 23, 27; 45b 37; defined 36a 33; its uses, 36a 38 ff.
Prolixity of speech, 28a 9; 34a 1 ff.
'Proofs' (πίστεις = means of persuasion), 28a 4, 16 ff.; 31a 21, b 5; 32b 4; 38a 25, b 30, 33, 35; 39a 7, 8, b 38; 42b 34; 43a 3, b 13; 46a 16; direct, 38a 17; supplementary, 28a 22; 31b 7.
Public lands, see *Lands, public.*
Public speaking, 21b 12; 36a 39; 38a 2, 19, b 32; see also *Deliberative Oratory.*

Reason, 20a 22, 25, 28, 30, b 12, 26, 28; 21a 7; peculiar to man, 21a 11; the cause of man's happiness, 21a 14; the guide of life, 21a 24.
'Refutation', (ἔλεγχος), 28a 21; 43a 2; defined, 31a 10 ff.; examples of, 31a 10 ff.;)(fallible signs, 31b 2.
Resources, public, a subject of deliberative oratory, 23a 26; arguments about, 25b 19 ff.; provision of, 46b 16 ff.
Rhetoric, see *Oratory*.
Rites, sacred, see *Sacred rites*.

Sacred rites, Sacrifices, a subject of deliberative oratory, 23a 23, 29 ff.; the ideal sacrifice, 23b 34 ff.; 46a 36 ff.
Sailors, 24a 28.
Scoffing, futility of, 41b 15 ff.
'Signs', (1) fallible (σημεῖα), 28a 20; 43a 1, b 2; defined, 30b 30; their material, 30b 38;)('maxims', 31a 39;)('refutations', 31b 2.
(2) infallible (τεκμήρια), 28a 20; 43a 1, b 40; defined, 30a 14; their use, 30a 19;)('enthymemes', 31a 28;)('examples', 31a 27.
Slaves, evidence of, under torture, see *Evidence*.
Sophists, the Parian, 21b 32.
Sparta, 28a 7; 35a 17.
'Statement', (ἑρμηνεία), 28a 10; methods of, 35a 4 ff., b 23; 36a 21.
Syracusans, Syracuse, 29b 16, 18, 20; 36b 2, 3; 39a 25.
Taxes, imposition of, 25b 25; 46b 18.
Testimony, 28a 22; 31a 2; 42b 36; 43b 28; 46a 24; defined, 31b 20; how to support t., 31b 23 ff.; how to contradict t., 31b 33 ff.; how to disguise t., 32a 3 ff.; see also *Evidence*.
Thebans, 23a 1, 7; 29b 12.
Theodectes, the 'Oratorical Art' of, 21b 2.
Timotheus, 35a 14.
Torch-race, 37b 1.
Torture of slaves to obtain evidence, see *Evidence*.

Unnecessary, the, a topic of dissuasion, 21b 30.

Virtue, 40b 16; its divisions, 40b 18.
Vituperation, one of the genera of Oratory, 21b 9; 26b 20; 28a 4; 40b 5 ff.; defined, 21b 38; materials for, 26a 7; 41b 13 ff.
Vote, election by, 24a 14, b 2; right of, 46b 22; of jury, 33a 1, 9, 23; 43a 18, 34.
Vowels, 34b 35, 37; 35a 34, b 16.

War and Peace, see *Peace and War*.
Wisdom, 40b 19; 41b 5; 47b 5.
Witness, see *Testimony*.
Words, arrangement of letters in, 34b 34; composite, 34b 34; length of, 34b 12, 20; metaphorical, 34b 34; order of, 34b 38 ff.; 35b 5 ff.; 36a 36; simple, 34b 33; usual, 31a 35; w.s used in several senses, 35b 19.

Youth, rhetorical excuse for, 37a 39.

DE POETICA

TRANSLATED BY

INGRAM BYWATER

PREFACE

THE following translation is a reprint of that printed in Professor Bywater's *Aristotle on the Art of Poetry* (1909). To this I have added a short table of contents, a few notes, and an index.

W. D. ROSS.

August 1924

CONTENTS

(A) Preliminary discourse on tragedy, epic poetry, and comedy, as the chief forms of imitative poetry.

CHAP.

1. The poetic arts distinguished (1) by the means they use.
2. ,, ,, (2) by their objects.
3. ,, ,, (3) by the manner of their imitations.
4. Origin and development of poetry and its kinds.
5. Comedy and epic poetry.

(B) Definition of a tragedy, and the rules for its construction.

6. Definition, and analysis into qualitative parts.

7–11. The plot.

7. Arrangement and length of the play.
8. Unity of action.
9. The poet must depict the probable and the universal.
10. Simple and complex plots.
11. Peripety, Discovery, and Suffering.

12. The quantitative parts of a tragedy.

13–14. How the plot can best produce the emotional effect of tragedy.

13. The tragic hero.
14. The tragic deed.

15. Rules for the character of the tragic personages; note on the use of stage-artifice.

16–18. Appendix to discussion of plot.

16. The various forms of discovery.
17–18. Additional rules for the construction of a play.

19. The thought of the tragic personages.

20–22. The diction of tragedy.

20. The ultimate constituents of language.
21. The different kinds of terms.
22. The characteristics of the language of poetry.

(C) Rules for the construction of an epic.

23. It must preserve unity of action.
24. Points of resemblance and of difference between epic poetry and tragedy.

(D) 25. Possible criticisms of an epic or tragedy, and the answers to them.

(E) 26 Tragedy artistically superior to epic poetry.

DE POETICA

1 OUR subject being Poetry, I propose to speak not only of 1447[a]
the art in general but also of its species and their respective
capacities; of the structure of plot required for a good
poem; of the number and nature of the constituent parts of
a poem; and likewise of any other matters in the same line
of inquiry. Let us follow the natural order and begin with
the primary facts.

Epic poetry and Tragedy, as also Comedy, Dithyrambic
poetry, and most flute-playing and lyre-playing, are all,
viewed as a whole, modes of imitation. But at the same
time they differ from one another in three ways, either by
a difference of kind in their means, or by differences in the
objects, or in the manner of their imitations.

I. Just as colour and form are used as means by some,
who (whether by art or constant practice) imitate and
portray many things by their aid, and the voice is used by
others; so also in the above-mentioned group of arts, the
means with them as a whole are rhythm, language, and
harmony—used, however, either singly or in certain com-
binations. A combination of harmony and rhythm alone is
the means in flute-playing and lyre-playing, and any other
arts there may be of the same description, e.g. imitative
piping. Rhythm alone, without harmony, is the means
in the dancer's imitations; for even he, by the rhythms
of his attitudes, may represent men's characters, as well as
what they do and suffer. There is further an art which
imitates by language alone, without harmony, in prose or
in verse, and if in verse, either in some one or in a plurality 1447[b]
of metres. This form of imitation is to this day without a
name. We have no common name for a mime of Sophron
or Xenarchus and a Socratic Conversation; and we should
still be without one even if the imitation in the two

instances were in trimeters or elegiacs or some other kind of verse—though it is the way with people to tack on 'poet' to the name of a metre, and talk of elegiac-poets and epic-poets, thinking that they call them poets not by reason of the imitative nature of their work, but indiscriminately by reason of the metre they write in. Even if a theory of medicine or physical philosophy be put forth in a metrical form, it is usual to describe the writer in this way; Homer and Empedocles, however, have really nothing in common apart from their metre; so that, if the one is to be called a poet, the other should be termed a physicist rather than a poet. We should be in the same position also, if the imitation in these instances were in all the metres, like the *Centaur* (a rhapsody in a medley of all metres) of Chaeremon; and Chaeremon one has to recognize as a poet. So much, then, as to these arts. There are, lastly, certain other arts, which combine all the means enumerated, rhythm, melody, and verse, e.g. Dithyrambic and Nomic poetry, Tragedy and Comedy; with this difference, however, that the three kinds of means are in some of them all employed together, and in others brought in separately, one after the other. These elements of difference in the above arts I term the means of their imitation.

1448a II. The objects the imitator represents are actions, with 2 agents who are necessarily either good men or bad—the diversities of human character being nearly always derivative from this primary distinction, since the line between virtue and vice is one dividing the whole of mankind. It follows, therefore, that the agents represented must be either above our own level of goodness, or beneath it, or just such as we are; in the same way as, with the painters, the personages of Polygnotus are better than we are, those of Pauson worse, and those of Dionysius just like ourselves. It is clear that each of the above-mentioned arts will admit of these differences, and that it will become a separate art by representing objects with this point of difference. Even in dancing, flute-playing, and lyre-playing such diversities are possible; and they are also possible in the nameless

art that uses language, prose or verse without harmony, as its means; Homer's personages, for instance, are better than we are; Cleophon's are on our own level; and those of Hegemon of Thasos, the first writer of parodies, and Nicochares, the author of the *Diliad*, are beneath it. The same is true of the Dithyramb and the Nome: the personages may be presented in them with the difference exemplified in the . . . of . . . and Argas, and in the Cyclopses of Timotheus and Philoxenus. This difference it is that distinguishes Tragedy and Comedy also; the one would make its personages worse, and the other better, than the men of the present day.

3 III. A third difference in these arts is in the manner in which each kind of object is represented. Given both the same means and the same kind of object for imitation, one may either (1) speak at one moment in narrative and at another in an assumed character, as Homer does; or (2) one may remain the same throughout, without any such change; or (3) the imitators may represent the whole story dramatically, as though they were actually doing the things described.

As we said at the beginning, therefore, the differences in the imitation of these arts come under three heads, their means, their objects, and their manner.

So that as an imitator Sophocles will be on one side akin to Homer, both portraying good men; and on another to Aristophanes, since both present their personages as acting and doing. This in fact, according to some, is the reason for plays being termed dramas, because in a play the personages act the story. Hence too both Tragedy and Comedy are claimed by the Dorians as their discoveries; Comedy by the Megarians—by those in Greece as having arisen when Megara became a democracy, and by the Sicilian Megarians on the ground that the poet Epicharmus was of their country, and a good deal earlier than Chionides and Magnes; even Tragedy also is claimed by certain of the Peloponnesian Dorians. In support of this claim they point to the words 'comedy' and 'drama' Their word

for the outlying hamlets, they say, is *comae*, whereas Athenians call them *demes*—thus assuming that comedians got the name not from their *comoe* or revels, but from their strolling from hamlet to hamlet, lack of appreciation
1448b keeping them out of the city. Their word also for 'to act', they say, is *dran*, whereas Athenians use *prattein*.

So much, then, as to the number and nature of the points of difference in the imitation of these arts.

4 It is clear that the general origin of poetry was due to two causes, each of them part of human nature. Imitation is natural to man from childhood, one of his advantages over the lower animals being this, that he is the most imitative creature in the world, and learns at first by imitation. And it is also natural for all to delight in works of imitation. The truth of this second point is shown by experience: though the objects themselves may be painful to see, we delight to view the most realistic representations of them in art, the forms for example of the lowest animals and of dead bodies. The explanation is to be found in a further fact: to be learning something is the greatest of pleasures not only to the philosopher but also to the rest of mankind, however small their capacity for it; the reason of the delight in seeing the picture is that one is at the same time learning—gathering the meaning of things, e. g. that the man there is so-and-so; for if one has not seen the thing before, one's pleasure will not be in the picture as an imitation of it, but will be due to the execution or colouring or some similar cause. Imitation, then, being natural to us —as also the sense of harmony and rhythm, the metres being obviously species of rhythms—it was through their original aptitude, and by a series of improvements for the most part gradual on their first efforts, that they created poetry out of their improvisations.

Poetry, however, soon broke up into two kinds according to the differences of character in the individual poets; for the graver among them would represent noble actions, and those of noble personages; and the meaner sort the actions of the ignoble. The latter class produced invectives at

first, just as others did hymns and panegyrics. We know of no such poem by any of the pre-Homeric poets, though there were probably many such writers among them; instances, however, may be found from Homer downwards, e. g. his *Margites*, and the similar poems of others. In this poetry of invective its natural fitness brought an iambic metre into use; hence our present term 'iambic', because it was the metre of their 'iambs' or invectives against one another. The result was that the old poets became some of them writers of heroic and others of iambic verse. Homer's position, however, is peculiar: just as he was in the serious style the poet of poets, standing alone not only through the literary excellence, but also through the dramatic character of his imitations, so too he was the first to outline for us the general forms of Comedy by producing not a dramatic invective, but a dramatic picture of the Ridiculous; his *Margites* in fact stands in the same relation to our comedies as the *Iliad* and *Odyssey* to our tragedies. 1449a As soon, however, as Tragedy and Comedy appeared in the field, those naturally drawn to the one line of poetry became writers of comedies instead of iambs, and those naturally drawn to the other, writers of tragedies instead of epics, because these new modes of art were grander and of more esteem than the old.

If it be asked whether Tragedy is now all that it need be in its formative elements, to consider that, and decide it theoretically and in relation to the theatres, is a matter for another inquiry.

It certainly began in improvisations—as did also Comedy; the one originating with the authors of the Dithyramb, the other with those of the phallic songs, which still survive as institutions in many of our cities. And its advance after that was little by little, through their improving on whatever they had before them at each stage. It was in fact only after a long series of changes that the movement of Tragedy stopped on its attaining to its natural form. (1) The number of actors was first increased to two by Aeschylus, who curtailed the business of the Chorus, and made the dialogue, or spoken portion, take the leading part

in the play. (2) A third actor and scenery were due to Sophocles. (3) Tragedy acquired also its magnitude. Discarding short stories and a ludicrous diction, through its passing out of its satyric stage, it assumed, though only at a late point in its progress, a tone of dignity; and its metre changed then from trochaic to iambic. The reason for their original use of the trochaic tetrameter was that their poetry was satyric and more connected with dancing than it now is. As soon, however, as a spoken part came in, nature herself found the appropriate metre. The iambic, we know, is the most speakable of metres, as is shown by the fact that we very often fall into it in conversation, whereas we rarely talk hexameters, and only when we depart from the speaking tone of voice. (4) Another change was a plurality of episodes or acts. As for the remaining matters, the superadded embellishments and the account of their introduction, these must be taken as said, as it would probably be a long piece of work to go through the details.

As for Comedy, it is (as has been observed [1]) an imitation of men worse than the average; worse, however, not as regards any and every sort of fault, but only as regards one particular kind, the Ridiculous, which is a species of the Ugly. The Ridiculous may be defined as a mistake or deformity not productive of pain or harm to others; the mask, for instance, that excites laughter, is something ugly and distorted without causing pain.

Though the successive changes in Tragedy and their authors are not unknown, we cannot say the same of Comedy; its early stages passed unnoticed, because it was
1449ᵇ not as yet taken up in a serious way. It was only at a late point in its progress that a chorus of comedians was officially granted by the archon; they used to be mere volunteers. It had also already certain definite forms at the time when the record of those termed comic poets begins. Who it was who supplied it with masks, or prologues, or a plurality of actors and the like, has remained unknown. The invented Fable, or Plot, however, originated in Sicily,

[1] 1448ª 17; 1448ᵇ 37.

with Epicharmus and Phormis; of Athenian poets Crates was the first to drop the Comedy of invective and frame stories of a general and non-personal nature, in other words, Fables or Plots.

Epic poetry, then, has been seen to agree with Tragedy to this extent, that of being an imitation of serious subjects in a grand kind of verse. It differs from it, however, (1) in that it is in one kind of verse and in narrative form; and (2) in its length—which is due to its action having no fixed limit of time, whereas Tragedy endeavours to keep as far as possible within a single circuit of the sun, or something near that. This, I say, is another point of difference between them, though at first the practice in this respect was just the same in tragedies as in epic poems. They differ also (3) in their constituents, some being common to both and others peculiar to Tragedy—hence a judge of good and bad in Tragedy is a judge of that in epic poetry also. All the parts of an epic are included in Tragedy; but those of Tragedy are not all of them to be found in the Epic.

6 Reserving hexameter poetry and Comedy for consideration hereafter,[1] let us proceed now to the discussion of Tragedy; before doing so, however, we must gather up the definition resulting from what has been said. A tragedy, then, is the imitation of an action that is serious and also, as having magnitude, complete in itself; in language with pleasurable accessories, each kind brought in separately in the parts of the work; in a dramatic, not in a narrative form; with incidents arousing pity and fear, wherewith to accomplish its catharsis of such emotions. Here by 'language with pleasurable accessories' I mean that with rhythm and harmony or song superadded; and by 'the kinds separately' I mean that some portions are worked out with verse only, and others in turn with song.

I. As they act the stories, it follows that in the first place the Spectacle (or stage-appearance of the actors) must be some part of the whole; and in the second Melody and Diction, these two being the means of their imitation. Here

[1] For hexameter poetry cf. chap. 23 f.; comedy was treated of in the lost Second Book.

by 'Diction' I mean merely this, the composition of the verses; and by 'Melody', what is too completely understood to require explanation. But further: the subject represented also is an action; and the action involves agents, who must necessarily have their distinctive qualities both of character and thought, since it is from these that we 1450[a] ascribe certain qualities to their actions. There are in the natural order of things, therefore, two causes, Thought and Character, of their actions, and consequently of their success or failure in their lives. Now the action (that which was done) is represented in the play by the Fable or Plot. The Fable, in our present sense of the term, is simply this, the combination of the incidents, or things done in the story; whereas Character is what makes us ascribe certain moral qualities to the agents; and Thought is shown in all they say when proving a particular point or, it may be, enunciating a general truth. There are six parts consequently of every tragedy, as a whole (that is) of such or such quality, viz. a Fable or Plot, Characters, Diction, Thought, Spectacle, and Melody; two of them arising from the means, one from the manner, and three from the objects of the dramatic imitation; and there is nothing else besides these six. Of these, its formative elements, then, not a few of the dramatists have made due use, as every play, one may say, admits of Spectacle, Character, Fable, Diction, Melody, and Thought.

II. The most important of the six is the combination of the incidents of the story. Tragedy is essentially an imitation not of persons but of action and life, of happiness and misery. All human happiness or misery takes the form of action; the end for which we live is a certain kind of activity, not a quality. Character gives us qualities, but it is in our actions—what we do—that we are happy or the reverse. In a play accordingly they do not act in order to portray the Characters; they include the Characters for the sake of the action. So that it is the action in it, i.e. its Fable or Plot, that is the end and purpose of the tragedy; and the end is everywhere the chief thing. Besides this, a tragedy is impossible without action, but there may be

one without Character. The tragedies of most of the moderns are characterless—a defect common among poets of all kinds, and with its counterpart in painting in Zeuxis as compared with Polygnotus; for whereas the latter is strong in character, the work of Zeuxis is devoid of it. And again: one may string together a series of characteristic speeches of the utmost finish as regards Diction and Thought, and yet fail to produce the true tragic effect; but one will have much better success with a tragedy which, however inferior in these respects, has a Plot, a combination of incidents, in it. And again: the most powerful elements of attraction in Tragedy, the Peripeties and Discoveries, are parts of the Plot. A further proof is in the fact that beginners succeed earlier with the Diction and Characters than with the construction of a story; and the same may be said of nearly all the early dramatists. We maintain, therefore, that the first essential, the life and soul, so to speak, of Tragedy is the Plot; and that the Characters come second—compare the parallel in painting, where the most beautiful colours laid on without order will not give one the same pleasure as a simple black-and-white sketch of a portrait. We maintain that Tragedy is primarily an imitation of action, and that it is mainly for the sake of the action that it imitates the personal agents. Third comes the element of Thought, i.e. the power of saying whatever can be said, or what is appropriate to the occasion. This is what, in the speeches in Tragedy, falls under the arts of Politics and Rhetoric; for the older poets make their personages discourse like statesmen, and the moderns like rhetoricians. One must not confuse it with Character. Character in a play is that which reveals the moral purpose of the agents, i.e. the sort of thing they seek or avoid, where that is not obvious—hence there is no room for Character in a speech on a purely indifferent subject. Thought, on the other hand, is shown in all they say when proving or disproving some particular point, or enunciating some universal proposition. Fourth among the literary elements is the Diction of the personages, i.e., as before explained,[1]

1450b

[1] 1449b 34.

the expression of their thoughts in words, which is practically the same thing with verse as with prose. As for the two remaining parts, the Melody is the greatest of the pleasurable accessories of Tragedy. The Spectacle, though an attraction, is the least artistic of all the parts, and has least to do with the art of poetry. The tragic effect is quite possible without a public performance and actors; and besides, the getting-up of the Spectacle is more a matter for the costumier than the poet.

Having thus distinguished the parts, let us now consider 7
the proper construction of the Fable or Plot, as that is at once the first and the most important thing in Tragedy. We have laid it down that a tragedy is an imitation of an action that is complete in itself, as a whole of some magnitude; for a whole may be of no magnitude to speak of. Now a whole is that which has beginning, middle, and end. A beginning is that which is not itself necessarily after anything else, and which has naturally something else after it; an end is that which is naturally after something itself, either as its necessary or usual consequent, and with nothing else after it; and a middle, that which is by nature after one thing and has also another after it. A well-constructed Plot, therefore, cannot either begin or end at any point one likes; beginning and end in it must be of the forms just described. Again: to be beautiful, a living creature, and every whole made up of parts, must not only present a certain order in its arrangement of parts, but also be of a certain definite magnitude. Beauty is a matter of size and order, and therefore impossible either (1) in a very minute creature, since our perception becomes indistinct as it approaches instantaneity; or (2) in a creature of vast size—one, say, 1,000 miles long—as in that case, instead of 1451a the object being seen all at once, the unity and wholeness of it is lost to the beholder. Just in the same way, then, as a beautiful whole made up of parts, or a beautiful living creature, must be of some size, but a size to be taken in by the eye, so a story or Plot must be of some length, but of a length to be taken in by the memory. As for the limit of

its length, so far as that is relative to public performances and spectators, it does not fall within the theory of poetry. If they had to perform a hundred tragedies, they would be timed by water-clocks, as they are said to have been at one period. The limit, however, set by the actual nature of the thing is this: the longer the story, consistently with its being comprehensible as a whole, the finer it is by reason of its magnitude. As a rough general formula, 'a length which allows of the hero passing by a series of probable or necessary stages from misfortune to happiness, or from happiness to misfortune', may suffice as a limit for the magnitude of the story.

8 The Unity of a Plot does not consist, as some suppose, in its having one man as its subject. An infinity of things befall that one man, some of which it is impossible to reduce to unity; and in like manner there are many actions of one man which cannot be made to form one action. One sees, therefore, the mistake of all the poets who have written a *Heracleid*, a *Theseid*, or similar poems; they suppose that, because Heracles was one man, the story also of Heracles must be one story. Homer, however, evidently understood this point quite well, whether by art or instinct, just in the same way as he excels the rest in every other respect. In writing an *Odyssey*, he did not make the poem cover all that ever befell his hero—it befell him, for instance, to get wounded on Parnassus and also to feign madness at the time of the call to arms, but the two incidents had no necessary or probable connexion with one another—instead of doing that, he took as the subject of the *Odyssey*, as also of the *Iliad*, an action with a Unity of the kind we are describing. The truth is that, just as in the other imitative arts one imitation is always of one thing, so in poetry the story, as an imitation of action, must represent one action, a complete whole, with its several incidents so closely connected that the transposal or withdrawal of any one of them will disjoin and dislocate the whole. For that which makes no perceptible difference by its presence or absence is no real part of the whole.

From what we have said it will be seen that the poet's 9
function is to describe, not the thing that has happened, but
a kind of thing that might happen, i. e. what is possible as
being probable or necessary. The distinction between
1451[b] historian and poet is not in the one writing prose and the
other verse—you might put the work of Herodotus into
verse, and it would still be a species of history; it consists
really in this, that the one describes the thing that has been,
5 and the other a kind of thing that might be. Hence poetry
is something more philosophic and of graver import than
history, since its statements are of the nature rather of
universals, whereas those of history are singulars. By a
universal statement I mean one as to what such or such
a kind of man will probably or necessarily say or do—which
is the aim of poetry, though it affixes proper names to the
10 characters; by a singular statement, one as to what, say,
Alcibiades did or had done to him. In Comedy this has
become clear by this time; it is only when their plot is
already made up of probable incidents that they give it
a basis of proper names, choosing for the purpose any
names that may occur to them, instead of writing like the
15 old iambic poets about particular persons. In Tragedy,
however, they still adhere to the historic names; and for
this reason: what convinces is the possible; now whereas
we are not yet sure as to the possibility of that which has
not happened, that which has happened is manifestly
possible, else it would not have come to pass. Nevertheless
even in Tragedy there are some plays with but one or two
20 known names in them, the rest being inventions; and there
are some without a single known name, e. g. Agathon's
Antheus, in which both incidents and names are of the poet's
invention; and it is no less delightful on that account. So
that one must not aim at a rigid adherence to the tradi-
25 tional stories on which tragedies are based. It would be
absurd, in fact, to do so, as even the known stories are only
known to a few, though they are a delight none the less
to all.

It is evident from the above that the poet must be more
the poet of his stories or Plots than of his verses, inasmuch

as he is a poet by virtue of the imitative element in his work, and it is actions that he imitates. And if he should come to take a subject from actual history, he is none the less a poet for that; since some historic occurrences may very well be in the probable and possible order of things; and it is in that aspect of them that he is their poet.

Of simple Plots and actions the episodic are the worst. I call a Plot episodic when there is neither probability nor necessity in the sequence of its episodes. Actions of this sort bad poets construct through their own fault, and good ones on account of the players. His work being for public performance, a good poet often stretches out a Plot beyond its capabilities, and is thus obliged to twist the sequence of incident.

Tragedy, however, is an imitation not only of a complete 1452a action, but also of incidents arousing pity and fear. Such incidents have the very greatest effect on the mind when they occur unexpectedly and at the same time in consequence of one another; there is more of the marvellous in them then than if they happened of themselves or by mere chance. Even matters of chance seem most marvellous if there is an appearance of design as it were in them; as for instance the statue of Mitys at Argos killed the author of Mitys' death by falling down on him when a looker-on at a public spectacle; for incidents like that we think to be not without a meaning. A Plot, therefore, of this sort is necessarily finer than others.

10 Plots are either simple or complex, since the actions they represent are naturally of this twofold description. The action, proceeding in the way defined, as one continuous whole, I call simple, when the change in the hero's fortunes takes place without Peripety or Discovery; and complex, when it involves one or the other, or both. These should each of them arise out of the structure of the Plot itself, so as to be the consequence, necessary or probable, of the antecedents. There is a great difference between a thing happening *propter hoc* and *post hoc*.

11 A Peripety is the change of the kind described from one

state of things within the play to its opposite, and that too in the way we are saying, in the probable or necessary sequence of events; as it is for instance in *Oedipus*: here the opposite state of things is produced by the Messenger, who, coming to gladden Oedipus and to remove his fears as to his mother, reveals the secret of his birth.[1] And in *Lynceus*:[2] just as he is being led off for execution, with Danaus at his side to put him to death, the incidents preceding this bring it about that he is saved and Danaus put to death. A Discovery is, as the very word implies, a change from ignorance to knowledge, and thus to either love or hate, in the personages marked for good or evil fortune. The finest form of Discovery is one attended by Peripeties, like that which goes with the Discovery in *Oedipus*. There are no doubt other forms of it; what we have said may happen in a way in reference to inanimate things, even things of a very casual kind; and it is also possible to discover whether some one has done or not done something. But the form most directly connected with the Plot and the action of the piece is the first-mentioned. 1452b This, with a Peripety, will arouse either pity or fear—actions of that nature being what Tragedy is assumed to represent; and it will also serve to bring about the happy or unhappy ending. The Discovery, then, being of persons, it may be that of one party only to the other, the latter being already known; or both the parties may have to discover themselves. Iphigenia, for instance, was discovered to Orestes by sending the letter;[3] and another Discovery was required to reveal him to Iphigenia.

Two parts of the Plot, then, Peripety and Discovery, are on matters of this sort. A third part is Suffering; which we may define as an action of a destructive or painful nature, such as murders on the stage, tortures, woundings, and the like. The other two have been already explained.

The parts of Tragedy to be treated as formative elements **12** in the whole were mentioned in a previous Chapter.[4] From the point of view, however, of its quantity, i. e. the separate

[1] *O. T.* 911–1085. [2] By Theodectes. [3] *Iph. Taur.* 727 ff.
[4] Ch. 6.

sections into which it is divided, a tragedy has the following parts: Prologue, Episode, Exode, and a choral portion, distinguished into Parode and Stasimon; these two are common to all tragedies, whereas songs from the stage and *Commoe* are only found in some. The Prologue is all that precedes the Parode of the chorus; an Episode all that comes in between two whole choral songs; the Exode all that follows after the last choral song. In the choral portion the Parode is the whole first statement of the chorus; a Stasimon, a song of the chorus without anapaests or trochees; a *Commos*, a lamentation sung by chorus and actor in concert. The parts of Tragedy to be used as formative elements in the whole we have already mentioned; the above are its parts from the point of view of its quantity, or the separate sections into which it is divided.

13 The next points after what we have said above will be these: (1) What is the poet to aim at, and what is he to avoid, in constructing his Plots? and (2) What are the conditions on which the tragic effect depends?

We assume that, for the finest form of Tragedy, the Plot must be not simple but complex; and further, that it must imitate actions arousing fear and pity, since that is the distinctive function of this kind of imitation. It follows, therefore, that there are three forms of Plot to be avoided. (1) A good man must not be seen passing from happiness to misery, or (2) a bad man from misery to happiness. The first situation is not fear-inspiring or piteous, but simply odious to us. The second is the most untragic that can be; it has no one of the requisites of Tragedy; it does not appeal either to the human feeling in us, or to our pity, or to our fears. Nor, on the other hand, should (3) an 1453a extremely bad man be seen falling from happiness into misery. Such a story may arouse the human feeling in us, but it will not move us to either pity or fear; pity is occasioned by undeserved misfortune, and fear by that of one like ourselves; so that there will be nothing either piteous or fear-inspiring in the situation. There remains, then, the intermediate kind of personage, a man not pre-

eminently virtuous and just, whose misfortune, however, is brought upon him not by vice and depravity but by some error of judgement, of the number of those in the enjoyment of great reputation and prosperity; e. g. Oedipus, Thyestes, and the men of note of similar families. The perfect Plot, accordingly, must have a single, and not (as some tell us) a double issue; the change in the hero's fortunes must be not from misery to happiness, but on the contrary from happiness to misery; and the cause of it must lie not in any depravity, but in some great error on his part; the man himself being either such as we have described, or better, not worse, than that. Fact also confirms our theory. Though the poets began by accepting any tragic story that came to hand, in these days the finest tragedies are always on the story of some few houses, on that of Alcmeon, Oedipus, Orestes, Meleager, Thyestes, Telephus, or any others that may have been involved, as either agents or sufferers, in some deed of horror. The theoretically best tragedy, then, has a Plot of this description. The critics, therefore, are wrong who blame Euripides for taking this line in his tragedies, and giving many of them an unhappy ending. It is, as we have said, the right line to take. The best proof is this: on the stage, and in the public performances, such plays, properly worked out, are seen to be the most truly tragic; and Euripides, even if his execution be faulty in every other point, is seen to be nevertheless the most tragic certainly of the dramatists. After this comes the construction of Plot which some rank first, one with a double story (like the *Odyssey*) and an opposite issue for the good and the bad personages. It is ranked as first only through the weakness of the audiences; the poets merely follow their public, writing as its wishes dictate. But the pleasure here is not that of Tragedy. It belongs rather to Comedy, where the bitterest enemies in the piece (e. g. Orestes and Aegisthus) walk off good friends at the end, with no slaying of any one by any one.

1453[b] The tragic fear and pity may be aroused by the Spectacle; but they may also be aroused by the very 14

structure and incidents of the play—which is the better way and shows the better poet. The Plot in fact should be so framed that, even without seeing the things take place, he who simply hears the account of them shall be filled with horror and pity at the incidents; which is just the effect that the mere recital of the story in *Oedipus* would have on one. To produce this same effect by means of the Spectacle is less artistic, and requires extraneous aid. Those, however, who make use of the Spectacle to put before us that which is merely monstrous and not productive of fear, are wholly out of touch with Tragedy; not every kind of pleasure should be required of a tragedy, but only its own proper pleasure.

The tragic pleasure is that of pity and fear, and the poet has to produce it by a work of imitation; it is clear, therefore, that the causes should be included in the incidents of his story. Let us see, then, what kinds of incident strike one as horrible, or rather as piteous. In a deed of this description the parties must necessarily be either friends, or enemies, or indifferent to one another. Now when enemy does it on enemy, there is nothing to move us to pity either in his doing or in his meditating the deed, except so far as the actual pain of the sufferer is concerned; and the same is true when the parties are indifferent to one another. Whenever the tragic deed, however, is done within the family—when murder or the like is done or meditated by brother on brother, by son on father, by mother on son, or son on mother—these are the situations the poet should seek after. The traditional stories, accordingly, must be kept as they are, e. g. the murder of Clytaemnestra by Orestes and of Eriphyle by Alcmeon. At the same time even with these there is something left to the poet himself; it is for him to devise the right way of treating them. Let us explain more clearly what we mean by 'the right way'. The deed of horror may be done by the doer knowingly and consciously, as in the old poets, and in Medea's murder of her children in Euripides.[1] Or he may do it, but in ignorance of his relationship, and discover that afterwards,

[1] *Med.* 1236.

as does the Oedipus in Sophocles. Here the deed is outside the play; but it may be within it, like the act of the Alcmeon in Astydamas, or that of the Telegonus in *Ulysses Wounded*.[1] A third possibility is for one meditating some deadly injury to another, in ignorance of his relationship, to make the discovery in time to draw back. These exhaust the possibilities, since the deed must necessarily be either done or not done, and either knowingly or unknowingly.

The worst situation is when the personage is with full knowledge on the point of doing the deed, and leaves it undone. It is odious and also (through the absence of suffering) untragic; hence it is that no one is made to act thus except in some few instances, e.g. Haemon and Creon in *Antigone*.[2] Next after this comes the actual perpetration of the deed meditated. A better situation than that, however, is for the deed to be done in ignorance, and the relationship discovered afterwards, since there is nothing odious in it, and the Discovery will serve to astound us. But the best of all is the last; what we have in *Cresphontes*,[3] for example, where Merope, on the point of slaying her son, recognizes him in time; in *Iphigenia*, where sister and brother are in a like position; and in *Helle*,[4] where the son recognizes his mother, when on the point of giving her up to her enemy.

This will explain why our tragedies are restricted (as we said just now)[5] to such a small number of families. It was accident rather than art that led the poets in quest of subjects to embody this kind of incident in their Plots. They are still obliged, accordingly, to have recourse to the families in which such horrors have occurred.

On the construction of the Plot, and the kind of Plot required for Tragedy, enough has now been said.

In the Characters there are four points to aim at. First and foremost, that they shall be good. There will be an element of character in the play, if (as has been observed)[6] what a personage says or does reveals a certain moral

[1] Perhaps by Sophocles. [2] l. 1231. [3] By Euripides.
[4] Authorship unknown. [5] 1453[a] 19. [6] 1450[b] 8.

purpose; and a good element of character, if the purpose so revealed is good. Such goodness is possible in every type of personage, even in a woman or a slave, though the one is perhaps an inferior, and the other a wholly worthless being. The second point is to make them appropriate. The Character before us may be, say, manly; but it is not appropriate in a female Character to be manly, or clever. The third is to make them like the reality, which is not the same as their being good and appropriate, in our sense of the term. The fourth is to make them consistent and the same throughout; even if inconsistency be part of the man before one for imitation as presenting that form of character, he should still be consistently inconsistent. We have an instance of baseness of character, not required for the story, in the Menelaus in *Orestes*; of the incongruous and unbefitting in the lamentation of Ulysses in *Scylla*,[1] and in the (clever) speech of Melanippe;[2] and of inconsistency in *Iphigenia at Aulis*,[3] where Iphigenia the suppliant is utterly unlike the later Iphigenia. The right thing, however, is in the Characters just as in the incidents of the play to endeavour always after the necessary or the probable; so that whenever such-and-such a personage says or does such-and-such a thing, it shall be the necessary or probable outcome of his character; and whenever this incident follows on that, it shall be either the necessary or the probable consequence of it. From this one sees (to digress for a moment) that the Dénouement also should arise out of the plot itself, and 1454[b] not depend on a stage-artifice, as in *Medea*,[4] or in the story of the (arrested) departure of the Greeks in the *Iliad*.[5] The artifice must be reserved for matters outside the play —for past events beyond human knowledge, or events yet to come, which require to be foretold or announced; since it is the privilege of the Gods to know everything. There should be nothing improbable among the actual incidents. If it be unavoidable, however, it should be outside the tragedy, like the improbability in the *Oedipus* of Sophocles. But to return to the Characters. As Tragedy is an imita-

[1] A dithyramb by Timotheus. [2] (Euripides).
[3] ll. 1211 ff., 1368 ff. [4] l. 1317. [5] ii. 155.

tion of personages better than the ordinary man, we in our way should follow the example of good portrait-painters, who reproduce the distinctive features of a man, and at the same time, without losing the likeness, make him handsomer than he is. The poet in like manner, in portraying men quick or slow to anger, or with similar infirmities of character, must know how to represent them as such, and at the same time as good men, as Agathon and Homer have represented Achilles.

All these rules one must keep in mind throughout, and, further, those also for such points of stage-effect as directly depend on the art of the poet, since in these too one may often make mistakes. Enough, however, has been said on the subject in one of our published writings.[1]

Discovery in general has been explained already.[2] As 16
for the species of Discovery, the first to be noted is (1) the least artistic form of it, of which the poets make most use through mere lack of invention, Discovery by signs or marks. Of these signs some are congenital, like the 'lance-head which the Earth-born have on them',[3] or 'stars', such as Carcinus brings in his *Thyestes*; others acquired after birth—these latter being either marks on the body, e. g. scars, or external tokens, like necklaces, or (to take another sort of instance) the ark in the Discovery in *Tyro*.[4] Even these, however, admit of two uses, a better and a worse; the scar of Ulysses is an instance; the Discovery of him through it is made in one way by the nurse[5] and in another by the swineherds.[6] A Discovery using signs as a means of assurance is less artistic, as indeed are all such as imply reflection; whereas one bringing them in all of a sudden, as in the *Bath-story*,[7] is of a better order. Next after these are (2) Discoveries made directly by the poet; which are inartistic for that very reason; e. g. Orestes' Discovery of himself in *Iphigenia*: whereas his sister reveals who she is by the letter,[8] Orestes is made to say himself what the poet rather than the story demands.[9] This, therefore, is not

[1] In the lost dialogue *On Poets*. [2] 1452a 29.
[3] Authorship unknown. [4] By Euripides. [5] *Od.* xix. 386–475.
[6] *Od.* xxi. 205–25. [7] *Od.* xix. 392. [8] *Iph. Taur.* 727 ff.
[9] Ib., 800 ff.

far removed from the first-mentioned fault, since he might have presented certain tokens as well. Another instance is the 'shuttle's voice' in the *Tereus* of Sophocles. (3) A third species is Discovery through memory, from a man's consciousness being awakened by something seen. Thus 1455a in *The Cyprioe* of Dicaeogenes, the sight of the picture makes the man burst into tears; and in the *Tale of Alcinous*,[1] hearing the harper Ulysses is reminded of the past and weeps; the Discovery of them being the result. (4) A fourth kind is Discovery through reasoning; e.g. in *The Choephoroe*;[2] 'One like me is here; there is no one like me but Orestes; he, therefore, must be here.' Or that which Polyidus the Sophist suggested for *Iphigenia*; since it was natural for Orestes to reflect: 'My sister was sacrificed and I am to be sacrificed like her.' Or that in the *Tydeus* of Theodectes: 'I came to find a son, and am to die myself.' Or that in *The Phinidae*:[3] on seeing the place the women inferred their fate, that they were to die there, since they had also been exposed there. (5) There is, too, a composite Discovery arising from bad reasoning on the side of the other party. An instance of it is in *Ulysses the False Messenger*:[3] he said he should know the bow—which he had not seen; but to suppose from that that he would know it again (as though he had once seen it) was bad reasoning. (6) The best of all Discoveries, however, is that arising from the incidents themselves, when the great surprise comes about through a probable incident, like that in the *Oedipus* of Sophocles; and also in *Iphigenia*;[4] for it was not improbable that she should wish to have a letter taken home. These last are the only Discoveries independent of the artifice of signs and necklaces. Next after them come Discoveries through reasoning.

17 At the time when he is constructing his Plots, and engaged on the Diction in which they are worked out, the poet should remember (1) to put the actual scenes as far as possible before his eyes. In this way, seeing everything with the vividness of an eye-witness as it were, he will

[1] *Od.* viii. 521 ff. (cf. viii. 83 ff.). [2] ll. 168–234.
[3] Authorship unknown. [4] *Iph. Taur.* 582.

devise what is appropriate, and be least likely to overlook incongruities. This is shown by what was censured in Carcinus, the return of Amphiaraus from the sanctuary; it would have passed unnoticed, if it had not been actually seen by the audience; but on the stage his play failed, the incongruity of the incident offending the spectators. (2) As far as may be, too, the poet should even act his story with the very gestures of his personages. Given the same natural qualifications, he who feels the emotions to be described will be the most convincing; distress and anger, for instance, are portrayed most truthfully by one who is feeling them at the moment. Hence it is that poetry demands a man with a special gift for it, or else one with a touch of madness in him; the former can easily assume the required mood, and the latter may be actually beside himself with emotion. (3) His story, again, whether already made or of his own making, he should first simplify and reduce to a universal form, before proceeding to lengthen it out by the insertion of episodes. The following will show how the universal element in *Iphigenia*, for instance, may be viewed: A certain maiden having been offered in sacrifice, and spirited away from her sacrificers into another land, where the custom was to sacrifice all strangers to the Goddess, she was made there the priestess of this rite. Long after that the brother of the priestess happened to come; the fact, however, of the oracle having for a certain reason bidden him go thither, and his object in going, are outside the Plot of the play. On his coming he was arrested, and about to be sacrificed, when he revealed who he was—either as Euripides puts it, or (as suggested by Polyidus) by the not improbable exclamation, 'So I too am doomed to be sacrificed, as my sister was'; and the disclosure led to his salvation. This done, the next thing, after the proper names have been fixed as a basis for the story, is to work in episodes or accessory incidents. One must mind, however, that the episodes are appropriate, like the fit of madness[1] in Orestes, which led to his arrest, and the purifying,[2] which brought about his salvation. In plays,

[1] *Iph. Taur.* 281 ff. [2] Ib., 1163 ff.

then, the episodes are short; in epic poetry they serve to lengthen out the poem. The argument of the *Odyssey* is not a long one. A certain man has been abroad many years; Poseidon is ever on the watch for him, and he is all alone. Matters at home too have come to this, that his substance is being wasted and his son's death plotted by suitors to his wife. Then he arrives there himself after his grievous sufferings; reveals himself, and falls on his enemies; and the end is his salvation and their death. This being all that is proper to the *Odyssey*, everything else in it is episode.

18 (4) There is a further point to be borne in mind. Every tragedy is in part Complication and in part Dénouement; the incidents before the opening scene, and often certain also of those within the play, forming the Complication; and the rest the Dénouement. By Complication I mean all from the beginning of the story to the point just before the change in the hero's fortunes; by Dénouement, all from the beginning of the change to the end. In the *Lynceus* of Theodectes, for instance, the Complication includes, together with the presupposed incidents, the seizure of the child and that in turn of the parents; and the Dénouement all from the indictment for the murder to the end. Now it 1456a 7 is right, when one speaks of a tragedy as the same or not the same as another, to do so on the ground before all else of their Plot, i.e. as having the same or not the same Complication and Dénouement. Yet there are many dramatists who, after a good Complication, fail in the Dénouement. But it is necessary for both points of construction to be always duly mastered. (5) There are four 1455b 32 distinct species of Tragedy—that being the number of the constituents also that have been mentioned:[1] first, the complex Tragedy, which is all Peripety and Discovery; second, the Tragedy of suffering, e.g. the *Ajaxes* and *Ixions*; third, the Tragedy of character, e.g. *The Phthiotides*[2] and 1456a *Peleus*.[3] The fourth constituent is that of 'Spectacle',

[1] This does not agree with anything actually said before.
[2] By Sophocles. [3] Probably Sophocles' *Peleus* is incorrect.

exemplified in *The Phorcides*,[1] in *Prometheus*,[2] and in all plays with the scene laid in the nether world. The poet's aim, then, should be to combine every element of interest, if possible, or else the more important and the major part of them. This is now especially necessary owing to the unfair criticism to which the poet is subjected in these days. Just because there have been poets before him strong in the several species of tragedy, the critics now expect the one man to surpass that which was the strong point of each one of his predecessors. (6) One should also remember what has been said more than once,[3] and not write a tragedy on an epic body of incident (i.e. one with a plurality of stories in it), by attempting to dramatize, for instance, the entire story of the *Iliad*. In the epic owing to its scale every part is treated at proper length; with a drama, however, on the same story the result is very disappointing. This is shown by the fact that all who have dramatized the fall of Ilium in its entirety, and not part by part. like Euripides, or the whole of the Niobe story, instead of a portion, like Aeschylus, either fail utterly or have but ill success on the stage; for that and that alone was enough to ruin even a play by Agathon. Yet in their Peripeties, as also in their simple plots, the poets I mean show wonderful skill in aiming at the kind of effect they desire—a tragic situation that arouses the human feeling in one, like the clever villain (e.g. Sisyphus) deceived, or the brave wrongdoer worsted. This is probable, however, only in Agathon's sense, when he speaks of the probability of even improbabilities coming to pass. (7) The Chorus too should be regarded as one of the actors; it should be an integral part of the whole, and take a share in the action—that which it has in Sophocles, rather than in Euripides. With the later poets, however, the songs in a play of theirs have no more to do with the Plot of that than of any other tragedy. Hence it is that they are now singing intercalary pieces, a practice first introduced by Agathon. And yet what real difference is there between singing such intercalary pieces, and attempting

[1] By Aeschylus. [2] Probably a satyric drama by Aeschylus.
[3] A loose reference to 1449ᵇ 12, 1455ᵇ 15.

to fit in a speech, or even a whole act, from one play into another?

19 The Plot and Characters having been discussed, it remains to consider the Diction and Thought. As for the Thought, we may assume what is said of it in our Art of Rhetoric,[1] as it belongs more properly to that department of inquiry. The Thought of the personages is shown in everything to be effected by their language—in every effort to prove or disprove, to arouse emotion (pity, fear, anger, and the like), or to maximize or minimize things. It is clear, also, that their mental procedure must be on the same lines in their actions likewise, whenever they wish them to arouse pity or horror, or to have a look of importance or probability. The only difference is that with the act the impression has to be made without explanation; whereas with the spoken word it has to be produced by the speaker, and result from his language. What, indeed, would be the good of the speaker, if things appeared in the required light even apart from anything he says?

As regards the Diction, one subject for inquiry under this head is the turns given to the language when spoken; e.g. the difference between command and prayer, simple statement and threat, question and answer, and so forth. The theory of such matters, however, belongs to Elocution and the professors of that art. Whether the poet knows these things or not, his art as a poet is never seriously criticized on that account. What fault can one see in Homer's 'Sing of the wrath, Goddess'?—which Protagoras has criticized as being a command where a prayer was meant, since to bid one do or not do, he tells us, is a command. Let us pass over this, then, as appertaining to another art, and not to that of poetry.

20 The Diction viewed as a whole is made up of the following parts: the Letter (or ultimate element), the Syllable, the Conjunction, the Article, the Noun, the Verb, the Case, and the Speech. (1) The Letter is an indivisible sound of

[1] Cf. especially *Rhet.* 1356a 1.

a particular kind, one that may become a factor in an intelligible sound. Indivisible sounds are uttered by the brutes also, but no one of these is a Letter in our sense of the term. These elementary sounds are either vowels, semivowels, or mutes. A vowel is a Letter having an audible sound without the addition of another Letter. A semivowel, one having an audible sound by the addition of another Letter; e.g. S and R. A mute, one having no sound at all by itself, but becoming audible by an addition, that of one of the Letters which have a sound of some sort of their own; e.g. G and D. The Letters differ in various ways: as produced by different conformations or in different regions of the mouth; as aspirated, not aspirated, or sometimes one and sometimes the other; as long, short, or of variable quantity; and further as having an acute, grave, or intermediate accent. The details of these matters we must leave to the metricians. (2) A Syllable is a non-significant composite sound, made up of a mute and a Letter having a sound (a vowel or semivowel); for GR, without an A, is just as much a Syllable as GRA, with an A. The various forms of the Syllable also belong to the theory of metre. (3) A Conjunction is (*a*) a non-significant sound which, when one significant sound is formable out of several, neither hinders nor aids the union, and which, if the Speech thus formed stands by itself (apart from other Speeches), must not be inserted at the beginning of it; e.g. μέν, δή, τοι, δέ. Or (*b*) a non-significant sound capable of combining two or more significant sounds into one; e.g. ἀμφί, περί, &c. (4) An Article is a non-significant sound marking the beginning, end, or dividing-point of a Speech, its natural place being either at the extremities or in the middle. (5) A Noun or name is a composite significant sound not involving the idea of time, with parts which have no significance by themselves in it. It is to be remembered that in a compound we do not think of the parts as having a significance also by themselves; in the name 'Theodorus', for instance, the δῶρον means nothing to us. (6) A Verb is a composite significant sound involving the idea of time, with parts which (just as in the Noun) have no significance by them-

selves in it. Whereas the word 'man' or 'white' does not imply *when*, 'walks' and 'has walked' involve in addition to the idea of walking that of time present or time past. (7) A Case of a Noun or Verb is when the word means 'of' or 'to' a thing, and so forth, or for one or many (e.g. 'man' and 'men'); or it may consist merely in the mode of utterance, e.g. in question, command, &c. 'Walked?' and 'Walk!' are Cases of the verb 'to walk' of this last kind. (8) A Speech is a composite significant sound, some of the parts of which have a certain significance by themselves. It may be observed that a Speech is not always made up of Noun and Verb; it may be without a Verb, like the definition of man; but it will always have some part with a certain significance by itself. In the Speech 'Cleon walks', 'Cleon' is an instance of such a part. A Speech is said to be one in two ways, either as signifying one thing, or as a union of several Speeches made into one by conjunction. Thus the *Iliad* is one Speech by conjunction of several; and the definition of man is one through its signifying one thing.

21 Nouns are of two kinds, either (1) simple, i.e. made up of non-significant parts, like the word γῆ, or (2) double; in the latter case the word may be made up either of a significant and a non-significant part (a distinction which disappears in the compound), or of two significant parts. It is possible also to have triple, quadruple, or higher compounds, like most of our amplified names; e.g. 'Hermocaïcoxanthus' and the like.

Whatever its structure, a Noun must always be either 1457[b] (1) the ordinary word for the thing, or (2) a strange word, or (3) a metaphor, or (4) an ornamental word, or (5) a coined word, or (6) a word lengthened out, or (7) curtailed, or (8) altered in form. By the ordinary word I mean that in general use in a country; and by a strange word, one in use elsewhere. So that the same word may obviously be at once strange and ordinary, though not in reference to the same people; σίγυνον, for instance, is an ordinary word in Cyprus, and a strange word with us. Metaphor consists in giving

the thing a name that belongs to something else; the transference being either from genus to species, or from species to genus, or from species to species, or on grounds of analogy. That from genus to species is exemplified in 'Here stands my ship';[1] for lying at anchor is the 'standing' of a particular kind of thing. That from species to genus in 'Truly ten thousand good deeds has Ulysses wrought',[2] where 'ten thousand', which is a particular large number, is put in place of the generic 'a large number'. That from species to species in 'Drawing the life with the bronze',[3] and in 'Severing with the enduring bronze';[3] where the poet uses 'draw' in the sense of 'sever' and 'sever' in that of 'draw', both words meaning to 'take away' something. That from analogy is possible whenever there are four terms so related that the second (B) is to the first (A), as the fourth (D) to the third (C); for one may then metaphorically put D in lieu of B, and B in lieu of D. Now and then, too, they qualify the metaphor by adding on to it that to which the word it supplants is relative. Thus a cup (B) is in relation to Dionysus (A) what a shield (D) is to Ares (C). The cup accordingly will be metaphorically described as the 'shield *of Dionysus*' (D+A), and the shield as the 'cup *of Ares*'[4] (B+C). Or to take another instance: As old age (D) is to life (C), so is evening (B) to day (A). One will accordingly describe evening (B) as the 'old age *of the day*' (D+A)—or by the Empedoclean equivalent; and old age (D) as the 'evening'[5] or 'sunset *of life*'[6] (B+C). It may be that some of the terms thus related have no special name of their own, but for all that they will be metaphorically described in just the same way. Thus to cast forth seed-corn is called 'sowing'; but to cast forth its flame, as said of the sun, has no special name. This nameless act (B), however, stands in just the same relation to its object, sunlight (A), as sowing (D) to the seed-corn (C). Hence the expression in the poet, 'sowing around a god-created *flame*'[7] (D+A). There is also an-

[1] *Od.* i. 185, xxiv. 308. [2] *Il.* ii. 272.
[3] Empedocles, Καθαρμοί (cf. fr. 143, Diels).
[4] Timotheus, fr. 22, Wilamowitz. [5] Alexis, fr. 228, Kock.
[6] Pl., *Laws* 770 A. [7] Authorship unknown.

other form of qualified metaphor. Having given the thing the alien name, one may by a negative addition deny of it one of the attributes naturally associated with its new name. An instance of this would be to call the shield not the 'cup *of Ares*', as in the former case, but a 'cup *that holds no wine*'. . . . A coined word is a name which, being quite unknown among a people, is given by the poet himself; e.g. (for there are some words that seem to be of this origin) ἔρυγες for horns, and ἀρητήρ for priest.[1] A word is said to be lengthened out, when it has a short vowel made long, or an extra syllable inserted; e.g. πόληος for πόλεως, Πηληιάδεω for Πηλείδου. It is said to be curtailed, when it has lost a part; e.g. κρῖ, δῶ, and ὄψ in μία γίνεται ἀμφοτέρων ὄψ.[2] It is an altered word, when part is left as it was and part is of the poet's making; e.g. δεξιτερόν for δεξιόν, in δεξιτερὸν κατὰ μαζόν.[3]

The Nouns themselves (to whatever class they may belong) are either masculines, feminines, or intermediates (neuter). All ending in N, P, Σ, or in the two compounds of this last, Ψ and Ξ, are masculines. All ending in the invariably long vowels, H and Ω, and in A among the vowels that may be long, are feminines. So that there is an equal number of masculine and feminine terminations, as Ψ and Ξ are the same as Σ, and need not be counted. There is no Noun, however, ending in a mute or in either of the two short vowels, E and O. Only three (μέλι, κόμμι, πέπερι) end in I, and five in Υ. The intermediates, or neuters, end in the variable vowels or in N, P, Σ.

22 The perfection of Diction is for it to be at once clear and not mean. The clearest indeed is that made up of the ordinary words for things, but it is mean, as is shown by the poetry of Cleophon and Sthenelus. On the other hand the Diction becomes distinguished and non-prosaic by the use of unfamiliar terms, i.e. strange words, metaphors, lengthened forms, and everything that deviates from the ordinary modes of speech.—But a whole statement in such terms will be either a riddle or a barbarism, a riddle, if made up

[1] *Il.* i. 11. [2] Emp. fr. 88, Diels. [3] *Il.* v. 393.

of metaphors, a barbarism, if made up of strange words. The very nature indeed of a riddle is this, to describe a fact in an impossible combination of words (which cannot be done with the real names for things, but can be with their metaphorical substitutes); e.g. 'I saw a man glue brass on another with fire',[1] and the like. The corresponding use of strange words results in a barbarism.—A certain admixture, accordingly, of unfamiliar terms is necessary. These, the strange word, the metaphor, the ornamental equivalent, &c., will save the language from seeming mean and prosaic, while the ordinary words in it will secure the requisite clear-
1458b ness. What helps most, however, to render the Diction at once clear and non-prosaic is the use of the lengthened, curtailed, and altered forms of words. Their deviation from the ordinary words will, by making the language unlike that in general use, give it a non-prosaic appearance; and their having much in common with the words in general use will give it the quality of clearness. It is not right, then, to condemn these modes of speech, and ridicule the poet for using them, as some have done; e.g. the elder Euclid, who said it was easy to make poetry if one were to be allowed to lengthen the words in the statement itself as much as one likes—a procedure he caricatured by reading Ἐπιχάρην εἶδον Μαραθῶνάδε βαδίζοντα, and οὐκ ἄν γ' ἐράμενος τὸν ἐκείνου ἐλλέβορον as verses. A too apparent use of these licences has certainly a ludicrous effect, but they are not alone in that; the rule of moderation applies to all the constituents of the poetic vocabulary; even with metaphors, strange words, and the rest, the effect will be the same, if one uses them improperly and with a view to provoking laughter. The proper use of them is a very different thing. To realize the difference one should take an epic verse and see how it reads when the normal words are introduced. The same should be done too with the strange word, the metaphor, and the rest; for one has only to put the ordinary words in their place to see the truth of what we are saying. The same iambic, for instance, is found in Aeschylus and Euripides, and as it stands in the former it is a poor line;

[1] Cleobulina, fr. 1, Bergk.

whereas Euripides, by the change of a single word, the substitution of a strange for what is by usage the ordinary word, has made it seem a fine one. Aeschylus having said in his *Philoctetes*:

φαγέδαινα ἥ μου σάρκας ἐσθίει ποδός,[1]

Euripides has merely altered the ἐσθίει here into θοινᾶται.[2] Or suppose

νῦν δέ μ' ἐὼν ὀλίγος τε καὶ οὐτιδανὸς καὶ ἀεικής[3]

to be altered, by the substitution of the ordinary words, into

νῦν δέ μ' ἐὼν μικρός τε καὶ ἀσθενικὸς καὶ ἀειδής.

Or the line

δίφρον ἀεικέλιον καταθεὶς ὀλίγην τε τράπεζαν[4]

into

δίφρον μοχθηρὸν καταθεὶς μικράν τε τράπεζαν.

Or ἠιόνες βοόωσιν[5] into ἠιόνες κράζουσιν. Add to this that Ariphrades used to ridicule the tragedians for introducing expressions unknown in the language of common life, δωμάτων ἄπο (for ἀπὸ δωμάτων), σέθεν, ἐγὼ δέ νιν,[6] Ἀχιλλέως πέρι (for περὶ Ἀχιλλέως), and the like. The mere fact of their not being in ordinary speech gives the Diction a non-prosaic character; but Ariphrades was unaware of that. It is a great thing, indeed, to make a proper use of these poetical forms, as also of compounds and strange words. But the greatest thing by far is to be a master of metaphor. It is the one thing that cannot be learnt from others; and it is also a sign of genius, since a good metaphor implies an intuitive perception of the similarity in dissimilars.

Of the kinds of words we have enumerated it may be observed that compounds are most in place in the dithyramb, strange words in heroic, and metaphors in iambic poetry. Heroic poetry, indeed, may avail itself of them all. But in iambic verse, which models itself as far as possible on the spoken language, only those kinds of words are in place which are allowable also in an oration, i.e. the ordinary word, the metaphor, and the ornamental equivalent.

[1] Nauck, *T. G. F.*², p. 81. [2] Ib., p. 618. [3] *Od.* ix. 515.
[4] *Od.* xx. 259. [5] *Il.* xvii. 265. [6] Soph., *O. C.*, 986.

Let this, then, suffice as an account of Tragedy, the art imitating by means of action on the stage.

23 As for the poetry which merely narrates, or imitates by means of versified language (without action), it is evident that it has several points in common with Tragedy.

I. The construction of its stories should clearly be like that in a drama; they should be based on a single action, one that is a complete whole in itself, with a beginning, middle, and end, so as to enable the work to produce its own proper pleasure with all the organic unity of a living creature. Nor should one suppose that there is anything like them in our usual histories. A history has to deal not with one action, but with one period and all that happened in that to one or more persons, however disconnected the several events may have been. Just as two events may take place at the same time, e.g. the sea-fight off Salamis and the battle with the Carthaginians in Sicily, without converging to the same end, so too of two consecutive events one may sometimes come after the other with no one end as their common issue. Nevertheless most of our epic poets, one may say, ignore the distinction.

Herein, then, to repeat what we have said before,[1] we have a further proof of Homer's marvellous superiority to the rest. He did not attempt to deal even with the Trojan war in its entirety, though it was a whole with a definite beginning and end—through a feeling apparently that it was too long a story to be taken in in one view, or if not that, too complicated from the variety of incident in it. As it is, he has singled out one section of the whole; many of the other incidents, however, he brings in as episodes, using the Catalogue of the Ships, for instance, and other episodes to relieve the uniformity of his narrative. As for the other epic poets, they treat of one man, or one period; or else of an action which, although one, has a multiplicity of parts
1459ᵇ in it. This last is what the authors of the *Cypria*[2] and *Little Iliad*[2] have done. And the result is that, whereas the *Iliad*

[1] 1451ª 23 ff. [2] Authorship unknown.

or *Odyssey* supplies materials for only one, or at most two tragedies, the *Cypria* does that for several and the *Little Iliad* for more than eight: for an *Adjudgment of Arms*, a *Philoctetes*, a *Neoptolemus*, a *Eurypylus*, a *Ulysses as Beggar*, a *Laconian Women*, a *Fall of Ilium*, and a *Departure of the Fleet*; as also a *Sinon*, and a *Women of Troy*.

24 II. Besides this, Epic poetry must divide into the same species as Tragedy; it must be either simple or complex, a story of character or one of suffering. Its parts, too, with the exception of Song and Spectacle, must be the same, as it requires Peripeties, Discoveries, and scenes of suffering just like Tragedy. Lastly, the Thought and Diction in it must be good in their way. All these elements appear in Homer first; and he has made due use of them. His two poems are each examples of construction, the *Iliad* simple and a story of suffering, the *Odyssey* complex (there is Discovery throughout it) and a story of character. And they are more than this, since in Diction and Thought too they surpass all other poems.

There is, however, a difference in the Epic as compared with Tragedy, (1) in its length, and (2) in its metre. (1) As to its length, the limit already suggested[1] will suffice: it must be possible for the beginning and end of the work to be taken in in one view—a condition which will be fulfilled if the poem be shorter than the old epics, and about as long as the series of tragedies offered for one hearing. For the extension of its length epic poetry has a special advantage, of which it makes large use. In a play one cannot represent an action with a number of parts going on simultaneously; one is limited to the part on the stage and connected with the actors. Whereas in epic poetry the narrative form makes it possible for one to describe a number of simultaneous incidents; and these, if germane to the subject, increase the body of the poem. This then is a gain to the Epic, tending to give it grandeur, and also variety of interest and room for episodes of diverse kinds. Uniformity

[1] 1451ᵃ 3.

of incident by the satiety it soon creates is apt to ruin tragedies on the stage. (2) As for its metre, the heroic has been assigned it from experience; were any one to attempt a narrative poem in some one, or in several, of the other metres, the incongruity of the thing would be apparent. The heroic in fact is the gravest and weightiest of metres—which is what makes it more tolerant than the rest of strange words and metaphors, that also being a point in which the narrative form of poetry goes beyond all others. The iambic and trochaic, on the other hand, are metres of movement, the one representing that of life and action, the other that of the dance. Still more unnatural would it appear, if one were to write an epic in a medley of metres, as Chaeremon did.[1] Hence it is that no one has ever written a long story in any but heroic verse; nature herself, as we have said,[2] teaches us to select the metre appropriate to such a story.

Homer, admirable as he is in every other respect, is especially so in this, that he alone among epic poets is not unaware of the part to be played by the poet himself in the poem. The poet should say very little *in propria persona*, as he is no imitator when doing that. Whereas the other poets are perpetually coming forward in person, and say but little, and that only here and there, as imitators, Homer after a brief preface brings in forthwith a man, a woman, or some other Character—no one of them characterless, but each with distinctive characteristics.

The marvellous is certainly required in Tragedy. The Epic, however, affords more opening for the improbable, the chief factor in the marvellous, because in it the agents are not visibly before one. The scene of the pursuit of Hector would be ridiculous on the stage—the Greeks halting instead of pursuing him, and Achilles shaking his head to stop them;[3] but in the poem the absurdity is overlooked. The marvellous, however, is a cause of pleasure, as is shown by the fact that we all tell a story with additions, in the belief that we are doing our hearers a pleasure.

Homer more than any other has taught the rest of us the

[1] *Centaur*, cf. 1447ᵇ21. [2] 1449ª24. [3] *Il.* xxii. 205.

art of framing lies in the right way. I mean the use of paralogism. Whenever, if A is or happens, a consequent, B, is or happens, men's notion is that, if the B is, the A also is—but that is a false conclusion. Accordingly, if A is untrue, but there is something else, B, that on the assumption of its truth follows as its consequent, the right thing then is to add on the B. Just because we know the truth of the consequent, we are in our own minds led on to the erroneous inference of the truth of the antecedent. Here is an instance, from the *Bath-story* in the *Odyssey*.[1]

A likely impossibility is always preferable to an unconvincing possibility. The story should never be made up of improbable incidents; there should be nothing of the sort in it. If, however, such incidents are unavoidable, they should be outside the piece, like the hero's ignorance in *Oedipus* of the circumstances of Laius' death; not within it, like the report of the Pythian games in *Electra*,[2] or the man's having come to Mysia from Tegea without uttering a word on the way, in *The Mysians*.[3] So that it is ridiculous to say that one's Plot would have been spoilt without them, since it is fundamentally wrong to make up such Plots. If the poet has taken such a Plot, however, and one sees that he might have put it in a more probable form, he is guilty of absurdity as well as a fault of art. Even in the *Odyssey* the improbabilities in the setting-ashore of Ulysses[4] would be clearly intolerable in the hands of an inferior poet. As it is, the poet conceals them, his other excellences veiling their absurdity. Elaborate Diction, however, is required only in places where there is no action, and no Character or Thought to be revealed. Where there is Character or Thought, on the other hand, an over-ornate Diction tends to obscure them.

25 As regards Problems and their Solutions, one may see the number and nature of the assumptions on which they proceed by viewing the matter in the following way. (1) The poet being an imitator just like the painter or other maker of likenesses, he must necessarily in all instances

[1] xix. 164–260. [2] Soph. *El.* 660 ff. [3] Probably by Aeschylus.
[4] xiii. 116 ff.

represent things in one or other of three aspects, either as they were or are, or as they are said or thought to be or to have been, or as they ought to be. (2) All this he does in language, with an admixture, it may be, of strange words and metaphors, as also of the various modified forms of words, since the use of these is conceded in poetry. (3) It is to be remembered, too, that there is not the same kind of correctness in poetry as in politics, or indeed any other art. There is, however, within the limits of poetry itself a possibility of two kinds of error, the one directly, the other only accidentally connected with the art. If the poet meant to describe the thing correctly, and failed through lack of power of expression, his art itself is at fault. But if it was through his having meant to describe it in some incorrect way (e. g. to make the horse in movement have both right legs thrown forward) that the technical error (one in a matter of, say, medicine or some other special science), or impossibilities of whatever kind they may be, have got into his description, his error in that case is not in the essentials of the poetic art. These, therefore, must be the premisses of the Solutions in answer to the criticisms involved in the Problems.

I. As to the criticisms relating to the poet's art itself. Any impossibilities there may be in his descriptions of things are faults. But from another point of view they are justifiable, if they serve the end of poetry itself—if (to assume what we have said of that end)[1] they make the effect of either that very portion of the work or some other portion more astounding. The Pursuit of Hector is an instance in point. If, however, the poetic end might have been as well or better attained without sacrifice of technical correctness in such matters, the impossibility is not to be justified, since the description should be, if it can, entirely free from error. One may ask, too, whether the error is in a matter directly or only accidentally connected with the poetic art; since it is a lesser error in an artist not to know, for instance, that the hind has no horns, than to produce an unrecognizable picture of one.

[1] 1452a 4, 1454a 4, 1455a 17, 1460a 11.

II. If the poet's description be criticized as not true to fact, one may urge perhaps that the object ought to be as described—an answer like that of Sophocles, who said that he drew men as they ought to be, and Euripides as they were. If the description, however, be neither true nor of the thing as it ought to be, the answer must be then, that it is in accordance with opinion. The tales about Gods, for instance, may be as wrong as Xenophanes thinks,[1] neither true nor the better thing to say; but they are certainly in accordance with opinion. Of other statements in poetry one may perhaps say, not that they are better than the truth, but that the fact was so at the time; e. g. the description of the arms: 'their spears stood upright, butt-end upon the ground';[2] for that was the usual way of fixing them then, as it is still with the Illyrians. As for the question whether something said or done in a poem is morally right or not, in dealing with that one should consider not only the intrinsic quality of the actual word or deed, but also the person who says or does it, the person to whom he says or does it, the time, the means, and the motive of the agent—whether he does it to attain a greater good, or to avoid a greater evil.

III. Other criticisms one must meet by considering the language of the poet: (1) by the assumption of a strange word in a passage like *οὐρῆας μὲν πρῶτον*,[3] where by *οὐρῆας* Homer may perhaps mean not mules but sentinels. And in saying of Dolon, *ὅς ῥ' ἦ τοι εἶδος μὲν ἔην κακός*,[4] his meaning may perhaps be, not that Dolon's body was deformed, but that his face was ugly, as *εὐειδής* is the Cretan word for handsome-faced. So, too, *ζωρότερον δὲ κέραιε*[5] may mean not 'mix the wine stronger', as though for topers, but 'mix it quicker'. (2) Other expressions in Homer may be explained as metaphorical; e. g. in *ἄλλοι μέν ῥα θεοί τε καὶ ἀνέρες εὗδον ⟨ἅπαντες⟩ παννύχιοι*,[6] as compared with what he tells us at the same time, *ἦ τοι ὅτ' ἐς πεδίον τὸ Τρωικὸν ἀθρήσειεν, αὐλῶν συρίγγων †τε ὁμαδόν†*,[7] the word *ἅπαντες*, 'all', is metaphorically put for 'many', since 'all' is a species of

[1] Fr. 10–12, Diels. [2] *Il.* x. 152. [3] *Il.* i. 50. [4] *Il.* x. 316.
[5] *Il.* ix. 202. [6] Cf. *Il.* x. 1, ii. 1. [7] *Il.* x. 11–13.

'many'. So also his οἵη δ' ἄμμορος[1] is metaphorical, the best known standing 'alone'. (3) A change, as Hippias of Thasos suggested, in the mode of reading a word will solve the difficulty in δίδομεν δέ οἱ,[2] and in τὸ μὲν οὖ καταπύθεται ὄμβρῳ.[3] (4) Other difficulties may be solved by another punctuation; e.g. in Empedocles, αἶψα δὲ θνήτ' ἐφύοντο, τὰ πρὶν μάθον ἀθάνατα ζωρά τε πρὶν κέκρητο.[4] Or (5) by the assumption of an equivocal term, as in παρῴχηκεν δὲ πλέω νύξ,[5] where πλέω is equivocal. Or (6) by an appeal to the custom of language. Wine-and-water we call 'wine'; and it is on the same principle that Homer speaks of a κνημὶς νεοτεύκτου κασσιτέροιο,[6] a 'greave of new-wrought *tin*'. A worker in iron we call a 'brazier'; and it is on the same principle that Ganymede is described as the '*wine*-server' of Zeus,[7] though the Gods do not drink wine. This latter, however, may be an instance of metaphor. But whenever also a word seems to imply some contradiction, it is necessary to reflect how many ways there may be of understanding it in the passage in question; e.g. in Homer's τῇ ῥ' ἔσχετο χάλκεον ἔγχος[8] one should consider the possible senses of 'was stopped there'—whether by taking it in this sense or in that one will best avoid the fault of which

1461b Glaucon speaks: 'They start with some improbable presumption; and having so decreed it themselves, proceed to draw inferences, and censure the poet as though he had actually said whatever they happen to believe, if his statement conflicts with their own notion of things.' This is how Homer's silence about Icarius has been treated. Starting with the notion of his having been a Lacedaemonian, the critics think it strange for Telemachus not to have met him when he went to Lacedaemon. Whereas the fact may have been as the Cephallenians say, that the wife of Ulysses was of a Cephallenian family, and that her father's name was Icadius, not Icarius. So that it is probably a mistake of the critics that has given rise to the Problem.

Speaking generally, one has to justify (1) the Impossible

[1] *Il.* xviii. 489 = *Od.* v. 275. [2] Cf. *Soph. El.* 166b 1; *Il.* ii. 15.
[3] *Il.* xxiii. 327. [4] Fr. 35. 14–15 Diels. [5] *Il.* x. 251.
[6] *Il.* xxi. 592. [7] *Il.* xx. 234. [8] *Il.* xx. 267.

by reference to the requirements of poetry, or to the better, or to opinion. For the purposes of poetry a convincing impossibility is preferable to an unconvincing possibility; and if men such as Zeuxis depicted be impossible, the answer is that it is better they should be like that, as the artist ought to improve on his model. (2) The Improbable one has to justify either by showing it to be in accordance with opinion, or by urging that at times it is not improbable; for there is a probability of things happening also against probability. (3) The contradictions found in the poet's language one should first test as one does an opponent's confutation in a dialectical argument, so as to see whether he means the same thing, in the same relation, and in the same sense, before admitting that he has contradicted either something he has said himself or what a man of sound sense assumes as true. But there is no possible apology for improbability of Plot or depravity of character, when they are not necessary and no use is made of them, like the improbability in the appearance of Aegeus in *Medea*[1] and the baseness of Menelaus in *Orestes*.

The objections, then, of critics start with faults of five kinds: the allegation is always that something is either (1) impossible, (2) improbable, (3) corrupting, (4) contradictory, or (5) against technical correctness. The answers to these objections must be sought under one or other of the above-mentioned heads, which are twelve in number.

26 The question may be raised whether the epic or the tragic is the higher form of imitation. It may be argued that, if the less vulgar is the higher, and the less vulgar is always that which addresses the better public, an art addressing any and every one is of a very vulgar order. It is a belief that their public cannot see the meaning, unless they add something themselves, that causes the perpetual movements of the performers—bad flute-players, for instance, rolling about, if quoit-throwing is to be represented, and pulling at the conductor, if Scylla is the subject of the piece. Tragedy, then, is said to be an art of this order—to be in

fact just what the later actors were in the eyes of their predecessors; for Mynniscus used to call Callippides 'the ape', because he thought he so overacted his parts; and a similar view was taken of Pindarus also. All Tragedy, however, is said to stand to the Epic as the newer to the older school of actors. The one, accordingly, is said to address a cultivated audience, which does not need the accompaniment of gesture; the other, an uncultivated one. If, therefore, Tragedy is a vulgar art, it must clearly be lower than the Epic.

The answer to this is twofold. In the first place, one may urge (1) that the censure does not touch the art of the dramatic poet, but only that of his interpreter; for it is quite possible to overdo the gesturing even in an epic recital, as did Sosistratus, and in a singing contest, as did Mnasitheus of Opus. (2) That one should not condemn all movement, unless one means to condemn even the dance, but only that of ignoble people—which is the point of the criticism passed on Callippides and in the present day on others, that their women are not like gentlewomen. (3) That Tragedy may produce its effect even without movement or action in just the same way as Epic poetry; for from the mere reading of a play its quality may be seen. So that, if it be superior in all other respects, this element of inferiority is no necessary part of it.

In the second place, one must remember (1) that Tragedy has everything that the Epic has (even the epic metre being admissible), together with a not inconsiderable addition in the shape of the Music (a very real factor in the pleasure of the drama) and the Spectacle. (2) That its reality of presentation is felt in the play as read, as well as in the play as acted. (3) That the tragic imitation requires less space for the attainment of its end; which is a great advantage, since the more concentrated effect is more pleasurable than one with a large admixture of time to dilute it—consider the *Oedipus* of Sophocles, for instance, and the effect of expanding it into the number of lines of the *Iliad*. (4) That there is less unity in the imitation of the epic poets, as is proved by the fact that any one work

of theirs supplies matter for several tragedies; the result being that, if they take what is really a single story, it seems curt when briefly told, and thin and waterish when on the scale of length usual with their verse. In saying that there is less unity in an epic, I mean an epic made up of a plurality of actions, in the same way as the *Iliad* and *Odyssey* have many such parts, each one of them in itself of some magnitude; yet the structure of the two Homeric poems is as perfect as can be, and the action in them is as nearly as possible one action. If, then, Tragedy is superior in these respects, and also, besides these, in its poetic effect (since the two forms of poetry should give us, not any or every pleasure, but the very special kind we have mentioned), it is clear that, as attaining the poetic effect better than the Epic, it will be the higher form of art.

So much for Tragedy and Epic poetry—for these two arts in general and their species; the number and nature of their constituent parts; the causes of success and failure in them; the Objections of the critics, and the Solutions in answer to them.

INDEX

47a–62b = 1447a–1462b

Accent, 56b 33.
Achilles, 54b 14.
Actors, 49a 16, b 5; 50b 19; 51b 37; 56a 26; 59b 26; 61b 34.
Aegeus (Eurip.), 61b 21.
Aegisthus, 53a 37.
Aeschylus, 49a 16; 56a 17; 58b 20, 22.
Agathon, 51b 21; 54b 14; 56a 18, 24, 30.
Ajaxes, 56a 1.
Alcibiades, 51b 11.
Alcinous, Tale of, 55a 2.
Alcmeon, 53a 20; b 24, 33.
Amphiaraus, 55a 27.
Analogy, 57b 9, 16.
Anapaests, 52b 24.
Antheus, 51b 21.
Antigone, 54a 1.
Ares, 57b 21 f., 32.
Argas, 48a 15.
Ariphrades, 58b 31.
Aristophanes, 48a 27.
Article, 56b 21; 57a 6.
Aspirated, 56b 32.
Astydamas, 53b 33.
Athenian, Athenians, 48a 36, b 1; 49b 7.

Barbarism, 58a 24+.
Bath-story, 54b 30; 60a 26.
Beauty, 50b 37.

Callippides, 61b 35; 62a 9.
Carcinus, 54b 23; 55a 26.
Case, 56b 21; 57a 18, 22.
Catharsis, 49b 28.
Centaur, 47b 21.
Cephallenians, 61b 6.
Chaeremon, 47b 21; 60a 2.
Character, 47a 28; 48a 2, b 24; 50a 2, 5+, 19+, b 8 f.; 54a 16+, 27, b 13: 56a 1; 59b 9, 15; 60a 11, b 3, 5.
Chionides, 48a 34.
Choephoroe, 55a 4.
Choral, 52b 16, 21 f.
Chorus, 49a 17, b 1; 52b 19+; 56a 25.
Clearness, 58a 18, 34, b 1, 5.
Cleophon, 48a 12; 58a 20.
Clytaemnestra, 53b 23.
Comedians, 48a 37; 49b 1.
Comedy, 47a 14, b 27; 48a 17, 30 f., b 36; 49a 2, 4, 10, 32, 38, b 22; 51b 12; 53a 36.
Commos, 52b 18, 24.
Complex (plot), 52a 12, 16, b 32; 55b 33; 59b 9, 15.
Complication, 55b 24+; 56a 9.
Compound (word), 57a 12, 32, 34; 59a 5, 9.
Conjunction, 56b 21, 38.
Consistency, 54a 26 f.
Crates, 49b 7.
Creon, 54a 1.
Cresphontes, 54a 5.
Cretan, 61a 14.
Cyclopses, 48a 15.
Cyprus, 57b 6; *Cyprioe* (Dicaeogenes), 55a 1; *Cypria*, 59b 2, 4.

Danaus, 52a 28.
Dancing, 47a 27; 48a 9; 49a 23; 60a 1; 62a 9.
Dénouement, 54a 37; 55b 24+; 56a 9.
Dicaeogenes, 55a 1.
Diction, 49a 19, b 33 f.; 50a 9, 14, 29, 36, b 13; 55a 22; 56a 34, b 8+, 20; 58a 18, 21; 59a 3, b 12, 16; 60b 3, 5.
Diliad, 48a 13.
Dionysius, 48a 6.
Dionysus, 57b 21 f.
Discovery, 50a 34; 52a 16, 29+, b 10 f.; 54a 4, b 19 f.; 55a 16, b 34; 59b 11, 15.
Dithyrambic poetry, 47a 14, b 26; 48a 14; 49a 11; 59a 9.
Dolon, 61a 12.
Dorians, 48a 30.
Double plot, 53a 13, 31.
Drama, 48a 28; 56a 15; 59a 19.
Dramatic, 48b 35, 37.

Earth-born, 54b 22.
Electra, 60a 31.
Elegiacs, 47b 12, 14.

INDEX

Elocution, 56b 10.
Empedocles, 47b 18; 57b 24; 61a 24.
Epic, 47a 13, b 14; 49a 5, b 9+; 55b 16; 56a 11; 58b 16; 59b 8, 18+; 60a 13; 61b 26; 62a 2, 12, 14, b 4, 15 f.
Epicharmus, 48a 33; 49b 6.
Episode, 49a 28; 52b 16, 20; 55b 1, 13+, 23; 59a 35 f., b 30.
Episodic, 51b 33 f.
Eriphyle, 53b 24.
Euclid, 58b 7.
Euripides, 53a 24, 29, b 28; 55b 9; 56a 17, 27; 58b 20; 60b 34; 61b 20.
Eurypylus, 59b 6.
Exode, 52b 16, 21.

Fear, 49b 27; 52a 26, b 1; 53a 4 f., b 12.
Feminine, 58a 8+.
Flute-playing, 47a 15, 24; 48a 9; 61b 31.

Ganymede, 61a 30.
Glaucon, 61b 1.

Haemon (Soph.), 54a 2.
Harmony, 47a 22+; 48b 20; 49b 29.
Hector, 60a 15, b 26.
Hegemon, 48a 12.
Helle, 54a 8.
Hermocaïcoxanthus, 57a 35.
Heracleid, 51a 20.
Heracles, 51a 22.
Herodotus, 51b 2.
Heroic (verse), 48b 33; 59a 10 f., b 32, 34; 60a 3.
Hexameter, 49a 27, b 21.
Hippias, 61a 22.
History, 51b 3, 6 f.; 59a 21.
Homer, 47b 18; 48a 11, 22, 26, b 28 f., 34; 51a 23; 54b 15; 59a 31, b 12; 60a 5, 19.
Hymns, 48b 27.

Iambic, 48b 31, 33; 49a 21, 25; 51b 14; 58b 19; 59a 10, 12, b 37.
'Iambs', 48b 32; 49a 4.
Icarius, 61b 4, 8.
Iliad, 48b 38; 51a 29; 54b 2; 56a 13, 16; 57a 29; 59b 3, 14; 62b 3, 8. *Little Iliad*, 59b 2, 5.
Ilium, Fall of, 59b 6.
Illyrians, 61a 4.
Imitation, 47a 16, 22, b 13, 15, 21, 29; 48a 24, b 3, 8 f., 18, 35; 49b 10, 24; 50a 16, b 3, 24; 51a 31, b 28; 52a 2, b 33; 53b 12; 54a 27, b 8; 59a 15, 17; 61b 26; 62b 1, 4.
Iphigenia, 55a 7: Iphigenia (Eurip.), 52b 6 f.: *Iphigenia* (Eurip.), 54a 7, b 32; 55a 18, b 3: *Iphigenia at Aulis*, 54a 32.
Ixions, 56a 1.

Laconian Women, 59b 6.
Laius, 60a 30.
Language, 47a 22; 48a 11; 49b 25, 28; 56a 37, b 6.
Letter, 56b 20+.
Lynceus, 52a 27; 55b 29.
Lyre-playing, 47a 15, 24; 48a 10.

Madness, 55a 33.
Magnes, 48a 34.
Margites, 48b 30, 38.
Marvellous, the, 52a 4; 60a 12+.
Masculine, 58a 8+.
Mask, 49a 36, b 4.
Medea, 53b 29: *Medea*, 54b 1.
Megarians, 48a 31.
Melanippe, 54a 31.
Meleager, 53a 20.
Melody, 47b 25; 49b 33, 35; 50a 10, 14, b 16.
Menelaus, 54a 29; 61b 21.
Merope, 54a 5.
Metaphor, 57b 2, 6, 30; 58a 22+, b 13, 17; 59a 6, 10, 14, b 35; 60b 12; 61a 16+, 31.
Metre, 47b 8, 13, 15, 17 f., 20, 22; 48b 21, 31 f.; 49a 21, 24 f.; 56b 38; 59b 18, 32 f., 35; 62a 15.
Metricians, 56b 34.
Mime, 47b 10.
Mitys, 52a 8 f.
Mnasitheus, 62a 7.
Music, 62a 16.
Mute, 56b 26, 28; 58a 14.
Mynniscus, 61b 34.
Mysians, 60a 32.

Names, 51b 10, 13, 15, 20; 55b 13.
Narrative, 49b 11, 26; 59a 17, b 26, 33, 36.
Neoptolemus, 59b 6.
Nicochares, 48a 13.
Niobe, 56a 17.
Nomic poetry, 47b 26; 48a 15.
Noun, 56b 21; 57a 10, 16+, b 1; 58a 8+.

INDEX

Odyssey, 49ª 1; 51ª 24, 29; 53ª 32; 55ᵇ 17; 59ᵇ 3, 15; 60ª 35; 62ᵇ 9.
Oedipus, 53ª 11, 20: (Soph.), 53ᵇ 31: *Oedipus* (Soph.), 52ª 24+; 53ᵇ 7; 54ᵇ 8; 55ª 18; 6cª 30; 62ᵇ 2.
Orestes, 53ª 20, 37; (Eurip.), 52ᵇ 6; 53ᵇ 24; 54ᵇ 31; 55ª 5, 7, ᵇ 14; *Orestes* (Eurip.), 54ª 29.

Painter, 48ª 5; 60ᵇ 8.
Painting, 50ª 26, ᵇ 1.
Parode, 52ᵇ 17+.
Parodies, 48ª 13.
Pauson, 48ª 6.
Peleus, 56ª 2.
Peripety, 50ª 34; 52ª 15, 22, 33, 38, ᵇ 9; 55ᵇ 34; 56ª 19; 59ᵇ 10.
Phallic songs, 49ª 11.
Philoctetes, 58ᵇ 22; 59ᵇ 5.
Philoxenus, 48ª 15.
Phinidae, 55ª 10.
Phorcides, 56ª 2.
Phormis, 49ᵇ 6.
Phthiotides, 56ª 1.
Pindarus, 61ᵇ 35.
Pity, 49ᵇ 27; 52ª 38; 53ª 3, 5, ᵇ 12; 56ᵇ 1.
Pleasure, 48ᵇ 18; 53ª 36, ᵇ 11 f.; 59ª 21; 62ª 16, ᵇ 13.
Plot, 47ª 9; 49ᵇ 5, 9; 50ª 4+, 22, 32, 34, 38, ᵇ 32; 51ª 5, 16, ᵇ 13, 33 f., 38; 52ª 11 f., 19, 37, ᵇ 9, 29; 53ª 12, ᵇ 4; 54ª 12, 14, ᵇ 1; 55ª 22, ᵇ 8; 56ª 8, 28; 60ª 33.
Poetry, 47ª 8; 48ᵇ 4, 23 f.; 50ᵇ 18; 51ᵇ 6, 10; 54ᵇ 16; 55ª 33; 56ᵇ 18; 60ᵇ 14; 61ᵇ 10 f.
Polygnotus, 48ª 5; 50ª 27.
Polyidus, 55ª 6, ᵇ 10.
Portrait-painters, 54ᵇ 9.
Probability, 51ª 12, 28, 38, ᵇ 9, 13, 31, 35; 52ª 20, 24; 54ª 34, 36; 55ª 17, 19, ᵇ 10; 56ª 24, ᵇ 4; 60ª 27; 61ᵇ 15.
Problems, 60ᵇ 6+, 22; 61ᵇ 9.
Prologue, 49ᵇ 4; 52ᵇ 16, 19.
Prometheus, 56ª 2.
Prose, 47ª 29; 48ª 11; 50ᵇ 15; 51ᵇ 1.
Protagoras, 56ᵇ 15.

Quantitative parts, 52ᵇ 15, 26.

Rhapsody, 47ᵇ 22.
Rhetoric, 50ᵇ 6; 56ª 35.
Rhythm, 47ª 22 f., 26 f., ᵇ 25; 48ᵇ 21; 49ᵇ 29.
Riddle, 58ª 24+.
Ridiculous, the, 48ᵇ 37; 49ª 34, 36; 58ᵇ 14.

Salamis, 59ª 25.
Satyric, 49ª 20, 22.
Scenery, 49ª 18.
Scylla, 61ᵇ 32: *Scylla*, 54ª 31.
Sicily, 48ª 32; 49ᵇ 7.
Simple (plot), 51ᵇ 33; 52ª 12, 14, ᵇ 31; 53ª 13; 56ª 20; 59ᵇ 9, 14: nouns, 57ª 31.
Sinon, 59ᵇ 7.
Sisyphus, 56ª 22.
Socratic conversation, 47ᵇ 11.
Song, 49ᵇ 29, 31; 52ᵇ 21–3; 59ᵇ 10.
Sophocles, 48ª 26; 49ª 19; 53ᵇ 31; 54ᵇ 8, 36; 55ª 18; 56ª 27; 60ᵇ 33; 62ᵇ 3.
Sophron, 47ᵇ 10.
Sosistratus, 62ª 7.
Spectacle, 49ᵇ 33; 50ª 10, 13, ᵇ 16, 20; 53ᵇ 1+; 56ª 2; 59ᵇ 10; 62ª 16.
Stage, 52ᵇ 18; 53ª 27; 55ª 28; 59ᵇ 25; 60ª 15.
Stasimon, 52ᵇ 17, 23.
Sthenelus, 58ª 21.
Suffering, 47ª 28; 52ᵇ 11; 55ᵇ 34; 59ᵇ 9, 11, 14.
Surprise, 54ª 4; 55ª 17; 60ᵇ 25.
Syllable, 56ᵇ 21, 34, 36; 58ª 2.

Telegonus, 53ᵇ 33.
Telemachus, 61ᵇ 5.
Telephus, 53ª 21.
Tereus, 54ᵇ 36.
Tetrameter, 49ª 22.
Theatres, 49ª 9.
Theodectes, 55ª 9, ᵇ 29.
Theseid, 51ª 20.
Thought, 49ᵇ 38+; 50ª 30, ᵇ 4, 11; 56ª 34+; 59ᵇ 12, 16; 60ᵇ 5.
Thyestes, 53ª 11, 21: *Thyestes*, 54ᵇ 23.
Timotheus, 48ª 15.
Traditional stories, 51ᵇ 24; 53ᵇ 22.
Tragedians, 58ᵇ 32.
Tragedy, 47ª 13; 49ª 5; 50ª 32; 52ᵇ 31; 53ª 19, 23, 35; 59ª 15; 62ª 11.
Tragic, 50ª 30; 52ᵇ 29; 53ª 27, 30; 56ª 21; 61ᵇ 26.

Trimeters, 47b 11.
Trochaic, 49a 21; 59b 37.
Trochees, 52b 24.
Troy, Women of, 59b 7.
Tydeus, 55a 9.
Tyro, 54b 25.

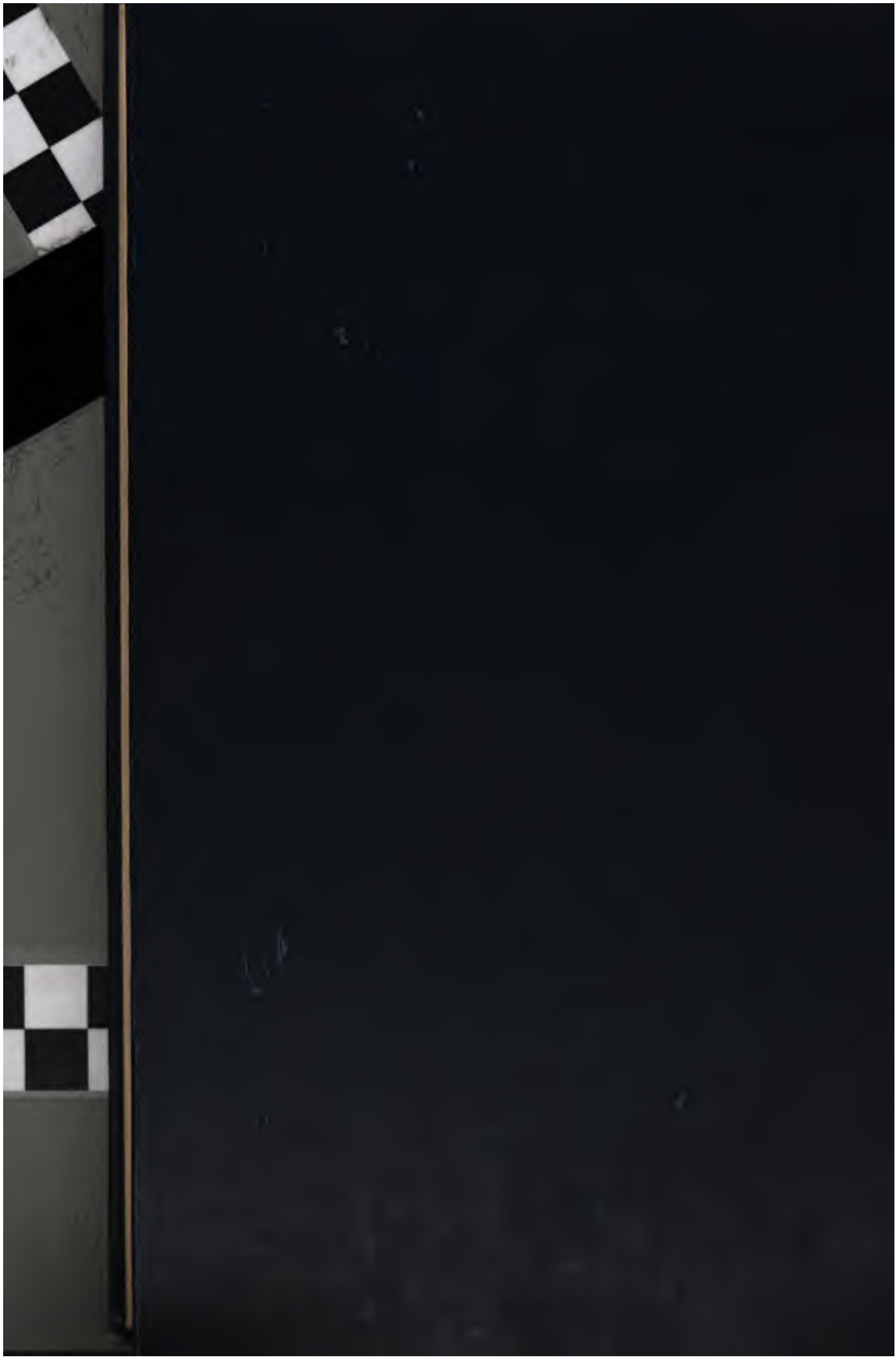
Ugly, 49a 34, 36.
Ulysses, 54b 26; 61b 7: (in *Scylla*), 54a 30: *U. Wounded*, 53b 34; *U. the False Messenger*, 55a 13.
Unity, 51a 1, 16; 57a 28; 59a 19.
Universal, 50b 12; 51b 7+; 55b 1.

Verb, 56b 21; 57a 14, 19, 22+.
Verse, 47a 29, b 25; 48a 11; 49b 10 f., 30, 35; 50b 14; 51b 1 f., 28; 59a 17.
Vowel, 56b 25; 58a 1, 11, 15.

Words, kinds of, 57b 1+, 33+; 58a 32+; 59a 5+.

Xenarchus, 47b 10.
Xenophanes, 61a 1.

Zeuxis, 50a 27 f.; 61b 12.

PRINTED IN
GREAT BRITAIN
AT THE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
OXFORD
BY
JOHN JOHNSON
PRINTER
TO THE
UNIVERSITY

Stanford University Libraries
3 6105 005 745 802
[redacted]
Send [redacted]
185.1
A651
v.11
c.2